



*The Empress Catharine,
in the Habit in which She appeared at the
Head of her own Regiment.*



*The Empress Catharine,
in the Habit in which She appeared at the
Head of her own Regiment.*

Russia
THE
HISTORY
OF THE
RUSSIAN EMPIRE,

FROM

Its FOUNDATION to the DEATH

Of the Illustrious

Empress CATHERINE,

Confort and Successor of

PETER the GREAT.

Including

The LIVES and EXPLOITS of those Two
Illustrious PERSONAGES.

Adorned with COPPER PLATES.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

LONDON:

Printed for J. SCOT, at the Black Swan, in Pater-
noster Row. MDCCLVII.

THE
HISTORY OF

RUSSIA

FROM THE

RUSSIAN



THE

RUSSIAN

RUSSIAN

RUSSIAN

RUSSIAN

RUSSIAN

RUSSIAN



THE
HISTORY
OF
RUSSIA,
To the End of the REIGN of the
Empress CATHARINE.

BOOK I.

The CONTENTS.

*A short HISTORY of the first Sovereigns of
RUSSIA, to the Death of Theodore, the last
Prince of the Line of Rurick.*

ALL the Annals of *Russia* speak of a
Nation called * *Waragi*, or *Wa-*
ragians, who gave the first Sove-
reigns to this Kingdom. It is very
probable, that these People inha-
bited the Country on the Coasts of the *Bal-*
tick Sea, which the *Russians* still call *Waretskoie-*
B *Morie*;

* *These People being very great Pirates, had the Name of*
Warg, or Waragi, given them, which, in the Gothic Lan-
guage, signifies Wolves.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Morie; perhaps they were *Vandals*. Be that as it may, a certain Man named *Gostomisses*, who was a Citizen of *Novogorod*, and whose Prudence had given him some Authority among his Countrymen, then divided and in Arms against one another about the Choice of a Leader, pointed out to them three Brothers, among the *Waragians*, very capable of governing them. It is likely, that he engaged them in the Choice of these Strangers, because they would not submit to any of their own Countrymen, esteeming themselves all on an Equality.

RURICK surviving his Brothers, whose Names were *Sinaus* and *Truvor*, thereby became Lord of the whole Nation: The Epoch of these three Brothers being called to the Government of the *Russians*, is placed, according to their Manner of Reckoning, in the Year of the World 6370, and of Christ 860.

RURICK, the
first Prince.
A. D. 860.

RURICK being sole Master of the Provinces, that had belonged to his Brothers, which were those of *Pleskow* and *Biela-Ozero*, divided the Lands among his principal Followers. His own Province was towards the Lake *Ladoga*. The Situation of these three Provinces seems to favour the Conjecture, that the *Waragians* were the same People who, at present, are called *Ingrians*, and their Country *Ingria* or *Ingermania*; the *Russians* call them *Woijschoi*: And those who apply themselves to the boundless Science of Etymology, will find no great Disagreement between this Word and those of *Waretskoie* and *Waragi*. It is farther to be observed, that they give a Name with the same Termination to five different People who

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

3

inhabit between the *Onega*, the *Ladoga*, the *Pepuys*, the *Biela-Ozero*, and the Sources of the *Wolga* and the *Dwina*, which are the *Obonefschi-petin*, the *Wotschoi-petin*, the *Selonschi-petin*, the *Doretschoi-petin*, and the *Besetschi-petin*; which makes it believed, that these five People composed the first State of which *Rurick* was the Sovereign.

IGOR succeeded his Father *Rurick*, under the Tutelage of one of his Relations, after whose Death he marry'd a Lady of *Pleskow*, named *Olba* *. He was forced into a War with his Neighbours, whom he vanquished, and then put the Prince of *Kiow* to Death: Being Master of all the Country along the Eastern Borders of the *Borysthenes*, or *Dnieper*, he carry'd his Arms as far as *Thrace*; but at his Return, the Chief of the † *Drewlians*, the same who are now called the *Donski-Tartars*, prepared an Ambuscade for him near § *Corefch*, where *Igor* perished with a great Number of his Men.

IGOR.
A. D. 880.

He left but one Son, named *Swatoslas* or *SWATOSLAS*. *Spendostablos*, who was too young to mount the Throne; therefore *Olba*, his Mother, reigned in his stead, and was a great Princess. Her first Care was to revenge herself on the Chief of the *Drewlians* for his Perfidy: This Prince having sent twenty Ambassadors to her,

A. D. 943.

B 2

with

* Some say she was the Daughter of *Gostomilles*, before mentioned.

† So called from the Word *Drew*, or *Derew*, which signifies a Wood or Forest, because these People, it is said, dwelt formerly in great Woods, on the Rivers *Desna* and *Semm* in the *Ukraine*.

§ This Place is 360 *Wersts* distant from *Kiow*, towards the Source of the *Semm*.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

with Propositions of Marriage, she began her Vengeance by causing them to be burnt alive, and gave that Nation to understand, that, if they would have her for their Sovereign, they must send to her a greater Number of the principal Men among them; these likewise she caused to be strangled in a Bath, and then sent Word to the *Drewlians*, that she was setting out, and ordered them to prepare Hydromel, and every thing else that was necessary to sacrifice to the Manes of *Igor*, and for her own Nuptials.

AT her Arrival at *Corefch* she pay'd the highest Honours to the Memory of her deceased Husband, and making the *Drewlians* drunk, she caused five thousand of the chief Persons among them to be massacred, and then returned by the Way of *Kiow*, whither she conducted her Army, and surpris'd that People, of whom she made so easy a Conquest, that she impos'd what Tribute she pleas'd upon them.

OLHA afterwards took a Journey to *Constantinople*, where she embraced the Christian Religion according to the Rites of the *Greek Church*, being baptized by the Patriarch *Photius*, and took the Name of *Helena*: This was in the Reign of *John Zemifces*, Emperor of the East, who would have marry'd her; but she refus'd his Offer with great Civility. This magnanimous Princess liv'd to a great Age, being in her 80th Year when she died, which was fourteen Years after her being baptized. The *Russians* celebrate her Memory annually on the 11th of *July*, and compare her to the Sun, as she was the first who brought forth the Light of the Gospel

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

5

Gospel among them; but she could not persuade her Son to espouse the same Faith.

SHE had trained him up to Arms, which he bore all his Life with Honour; after he had subdued his Neighbours, he entered into *Bulgaria*, anciently called *Thrace*; and then, quitting *Kiow*, established the Seat of his Empire at *Pereſlaw*, as the Centre of his Dominions, and where he might best maintain the Commerce he carry'd on with *Greece*, *Hungary*, and other Places.

SWATOSLAS, after a long and glorious Reign, was treacherously slain by the Prince of the *Peucingians* or *Hunns*, who made a drinking Cup of his Skull. He left three Sons, *Jewpalch*, to whom he had given *Kiow* and its Dependencies; *Olegas*, whom he had made Chief of the *Drewlians*; and *Wolodimir*, whom he had by a Concubine of *Novogorod*, much beloved by him; to this third Son he gave the Northern Part of his Dominions, comprising *Novogorod*, *Pleskow*, &c. but this Division lasted not long, for *Jewpalch* laying an Ambuscade for *Olegas*, soon destroyed him, and *Wolodimir* dreading the same Fate, fled for Shelter to the *Waragians*. *Jewpalch* immediately seized on *Novogorod*, and put a Governor in it: But *Wolodimir* obtained such powerful Succours from the *Waragians* that he presently drove him out again, and, at the same Time, declared War with this cruel Brother, whom he besieged in *Kiow*, and, having artfully drawn him out of the Town, put him to Death.

WOLODIMIR, Master of all the Country WOLODIMIR.
that his Father had inherited and conquered, A.D. 980.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

gave himself up to a Life of Ease and Luxury; having several Wives of different Nations, besides six hundred Concubines: But he was powerful enough, notwithstanding his Indolence, to draw about him an infinite Number of Priests, who insinuated into him the Necessity of establishing some certain Worship in his Dominions, each boasting, with sacerdotal Pride and Obstinacy, of the particular Dogmas of his own Sect.

MALUSCHA, his Mother, who had been an Attendant on *Olba*, determined him in favour of Christianity; and prevailing upon him to be baptized, he took the Name of *Basile*, and broke the Idols * *Perun*, *Uslad*, *Corfa*, *Dafwa*, *Simaergla*, *Macosch*, and others, which he had erected himself in *Kiow*. He afterwards sent an Embassy to *Constantinople* to demand the Sister of the Emperor *Basile*, whom he obtained in Marriage, and lived with her three and twenty Years. He built the City *Wolodimir*, upon the *Clisma*, between the *Occa* and the *Wolga*; instituted the Feast of the Princess *Olba*; and was himself, after his Death, placed among the Number of the Saints, as the Apostle of his Country.

JEROSLAWS.
A. D. 1020.

THE Death of *Wolodimir-Basile* occasioned terrible Disorders in the State, he left ten Sons, by different Wives, who entered into a desperate War with one another, so that there were nothing but Murders, Treasons and Battles,

* PERUN was the God of Fire, the Word *Perun* signifying Fire in the Muscovite Language. This Idol was represented with a Thunderbolt in his Hand, and had a constant Fire of Oak kept near him, which was not to go out, but at the Peril of the Lives of those who were set to watch it.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

7

Battles, till *Jeroslaws* had vanquished all the rest, and took upon him the Title of Monarch of *Russia*.

JEROSLAWS left five Sons, who divided his Provinces among them. 1. *Zassas* had *Kiow*. 2. *Stoklas* had *Czerniboff*. 3. *Wsewolode*, *Pereslaw*. 4. *Gregory*, *Smolensko*; and, 5. *Wenceslas* had *Novogorod* and *Wolodimir*. This Partition did not hinder the Brothers, after the Death of their Father, from endeavouring to destroy one another, and *Wsewolode*, the third, was too powerful for all the rest.

WOLODIMIR II. the Son of *Wsewolode*, WOLODIMIR II.
A. D. 1043. once more reduced all the State to the Subjection of one Prince, and took, as his Grandfather *Jeroslaws* had done, the Title of Monarch; as he was more absolute, so he was more distinguished than any of his Predecessors, by carrying on a War with *Geiza II.* King of *Hungary*. It was this *Wolodimir* who first established the Ceremonies observ'd at the Coronation of the *Russian* Monarchs for a long Time after his Reign. He maintained a long and cruel War with the *Barbarians*, who dwelt on the Borders of the *Danube*. He even threatened *Constantine*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, who, to prevail upon him to retire, sent him large Presents by certain Bishops, by whom he was treated as * *CZAR*.

His Son *Wsewolode II.* was also Monarch WSEWOLODE II.
A. D. 1116. of all *Russia*; but eight Sons, whom he left behind him, divided the Kingdom once more, which was very much weakened thereby, as well as by the War they were obliged to carry

B 4

on

* Which Word in the Slavonian Language means KING; and is not derived from *Cæsar*, as some have imagined.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

on against the *Tartars* on one Side, and the Knights of the *Short-Sword* on the other.

THESE Knights owed their Original to certain Merchants of the Towns on the *Baltick Sea*, who formed an Association against the Infidels of *Livonia*, where the Christian Faith not being yet well settled, the Bishop of *Riga* laid the Foundation of this Order, by the Authority of Pope *Innocent III.* who allowed them the third Part of what they should conquer from the *Barbarians*. They observed the same Rules as the Knights *Templars*, and were called *Friers*, or Knights of the *Short-Sword*, because they had on their *White Cloaks*, says *Olearius*, a red *Short-Sword*, with a Star of the same Colour; which they afterwards changed into two Short-Swords in Saltier, with their Points downwards. They made some Progress, but finding themselves too weak, they were joined with the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, with whom they were incorporated in the Year 1238.

RUSSIA at this Time extended no farther towards the East than to the River *Occa*, which separated it from the *Morduate Tartars*; towards the North it went no farther than the Mountains of *Kargapol*; but towards the South, the Valour of *Ieroslaw*s and *Wolodimir II.* who had carried their Arms as far as the *Danube*, had brought under their Subjection all the Country about the *Borysthenes*, and all that was between the *Przypiecz* and the *Niefter*, and which is at this Day called *Black-Russia*. All these Lands became the Patrimony of the Descendants of *Wserwolode II.* who divided the Provinces among them, which

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

9

which were subdivided by their Successors, so that there were to be seen, at the same Time, one Prince of *Kiow*, another Prince of *Wolodimir*, another of *Novogorod*, one of *Smolensko*, and another of * *Halicz*. It was no difficult Matter for the numerous *Tartars* to make so many little Princes tributary, who were in no Condition to make Head against them. Prince *Gregory*, the Great-grandson of *Wsewolode II.* could not resist them, but he saw not the Slavery of his Country, losing his Life with his Crown. It was at this Time, that this barbarous People, under the Conduct of the famous *Baltzi*, their Cham, threw themselves into *Hungary*, where they committed incredible Ravages. The Divisions that reign'd among these petty *Russian* Princes help'd to prolong their Slavery, they supplanted one another, made War among themselves, and chose the Chams of *Tartary* constantly for their Arbiters, the Weakest acknowledging them for their Sovereigns, that they might obtain Succours to pull down their Enemies.

THE *Russians* about the Lake *Ilmen*, and beyond the *Wolga*, remained the most powerful, and were enough so oftentimes to disturb the *Teutonic* Knights. *Romanoff*, the Grandson of *Wsewolode II.* whose Sister, *Helena*, was married to *Casimir II.* King of *Poland*, reigned at *Novogorod*, from whence he made several Invasions into *Livonia*; but with so little Success, that the *Russians* were forced to yield

* This was a Town of Black-Russia in Pokutia on the Niester, which was the Appenage of *Meislas*, Son of *WSEWOLODE II.*

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

yield *Pleskow* to the Grand Master *Herman Falox*. It is true, he did not keep it long, for Prince *Alexander* retook it a few Years after. *Daniel Romanowitz*, that is to say, the Son of *Romanoff*, was continually at War with the *Teutonic* Knights, under their Grand Masters *Briethausen* and *Rodenstein*. He entered into *Livonia* as far as *Dorpt*, with the Design of retaking the Fortrefs of *Odenpo*, which the *Russians* had formerly possessed; but he was always unsuccessful.

THE direct Line of the *Russian* Monarchs maintained themselves in *Wolodimir*, where *George* was killed by the *Tartars*; his Son *Demetrius* left *Ieroslaws II.* who had five Sons; *Alexander*, *Theodore*, *Andrew*, *Michael*, and *Demetrius*. *Alexander* succeeded his Father, and was one of the first who endeavoured to shake off the *Tartarian* Yoke; for which Reason he resolved to transfer his Residence to a Place a little farther from their Frontiers than *Wolodimir*. He chose *Moscow*, situated in a Plain indeed that was barren, but watered by a little River which gives its Name to the City, and which, at the Distance of some Wersts, falls into the *Occa*. It was this *Alexander* who died with the Reputation of a Saint, and whose Ashes the Emperor *Peter* the Great, of immortal Memory, caused to be transported, in our Time, to the Church which he built in the Neighbourhood of *Petersburgh*, and called by the Name of *Alexander Newski*.

DANIEL
ALEXAN-
DROWITZ.
A. D. 1300.

DANIEL ALEXANDROWITZ built the Citadel of *Moscow*, and took upon him the Title of *Grand Duke*. This Translation of the Re-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

II

Residence of the Prince, made Strangers change the Name of the Nation; and because *Daniel* called himself Great Duke of *Moscow*, of *Wolodimir*, &c. they called him Prince of *Moscow*, and the People had the Name of *Muscovites*, which they never approved, tenaciously preserving that which they had always bore. It was under the Reign of *Daniel* that the *Poles* conquered *Black-Russia*, *Podolia*, and even *Kiow*, which they took from the collateral *Russian* Princes, who had secured themselves there from the Invasion of the *Tartars*.

DANIEL left *George*, *John*, *Boris*, and *George*.
Alexander. *George Danielowitz* succeeded his Father; but *Demetrius Michaelowitz*, the Grand-son of the Grand Duke *Ieroslaw* II. disputed the Crown with him, having the Assistance of the *Tartars*, and carried his Cruelty so far as to assassinate him: But he was soon punished for this Murder; for the Cham, upon some Suspicion, took away his Life, and settled the Succession upon the second Son of *Daniel*, called *John Danielowitz*, whose Character acquired him the Name of *Kalita*, because he always carry'd a Purse about him to distribute Alms. After his Death his Sons, *John* and *Simon*, fell into a Dispute concerning the Lordship of *Tweer*, which they referred to the Cham *Zana-Beck*, who gave it in Favour of the last, upon Condition, that he should pay him a certain Tribute. But *Demetrius Iwanowitz*, the Son of the elder Brother, shew'd more Courage.

A. D. 1327.

Demetrius Michaelowitz.

A. D. 1330.

John Danielowitz.

A. D. 1330.

DEMETRIUS
IWANO-
WITZ.

A. D. 1366.

THE Great Cham of the *Tartars*, on this Side the *Caspian* Sea, and the Desert of *Capchac*,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

chac, was *Tochatmitch*, the same against whom the great *Timur-Beck*, commonly called *Tamerlane*, marched in the Year of *Egira* 792. He was of the Race of *Touchi*, the Son of *Gengbiz-Cham*, and had the Seat of his Empire at *Ourtoepa*, on the Banks of the *Wolga*, between *Samara* and *Saratof*. This Great Cham had several Chams under him, who were Princes of the Blood Royal of *Touchi*; such were *Aisa-Beck*, *Mamai-Cham*, &c. over whom the Great Duke *Demetrius* obtained considerable Advantages; particularly in the Year 1379, he made such a Slaughter in the Army of the last, that all the Land, for thirteen Wersts from the Field of Battle, was covered with the Slain.

BUT little more than a Year after, the great Cham, *Tochat-Mitch*, marched against *Demetrius* at the Head of his Hords, took *Wolodimir* and *Moscow*, and put all he met to the Sword. We may guess at the Number of the Slain by what is related by an *Arabian* Author, who says, that fourscore dead Bodies were purchased for a Rouble, and that by this Traffick the *Tartars* gained three thousand Roubles; but it is very probable, that this is greatly exaggerated, for if *Demetrius* had been able to have raised an Army of two hundred and forty thousand Men, it is not likely that *Tochat-Mitch* could so easily have gained his Ends.

IT was but a few Years after this Victory, that the great Cham drew *Timur-Beck* upon him, by the Haughtiness and Insolence of his Manners, and was himself intirely defeated in his Turn. The Victor seized on his Capital
Our-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

13

Ourtoepa, and had the Satisfaction to ascend the Throne of *Touchi*. His Camp, which was three Leagues diameter, was encompassed by a Curtain of gold-flower'd Brocade, and he got so great a Booty, that the poor People in the Camp, who could hardly get enough to subsist themselves before, now gathered together so many Horses, Sheep, and other Things, that when they return'd, they were forced to leave a great Part behind them. At an Entertainment that *Timur-Beck* gave the Officers of his Army, on the Plain of *Ourtoepa*, he had found so much Riches, that the Meats were served up only in Vessels of Gold and precious Stones: Such was the Wealth and Power of the Conqueror of *Demetrius*.

BASILE DEMETROWITZ, his Son and Successor, found Things much altered, and made use of the Misery to which *Timur-Beck* had reduced the *Tartars* not only to shake off their Yoke, but even to drive them out of *Russia*, and was so successful in his Engagements with them, that he forced them to the other Side of the *Wolga*. The Reign of this Prince was long. He had, by his Wife *Anastasia*, but one Son, who was of his own Name; but some Suspicions he had of the Virtue of this Princess, made him leave his Dominions to his Brother *Gregory*, giving his Son only to the Principality of * *Uglitz*.

BASILE DEMETROWITZ.
A. D. 1381.

THIS Disposition excited fresh Troubles in *Russia*: The Boyars took the Part of *Basile-Basilowitz* against his Uncle, who had Recourse to Arms to maintain the Right which his

GREGORY DEMETROWITZ.

* Which at present makes a Part of the Province of *Rostow* on the North of that of *Moscow*.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

his Brother's Last-Will had given him, and defeated the Partizans of his Nephew, who retired into the Province which his Father had assigned for his Appenage. The Great Duke Gregory was at War with the *Poles*, almost the whole Time of his Reign, which was but short, and at his Death he declared his Nephew his Successor, altho' he had two Sons of his own.

BASILE II.

THESE could not approve of this testamentary Disposition of their Father's Crown, tho' it was the same Right by which he held it himself, even to the Exclusion of the Prince who now had a double Claim to it. During the Reign of their Father they had made a strong Party, who were now in Arms to take away from *Basile* the Dominions that were just restored to him; and even at the Hazard of going to War again among themselves about the Division of them. *Basile* supported himself till the Stratagems of his Enemies, more than their Power, had made him fall into their Hands; and to render him incapable, as they thought, of reigning, they put out both his Eyes, and banished him once more to *Uglitz*. The great Men who had sided with the Sons of *Gregory*, were shock'd at this Cruelty; wherefore, going over to the unfortunate *Basile*, they brought him back to *Moscow*, where he reigned till his Death with the Surname of *Cziemnox*, or *the Blind*.

JOHN BASI-
LOWITZ.

To this good Prince succeeded *John Basilowitz*, who had the Surname of *Victorious*, on Account of his great Actions, and the Conquests he made, under Pretence of revenging the Insults his Father had received from *Demetrius*

metrius Siemacha, who commanded at *Novogorod*; from *Andrew* his Brother, who was Master of *Novogorod Sewierski*, and from *Boris Alexandrowitz*, who commanded in *Tweer*. He seized on these three Provinces. That of *Novogorod Weliki*, or the *Great*, was so large, that *Who can resist God, or Novogorod the Great?* was a Proverb. She was able to raise two hundred thousand arm'd Men: But these Conquests would have been imperfect if he had not intirely shook off the Yoke of the *Tartars*, who, from Time to Time, gave the *Russians* to understand, that they had been their Masters, and would, if they pleased, be so again.

AFTER having defeated these *Tartars* so effectually, that there was no Fear of their entering again into his Dominions, he took the Title of Great Duke of *Wolodimir, Moscow*, and *Novogorod*, and Sovereign of all *Russia*. He was not satisfy'd with only taking Possession of the States that had been subject to his Ancestors, but would rejoin those Places to them, which had been dismembered from them by his Neighbours. He attacked *Alexander*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, who had married his Daughter *Helena*, and took *Smolensko* from him, with every Thing that he had divided from *Russia*.

HE attacked *Lithuania* in three different Places at the same Time; and, perhaps, this War was carry'd on with the greater Fury, as it was begun on Account of the Church, *Alexander* having neglected to give a Cloister to some *Greek Nuns*, in the City of *Wilna*, as he had promised when he marry'd the *Russian Princess Helena*. One Army entered by *Novogorod*

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

gorod Sewierski, the second by *Toropiecz* and *Bielba*, and the third by *Dorobobus* and *Smolensko*; so disposed, that they could all assist one another. The *Lithuanians*, commanded by *Constantine Ostroky*, presently appeared on the Borders of *Wedrasch*, where a bloody Battle was fought, in which the *Lithuanian* General and the Chiefs of his Army were taken Prisoners; *Dorobobus*, *Bielba*, *Breusko*, and almost all the Province of *Sewierski*, submitted to the Laws of the Victor. Never was any Prince more fortunate; he found in the City of *Novogorod Weliki* alone above three hundred Waggons loaden with Gold, Silver, and valuable Moveables. At the same Time he was hardly ever seen himself at the Head of his Army, which occasioned *Stephen*, the *Weywode* of *Moldavia*, his Ally, to say, that he made Conquests in his Sleep, whilst he, with much Difficulty, defended his Frontiers, notwithstanding he was always in the Field. He had also some Disputes with the Crown of *Sweden*, and after he had recovered *Pleskow*, he made War with the *Livonians*, and built the Fortrefs of *Iwangorod* on their Frontiers.

IWAN BASILOWITZ had two Wives, the first, the Daughter of the Prince of *Tweer*; the second, named *Sophia*, a Daughter of *Thomas*, Prince of the *Morea*, of the Family of *Paleologus*. All Historians agree, that this last Princess had more Prudence and Policy than is commonly to be met with in her Sex, and that her Husband was indebted to her for a great Part of the Glory, that he acquired in his last Expeditions. It was she who engaged him to shake off the Yoke of the

Tartars, from whom she very artfully took away a House that they had in the City of *Moscow*, which she pulled down and raised a Temple on the Ruins of it, promising them to build them a stately Palace without the City; but this Promise was never performed. The Czar had one Son, named *John*, by his first Wife, whom he married to a Daughter of *Stephen*, *Weywode* of *Moldavia*, and who dying before his Father, left a Son called *Demetrius*, who was designed by his Grandfather for his Successor: But *Sophia* knew so well how to manage the Affections of her Husband, that she engaged him to promise to leave the Crown to her Son *Gabriel*, to whom he had destined the Principality of *Novogorod*. It was therefore necessary to deprive *Demetrius* of his Liberty; but the Czar changing his Mind at the Instant of his Death, released this young Prince out of Prison, and called him again to the Succession: The Enjoyment of which *Gabriel* soon took from him with his Life.

JOHN BASILOWITZ the *Victorious* died in the Year of the Christian *Era* 1505, and of the World, according to the *Russian* Account, 7014.

GABRIEL succeeding his Father, took the Name of *Basile Iwanowitz* III. but as long as his Nephew *Demetrius Iwanowitz* lived, he would not take the Crown, but contented himself with the Title of Administrator, till after he had got rid of his Competitor, by putting him to Death, and then he assumed the Dignity of Great Duke. He not only preserved the Conquests his Father had made,

BASILE IWA-
NOWITZ.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

but even augmented them, altho' he had some Reverse of Fortune in *Livonia*.

FROM the Time of the Union of the Knights of the *Short-Sword* to those of the *Teutonic* Order, the Grand Master of these, who resided in *Prussia*, sent a Chief Officer into *Livonia*, who was called *Heer Meister*, or Grand General. These Grand Generals had many Disputes with the Clergy of *Livonia*; and not less with the *Russians*, who had always an Inclination to add this Province to their Empire.

THE Annals of this Order speak of a Battle fought in the Year 1248, between the *Livonians* and the *Russians* of *Witepsk*, *Smolensko*, and *Pleskow*, in which ten thousand of the latter were slain. They contain also a long Recital of the Siege of *Nyenbuysen*, about 50 Wersts from *Dorpt* upon the *Wielka* or *Mudaw*; this Siege, undertaken in the Year 1381, by the Great Duke *Demetrius Iwanowitz* in Person, with an Army of three hundred thousand Men, was miraculously raised, if you believe them; the Great Duke was killed, his flying Troops were pursued and defeated; and the Bow, with which the Governor had shot the fatal Arrow, was consecrated upon the Altar of the Church in the Castle, where this miraculous Deliverance was annually celebrated till the Year 1558, when the Czar *John Basilowitz* made himself Master of the Castle. The same Annals speak of an Irruption that the Grand General, *Borg*, made into *Pleskow* with an hundred thousand Men, of which he reaped no Fruit, but only
drew

drew the *Russians* into *Livonia*, where they demolished several Castles, and carry'd off a considerable Booty.

WHEN the Historians of this Order speak of the Grand General *Walter Plettenberg*, they seem to want Words to express themselves, agreeable to the high Opinion they had of him, and make him surpass even *Alexander* and *Cæsar*. It was with this Chief that *Basile Iwanowitz* III. was in Dispute. His Father had made an Irruption, with some Success, into *Livonia*: *Plettenberg* soon made a Return; but a Sicknefs in his Army obliged him to retreat fighting: *Basile Iwanowitz* next marched in his Turn against the *Livonians*, with a formidable Army; the Grand General assembled together all his Forces, and joined to them great Succours drawn from *Courland*. The two Armies met near *Pleskow*, in a Plain that extended for several Wersts, where the Great Duke advanced with his Troops divided into several Columns, and supported by another Body of thirty thousand *Tartars*. Never was fought a more terrible Battle. The *Russians* and *Tartars* making use of Bows, discharged such a prodigious Quantity of Arrows, that they seemed like a thick Cloud darkening the Heavens. The *Livonians* made a horrible Fire, and afterwards advanced with their Sabres, in a Kind of Fury; the *Tartars* betook them to Flight, and the *Russians* being quite overthrown, retired with the Remnant of their Army to *Pleskow*. *Leunclavius*, the Historian, says, that the Loss of the *Russians* was so great, that the Plain, which was above sixty Stades in Length and

C 2

Breadth,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Breadth, was quite covered with the Slain: The Consequence of this Battle was a Treaty of Peace for fifty Years between *Russia* and *Livonia*.

PLESKOW was a Sort of Republick, which had her Dukes, or Statholders, chosen by the People, and confirmed by the Czars. The general Affairs were guided by a Senate, but the People were consulted on making Peace or War, in forming Alliances, on the Election of a Duke, and on raising of Taxes. The Populace, whom Ease oftentimes renders insolent, took it in their Heads, if one may be allowed the Expression, to correct Providence, and were for making an equal Distribution of the Estates of the most powerful Citizens. We may easily suppose, that this Project caused a great Number of the Citizens to be upon their Guard. The Clergy and the Senate had Recourse to the Grand General *Plettenberg*, who refused them his Assistance, for fear he should be accused of infringing the Peace; so that they were oblig'd to implore the Succour of the Great Duke *Basile Iwanowitz*, who coming to *Pleskow* with a Body of his Forces, was admitted into the Town; he heard both Sides, and sent the Chiefs of the Faction to *Moscow*, and reunited the Town and its Dependencies to his Empire.

SOME Years after he declared War against *Sigismund*, King of *Poland*, under Pretence that his Sister, the Widow of King *Alexander*, had not treated him with the Respect that was due to him; but the true Cause of this War was the Design he had to take Advantage

vantage of the Softness in which *Sigismund* and the *Lithuanians* lived, that he might recover the Places their Ancestors had taken from *Russia*. He seized upon *Smolensko* by the Help of *Michael Lintski*, a Descendant of the *Russian* Princes, who gained over the Garison in such a Manner, that they not only delivered up the Town to the *Russians*, but also declared for the Great Duke. Fleish'd with this Conquest, he caused his Army to enter into *Lithuania*, and forced several Places to submit to him. *Sigismund* prepared for Battle, and his Troops, under the Command of *Constantine Ostrosky*, crossed the *Borysthenes* below *Orsa*, on a Bridge, whilst the Horse passed thro' a Ford a little higher. *Iwan Andrew Czeladin* commanded the *Russian* Army, which consisted of above four-score thousand Men; but he committed an unpardonable Fault in letting all the Enemies Forces pass the River quietly before he attack'd them: He was defeated and taken Prisoner, with the greatest Part of the other Generals. But the *Lithuanians* got no Advantage by this Victory, as they could not recover *Smolensko*, which the Great Duke still kept. Some Years after he sent another Army by the *Duna*, which laid a great Part of *Lithuania* waste.

KING SIGISMUND had also at that Time a Dispute with the *Teutonick* Knights, from whom he with-held some Fortresses in *Livonia*. The Emperor *Maximilian* I. besides his being Protector of this Order, had other Reasons of State that obliged him to spirit up all the Enemies he could against that King: Wherefore he judged it proper to make an

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Alliance with the Czar of *Russia*; to this End, he sent a solemn Embassy to him, and wrote him a Letter, still preserved in the Archives of *Moscow*, wherein he gives him the Title of EMPEROR, a Copy of which the Czar, *PETER the Great*, caused to be printed, when he assumed that Title, to shew, that it had been before given to one of his Predecessors, whose Power was not comparable to his own.

WE have before seen the Dispositions of *Tartars* of the Empire of *Toucki*, who were surrounded by other *Tartarian* Principalities, some more civilized, others more barbarous than the *Toucki*. The chief of these was that whose King or Cham had his Residence at *Casan*, on the Banks of the *Wolga*: In the Neighbourhood of this Kingdom were the *Schibanski* and *Kosatki Tartars*, and she reckoned among her Subjects the *Czeremissi*, expert in the Use of the Bow, and the *Czubaschi*, excellent in their Navigation on the *Wolga*. The Czar *Basile*, always successful when he employed Address rather than Force, engaged the *Tartars* of *Casan* to have such a Dependence upon him, that they received their Kings from his Hands. The Czar always kept some Persons at *Casan* in whom he could confide, who constantly gave him an Account of all the Proceedings of these Kings; and upon the least Suspicion, he did not fail of getting them deposed. It was thus, that *Alega*, *Abdelatiw* and *Machmedemin*, all Brothers, mounted the Throne successively: Under the last the People of *Casan* shook off their Yoke; but after his Death, one named *Scheale*, having

ving married his Widow, who was Sister to the Czar, mounted the Throne by the Assistance of his Brother-in-Law: But he was not able to maintain himself long in it, for his Subjects could not bear his effeminate Life, his blind Submission to the Will of the Czar, nor his great Affection for Strangers, whom he always prefer'd to his own Subjects; they resolved, therefore, to take his Crown from him, and give it to a *Tartarian* Prince.

MENDLI-GIREY, the Chief of the Race of Chams, who reigned at that Time in the *Crimea*, had left two Sons, *Machmet-Girey* and *Sap-Girey*; the first succeeded his Father, and the *Tartars* of *Casan* chose the other for their King. Besides the powerful Assistance they might at any Time expect from *Machmet-Girey*, *Mendli-Girey*, the Father of these two Princes, had married *Nursulta*, the Widow of two Kings of *Casan*, and Mother of *Abdelatiw* and *Machmedemin*, their last Sovereigns.

At the Approach of *Sap-Girey*, *Scheale* quitted his Capital, and retired to *Moscow*, taking all that he could carry with him. *Machmet-Girey*, after having settled his Brother on the Throne of *Casan*, set out to return to the *Crimea*; but he had no sooner crossed the *Don*, than he changed his Design, and turned, all on a sudden, towards *Moscow*. The Czar *Basile* expected nothing less, but relying on the Reputation he had acquired, imagined he had no Need to dread such an Invasion: He was no sooner informed of the March of the *Tartars*, but he sent an Army into the Field under the Command of *Demetrius Bieslki*, to dispute the Passage of the *Occa*

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

with them. *Sap-Girey*, when he heard of his Brother's Enterprize, came with his Army to second him, and advancing by the North of the *Wolga*, he surpris'd and plundered *Nis-Novogorod* and *Wolodimir*. *Machmet-Girey* having got the Whip-hand of *Bieslki*, got over the *Occa*, and plundered all the Country. The Czar abandoned his Capital, which was in no Condition to resist the *Tartars*; the Ambassadors of *Livonia*, who were then at his Court, retired to *Tweer*, and nothing was neglected, that might hinder the Enemy from seizing on *Moscow*, where the Czar had left his Brother-in-Law *Peter Codaiculu*, a *Tartarian* Prince, Brother of King *Machmedemin*, who had embraced the Christian Religion. *Machmet-Girey* came very near this City, where all the Country People had endeavour'd to secure themselves; but whether he despaired of taking it, whether he feared the Want of Provisions in a Country, where he had destroyed every Thing, or whether knowing the Character of the Czar *Basile*, he the more easily listened to the Propositions made him by the Governor, after he had received some Presents, and a Promise in Writing of being paid an annual Tribute, he withdrew towards *Resan*, and gave the *Russians* Leave to purchase the Slaves he had made. He endeavour'd to seize on this Place by the Intrigues of *Taskowitz*, a *Polish* Officer, who brought him Succours; but very far from that, he left behind him the original Treaty, by which the Czar had acknowledged himself his Tributary: Which happened in this Manner.

MACH-

MACHMET-GIREY caused the Governor to be told, that he would use his Tributary as his Slave, and demanded several Things of him by one of his Officers: The Governor, named *John Kowar*, answered, that the Czar his Master was Tributary to no one, and he would obey no Orders but his. The *Tartarian* King, to convince him of his Mistake, sent him the Treaty. While *Kowar* remained in an Incertainty what he should do, a Gunner fired upon the *Tartars* and *Litbuanians*, which put them in Disorder; *Machmet-Girey* complained of this, and would have had the Gunner delivered up to him; the Governor refused it, they parley'd a long Time, and the *Tartar* impatient, or pressed by his People loaded with Spoil, all on a sudden made a Retreat, without thinking of demanding the Treaty back again, which was sent to the Czar.

THE Year following the Czar *Basile* raised a numerous Army, which he assembled about *Colomna*, upon the *Occa* between *Moscow* and *Resan*; from whence he dispatched a Herald to *Machmet-Girey* at *Capha*, to tell him, he was come to make War with him, as with a Thief, and that he intended to give him Battle. The proud *Tartar* answered, that he received Orders from no one, and that he should take Arms when he thought proper; and that when he had a Mind to enter *Russia*, there were an hundred Passages open to him. *Basile*, irritated at this Answer, marched toward *Casan*, ravaging and pillaging all the Lands of the Enemy: He caused a Fortress to be built on the *Wolga* at the Mouth of the
Sura,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Sura, giving it his own * Name, and retired.

THE next Year he sent a formidable Army towards *Casan*, under the Command of *Michael Georgiwitz*: The News of which terrified *Sap-Girey* to that Degree, that he resolved to go to *Constantinople* to implore the Assistance of the *Grand Signor*; and sent for his Nephew, to leave him the Guardianship of his Kingdom in the mean Time; but the *Russian* Generals did not press so hard upon the *Tartars* as they ought to have done; nay, they even hindered King *Scheale* from doing several brave Actions, which would have reduced the Enemy, already dispirited, to the last Extremity. In short, the Knez *John Palitzki*, who had besieged *Casan*, raised the Siege very *mal-à-propos*, and this whole Expedition terminated only in obliging the King of *Casan* to send Ambassadors to the Czar *Bafile* to desire Peace, and to transport the Fair, formerly kept at *Gostinow-Osero* near *Casan*, to *Nisi-Novogorod*, whither the *Russians*, *Persians* and *Armenians* might all come alike by *Astracan*.

SAP-GIREY and his Brother had soon after a War with the King of *Astracan*, in which they had no Success; for *Mamai* and *Agis*, Chams of the *Nogay Tartars*, betrayed them, killed *Machmet-Girey*, and would have seized upon *Precop*, but were unable. *Sap-Girey* succeeded his Brother, but was dethroned a short Time after, by his Subjects and his Nephew,

* *Wasilgorod*, about 140 *Wersts* from *Nisi-Novogorod*, and above 300 from *Casan*, upon the Frontiers of *Czere-missi*.

phew, who confined him in a Prison all the rest of his Days.

THE Czar *Basile Iwanowitz*, very much drained both of Men and Money by the Irruption of *Machmet-Girey*, and by the Expences he had been at for two Years together in his Expeditions against the *Tartars of Casan*, was endeavouring to put himself in a Condition, by the present Peace, to renew the War with more Success, but Death put an End to his Designs; and he left his Dominions to his Son, *John Basilowitz*.

BASILE IWANOWITZ had had two Wives, the first named *Salomé*, Daughter of the Boyar *John Sapur*: The Czar lived with her one and twenty Years without having any Children, which made him resolve to repudiate her, and shut her up in the Monastery of *Susdal*, notwithstanding all the Opposition she could make to the Violence that was offered her; for she even tore the Veil from her Head, and trampled it under her Feet. The Czar afterwards married *Helena*, the Daughter of the Knez *Basile Lintski*, and Niece of the Knez *Michael*, who was then in Prison: It was this General, whom we have before-mentioned, that conquered for the Czar, and reunited to *Russia*, the City of *Smolensko*, and other Places along the *Dnieper* or *Borysthenes*.

THE Czar is said to have determined in favour of *Helena*, not only as she was of the illustrious House of *Petrowitz* in *Hungary* and professed the *Greek* Religion, but on account of her Relation to the Knez *Michael Lintski*, whose Valour and Prudence he was well acquainted with, and who, he thought, might
be

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

be a powerful Tutor to his Children, if he should have any. By this Marriage, the Czar *Bafile* left two Sons, *John Bafilowitz*, who succeeded him, and *George*; both whom he put under the Tutelage of *Michael Lintski*. This worthy Man was extreamly chagrined at the Behaviour of the Czarina Dowager, his Niece, who led an infamous Life, not only with the Boyar *John Owczina*, but abandoned herself to all the most scandalous Liberties that her Sex was capable of. Whatever Concern this gave him, he was very cautious in the Manner of reprehending her, yet could not do it so, but to draw her Hatred upon him; wherefore she had him accused of a Design of delivering up his two Pupils to the King of *Poland*; she wanted not false Witnesses; so the Knez *Michael* was condemned to Prison, where he ended his Days miserably: But the Crimes of this vile Woman did not go unpunished; for at length she was poisoned, not without the Knowledge of her Son; and her Lover *John Owczina*, who had endeavoured to fly from Justice, being retaken, was put to Death by the Hands of the common Executioner.

It may not be improper, before we enter upon the Reign of *John Bafilowitz*, to take Notice, that it was his Father, who joined to *Russia* the Provinces along the Coasts of the Frozen Sea; which Conquest he made after the taking *Smolensko*, and before the War in *Casan*. It cost him not much Pains; for sending a small Body of Foot, supported by a considerable Detachment of Horse, he soon made himself Master of the Provinces of
Condora,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

29

Condora, Juhora, and Petzora, inhabited by the *Samoieds, Ostiacks*, and other barbarous People, who had never before submitted to any sovereign Power.

THE Czar *John Basile Basilowitz* was but twelve Years of Age at the Death of his Father, and about twenty-two when his Mother died; and he took upon himself the Government of his vast Dominions. A greater Tyrant was scarce ever known, or one guilty of more monstrous Cruelties; yet, as he was a Friend to the Rites of the Church and Ecclesiastical Ceremonies, *Paulus Jovius*, a Bishop, gives him the Name of a *good and devout Christian*: He had the same Merits that made our *Edward* a Confessor, and for the Want of which some really good and virtuous Princes have been represented, by Ecclesiasticks, as Atheists and Monsters.

JOHN BASI-
LOWITZ.
A. D. 1540.

THIS Prince however, in the Beginning of his Reign, endeavoured to civilize his People, and instruct them in those Arts and Sciences that are useful to Society. To which End, he sent an Embassy to the Emperor *Charles V.* to obtain from him a Number of all Sorts of Artizans to come and settle in *Russia*: The Emperor very readily consented to it; but the *Livonians*, whose Interest it was to have the *Russians* continue in the Ignorance they were, opposed this, and it was with much Difficulty, that the Ambassador could bring any of them to *Moscow*.

WHILST he was engaged in this Project, worthy a good Prince, he considered how he might make an End of the Conquest of the Kingdom of *Casan*, in which Design his Father

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

ther had failed. He raised a very numerous Army, and furnished with all Sorts of war-like Stores *Nisi-Novogorod* and the Fortrefs of *Wafilgorod*, where he fixed his Magazines: So that it may be said, he made War in this Country, for the first Time, according to those Regulations that are observed in *Europe*, and which were unknown to the *Tartars*.

THE Czar himself marched at the Head of his Army, and went to besiege *Casan*. The *Tartars* had got together a Part of their Forces there, and being informed of the Preparations that were making against them by the *Russians*, they had put the City in the best State of Defence, that the Season of the Year, and the little Time they had for it, would allow them. *John Basilowitz* attacked it with so much Vigour, that in a very few Days there was a Breach made large enough to begin the Assault: But the Chams of the *Schibanski* and *Kofatski Tartars*, with others, who had many Bodies of Troops in the Field, very much incommoded the Besiegers, from whom they took all their Convoys. Those in the Town made so stout a Resistance, that there was not much Likelihood of its being taken so easily as was at first imagined. The *Russian* Troops, accustomed till that Time to make War after the Manner of the *Tartars*, that is, by ruining, plundering and destroying every Place, began to murmur, that they were kept too long shut up in their Camp, and that the Campaign was too tedious; they carry'd their Insolence so far, as to be desirous to force the Czar to make Peace with the
Enemy,

Enemy, and almost the whole Camp threatened a general Revolt. *John Basilowitz* found himself under a Necessity of dissembling with them. He was willing to carry *Casan*, because he was persuaded, that on the Reduction of that Fortrefs, from whence he could keep the *Tartars* in Awe, depended his Conquest of the rest of the Country, inhabited by this powerful People. However, that he might not fall into the Hands of his Enemies, he was obliged to do what his Army would have him; he raised the Siege, and made a fine Retreat. Being returned to *Moscow*, he determined to punish the Mutineers in such a Manner, that none afterwards should dare to follow their Example.

HE assembled the People, to whom he gave a short Account of the Expedition, and ended by assuring them, that he had the greatest Confidence in his *Russians*, and that having remarked their Jealousy on his having intrusted the Guard of his Person to Strangers, he was resolved to disband them: And thereupon formed a Guard of two thousand Musqueteers, chosen from among the *Russian* Troops, which he called *Aprisnes*. He gave them to understand, that he was resolved to reward those who had behaved well in the Expedition to *Casan*, and ordered, according to the Custom of the Country, a publick Feast, to which he invited all the Officers and great Men of the Army. He had kept an exact List of all those who had excited or favoured the Revolt, and distributed among them Robes of black and red Satin. After the Repast, he made a Speech to the whole

I

Com-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Company, praising the Fidelity of some, and blaming the Insolence and Disobedience of others; shewing them how far he had extended his Patience and his Clemency, and at length declared, that he would make an Example of the Culpable: Whereupon he immediately delivered those, to whom he had given the black Robes, to the Persons appointed to execute his Orders, and punish them to the utmost Severity. Some were hanged, some quartered, others had their Heads cut off, and others were drowned. The Soldiers were decimated, and a horrible Slaughter was made among them.

AFTER this Execution the Czar employed all his Care in making new Levies. And as he was a Prince of a most unaccountable Cast of Mind, he took very extraordinary Methods, among which, one odd Whim is related of him, That he came one Day to his *Diack*, or principal Secretary, and gave him a formal Petition, desiring him to have the Goodness to make ready two hundred thousand Men and Arms, by such a particular Time, named in his Petition, and he should be thankful to him, and pray for his Health; and so subscribed himself, *Thy humble Servant, Jocky of Moscua.*

THE *Diack* knew too well the Danger of not granting his Master's Petition, and made all the Speed he could to raise the Men required. The Czar, in the mean Time, took several foreign Officers into his Pay from *Poland, Germany, and Scotland*, whom he cloathed in an handsome Manner, and well instructed in his military Discipline. He formed considerable

derable Magazines of Powder, Ball, and all Sorts of Arms and Ammunition. The *Wolga* was covered with long and flat-bottomed Boats, and he immediately entered into a new Campaign, and was seen under the Ramparts of *Casan*, before they could have News in that Town of his Departure. This Expedition was more successful than the last. The Place was battered with so much Vigour, that it was carry'd at the first Attack, and all the Provinces came to implore Mercy of the Victor, who seized on every Place, and divided the Lands and the Spoil among those who had served well. CASAN taken.

THE *Wolga*, which from its Source to the City of *Casan* runs from the West to the East, forms an Angle there, and, on a sudden, turns its Course to the South, going the same Way on for near a thousand Wersts; and then, after having formed several large Islands, falls into the *Caspian-Sea*: At forty-five Wersts from its Mouth is found the Island of *Delgoi*, wherein is the large City of *Astracan*, which, at the Time we are speaking of, was the Capital of the *Nogay Tartars*, who had sent powerful Succours to the Assistance of the *Tartars* of *Casan*, their Allies, which was what now drew upon them the Arms of his Czarian Majesty; besides, that their City being extremely rich, he hoped to find in it wherewithal to reimburse him the Expences of the War. He communicated his Design to no one; but as soon as he had settled a Governor in *Casan*, and given necessary Orders for repairing the Outworks, he made his

D Army

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Army decamp, and conducted them with great Speed to *Astracan*.

NOTHING can be more agreeable than the Country upon the Borders of the *Wolga*; this River, like the *Nile*, overflowing regularly once a Year, renders the Country surprisngly fertile, which abounds in all the Necessaries of Life.

As soon as the Army was within Sight of the Walls of this great City, which is the Staple of all the People who trade by the Way of the *Caspian-Sea*, *Tartars*, *Moguls*, *Persians*, and *Armenians*; the Czar flying among his Men, from Rank to Rank, declared to them, that it was there they were to receive the Reward of all the Pains they had been at in the Campaign; and that the Riches of *Astracan* were their own, if they had Courage enough to lay hold of them. This short Speech was received with Acclamations of Joy by all his People; and the Czar, to make the best of the Disposition they were then in, led his Troops up immediately to the Town. The *Tartars*, gathering together in great Confusion, made at first some Shew of Resistance; but were soon obliged to yield to the superior Force of the *Russians*. The City was taken and plundered, and every Man was killed who was found with Arms in his Hand; those who escaped the Fury of the Soldiers, the Czar commanded to renounce Mahometanism, to embrace the Christian Religion, and be baptized; and if any refused, they were thrown into the River and drowned. A hopeful Way of making Profelytes! and shorter,

ASTRACAN
taken.

shorter, tho' not so likely to convince Men of their Errors as the more powerful Force of Reason.

AFTER this double Conquest, *John Basilowitz* thought there would be nothing difficult for him to undertake. He appointed the *Knez Zerebrinoff* Governor of *Astracan*, and caused himself to be acknowledged Emperor of the *Tartars*, which, as we shall see hereafter, drew upon him a War with the *Turks*, the Sultan *Selim* having formed a Design to go to *Astracan*, to wipe out the Stain that *Timur-Beck* had brought upon the *Ottoman* Race, by the Captivity of *Bajazet*.

It was in the thirteenth Year of the Reign of *John Basilowitz*, viz. *Anno 1553*, and the Year after the taking of *Astracan*, that the *English* landed in *Russia*, and were the first Strangers who discovered any Passage to that Country. Which was in the following Manner: In the Reign of Queen *Mary* * three Ships were fitted out from *England*, at the publick Charge, for the Discovery of the North-East Passage to *China*, and the *Indies*; they were put under the Command of Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, who, departing from the *Thames*, sailed to the *North-Cape*, where one of his Ships left him, and returned home. The other two Ships being separated, Sir *Hugh*, proceeding farther Northward, discovered that Part of *Greenland*, since called by the *Dutch*, *Spitzberg*; but the Severity of the Cold obliging him to return to the Southward, he was forced, by bad Weather, into the River *Arzina*, in *Muscovite Lapland*, from

D 2

whence

* Burchett's Naval History, Page 341.

whence being not able to come out, he was found there the next Spring frozen to Death, with all his Ship's Company, having the Notes of his Voyage, and his last Will, lying before him, whereby it appeared, that he lived till *January*; but *Richard Chancellour*, in the third Ship, with better Success, in the mean Time, entered *Wardbuys*, where he waited for some Time for his Companions, to no Purpose, uncertain whether they were lost, or driven farther by Strefs of Weather. He held a Council on what he should do, whether to return or pursue his Voyage: Whatever Danger might be in the last, every one agreed to it, that they might not seem to have less Courage than their Captain. They therefore set Sail, and, in a few Days, found themselves in a Sea where they could no longer perceive any Night: This Ship wandering about, in a short Time, entered into a large Bay or Gulph. Here they cast Anchor in Sight of Land, and, while they were examining the Coast, they discovered a Fishing-Boat. *Chancellour*, getting into his Sloop, went towards it, but the Fishermen took to Flight; he followed them, and overtaking them, shewed them such Civilities, that being unaccustomed to, it conciliated their Affections to him, and they carry'd him to the Place, where at present is the famous Port of *St. Michael Archangel*. These Fishermen immediately spread thro' all the Coasts an Account of the Arrival of the Strangers, and the People came from several Parts to see them, and ask Questions of them; they examined the other, in their Turn, and found, that

that the Country where they were was *Russia*, governed by the mighty Emperor *John Basilowitz*; they learnt also, that News had been already sent exprefs to this Prince, to inform him of their Arrival, and to receive his Orders concerning them; at length, at the End of a few Days, they had Guides given to them; and *Chancellour*, with some of his People, was conducted to *Moscow*, where he had very soon an Audience of the Emperor, whose Court and Riches had in them a Magnificence beyond any thing he could have imagined. He found *John Basilowitz* distinguished in Majesty from an hundred and fifty Boyars or Senators who encompassed his Throne: There was hardly any Thing to be seen in his great Hall but Gold and precious Stones; and in another, where the Czar invited him to a sumptuous Repast, all was of Silver, except the Buffet, in the Middle, in the Form of a large Pyramid, cover'd with Vessels of Gold, of such a prodigious Size, that the Buffet seemed to bend beneath the Weight of them: Here was placed the Hydromel, Wines, and strong Liquors, for the Czar's own Use. The favourable Reception that *Chancellour* met with, was such as encouraged him to make a second Voyage hither, in the fourth Year of *Queen Mary*, *Anno* 1557, when he brought over with him an Ambassador from the Czar, with Presents to the Queen, and an Invitation to settle a Trade to those Parts; but the Ship was cast away on the Coast of *Scotland*, where *Chancellour*, in saving the Ambassador, was himself unfortunately drowned.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

BUT to return: We have seen before, that the Grand General of *Livonia*, *Walter Plettenberg*, had made a Truce for fifty Years, with the Czar *Basile Iwanowitz*, at the Beginning of the sixteenth Century. This was punctually observed on both Sides; but the *Livonians* were not the more at Ease for it. *Plettenberg* had obtained the Dominion of *Livonia* from the Grand Master of the *Teutonic* Order, who resided in *Prussia*, by an Agreement with *Albert of Brandenburg*, who yielded the Sovereignty to him, and discharged him from the Oath by which the Grand Generals of *Livonia* obliged themselves to a Dependence on the Grand Master. After this Convention was passed, *Plettenberg* caused Money to be coined in his own Name, and obtained from the Emperor *Charles V.* the Right of a Seat and Vote in the Diet of the Empire. The Year following, the Reformation began to be established in *Livonia*, where *William of Brandenburg*, Archbishop of *Riga*, publicly received it. *Plettenberg* died in the Year 1535.

THE Affairs of *Livonia* now began to change their Face, the Militia was no longer exercised, no Army, either of Natives or Foreigners, was maintained; the publick Revenues were diverted to the Use of the Knights and their Relations, to that of the Bishops and Canons; besides, in the Assembly of the States, every Province refused to contribute to the publick Stock, under Pretence of several Privileges.

DURING the Time that the Truce continued with *Russia*, the Czar had taught his Soldiers the Art of War, and had heaped together

gether a vast Quantity of Arms and Ammunition of all Kinds, with a Design to subdue *Livonia*, and, by that Means, to extend his Empire from *Asia* to the *Baltick Sea*. The Truce being at an End, he sent to the Bishop of *Dorpt*, to demand the Tribute which his Predecessors had used to pay him. The Bishop, and the Grand Master, *Henry Galen*, sent an Ambassador to *Moscow*, to renew the Peace for fifteen Years, which was done, but on Condition, that certain *Greek Churches* should be rebuilt, and that the Differences between *Russia* and *Livonia* should be determined in three Years, especially with Respect to the Tribute. The *Livonians* promised every thing, but performed nothing: And the Grand Master perceiving the Preparations the *Russians* were making, sent to desire Succours from *Sigismund*, King of *Poland*, and *Gustavus Vasa*, King of *Sweden*, who both assured him they would assist him. In the mean Time *Livonia* was desolated by Civil Wars.

THE Czar, who had Spies on all Sides, being informed of all that passed, and not willing to draw too many Enemies upon him at once, left the *Livonians* at Quiet, pretending a religious Observance of the last Treaty, and fell, all on a sudden, with a formidable Army, upon *Finland*, under Pretence that King *Magnus Ladislaus* having formerly promised the *Russians* a Part of that Province, without delivering it to them, they were resolved to do themselves Justice. *Gustavus* sent to demand of the *Poles* and *Livonians* the same Assistance that he had generously offered

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

them when they were afraid of being attacked, and they made him believe they would come into the Field; wherefore he immediately passed the Streights of *Aland* with a Body of good Troops; he found *Wybourg* besieged; but, at his Approach, the Enemy raised the Siege, and retired, setting Fire to all the Places they passed thro'. *Gustavus* pursued them as far as *Kexholm* and *Notebourg*: But neither the *Livonians* nor *Polanders* appeared. *Gustavus* having expected them to no Purpose, and having driven from his Dominions the Enemy who desired Peace, he granted it, and then returned to *Stockholm*, leaving his faithless Allies exposed to all the Ills with which they were threatened by the irritated and disappointed *Russians*.

THE Czar soon repaired the Losses he had sustained in *Carelia*; and before the Season arrived of going into the Field, he sent again to the Bishop of *Dorpt*, and the Grand Master of *Livonia*, to demand the Execution of the last Treaty. These sent a solemn Embassy to *Moscow*, with private Instructions to make Peace, whatever it cost. The Ambassadors were charged with rich Presents for the Czar, who admitted them to a publick Audience; and after having reproached them for their Lightness and domestick Divisions, listened to their Propositions, and granted them Peace, on Condition, that they should disband six *German* Regiments, which were still in *Livonia*; and, that they should pay him forty thousand Crowns, without reckoning a thousand Ducats of Gold that the Bishop of *Dorpt* was to pay him every Year. The Ambassadors

I

dors consented to all, and retired ; but they were scarce got home to their own House, before they saw the Czar's Officers, who came to them to receive the forty thousand Crowns. They excused themselves, as not having such a Sum ready, but promised the Payment of it as soon as they could have Remittances from *Wenden*. The Czar imagining they intended to deceive him again, was resolved to revenge himself on them ; wherefore inviting them to a Banquet, the Table was served with covered Dishes, which, when they were uncovered, were all empty ; then rising from the Table, he told them, he would go and receive the forty thousand Crowns himself.

HE then ordered them Guides, who being instructed to lead them a great Way about, and the Army setting out immediately on their March, they were at the Foot of the Ramparts of *Nienbuysen* before the Ambassadors return'd. *Sigalei*, a *Tartar* Prince, who commanded this Army, committed all Sorts of Cruelties, sparing nothing, either sacred or prophane, throughout the whole Diocese of *Dorpt*, where he arrived in the Depth of Winter, a few Days before the Feast of *Epiphany*, which is the 6th Day of *January*. This Army lived for forty Days at Discretion in this distressed Country, from *Nienbuysen* to *Narva*, from whence they retired, and in that Time laid every Place waste, massacred, without Mercy, all the Children that were under twelve Years of Age, and all that were older, were sold as Slaves to the *Tartars*.

THE States on this Occasion assembled at *Wenden*, where, after many Debates, it was resolved,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

resolved, that they should desire a Suspension of Arms of the Czar for four Months, and in that Time, that they should send an Embassy to him with sixty or seventy thousand Crowns to buy a Peace, which, though very burdensome to them to purchase at that Rate, would be still better than War, in their present Circumstances.

AT the Extremity of *Livonia*, on the Frontiers of *Ingria*, is the great and strong City of *Narva*, which is separated only by a River of the same Name, from another Fortrefs, built in the Year 1462, by the Czar *John Basilowitz* the *Victorious*, and to which he gave the Name of *Iwanagorod*. The Czar had in this Fortrefs a Garison of three thousand Men: The *Livonians* had, on their Side, a good Garison in *Narva*. While the Ambassadors were on the Road, some rash Fellows, from the Top of a Tower, perceiving a Company of *Russians* walking in *Iwanagorod*, discharg'd two Culverins at them loaded with Bullets; the rest of the *Livonians*, who were on the Ramparts and the Out-works, supposing the Truce was at an End, levelled their Cannon, and made some Discharges in their Turn: Several *Russians* were killed; and the Commandant immediately dispatched an Express to the Czar, to inform him in how base a Manner the *Livonians* had violated the Truce. The Ambassadors arriving some Time after this Express, were admitted to an Audience; but it was only to be reproached with the vile Behaviour of their Countrymen; after which they received Orders to depart with Speed, and carry back their Money with them: The
Czar

Czar soon followed in Person, at the Head of his Army, and laid Siege to the City of *Narva*, which he took in eight Days; the Castle indeed held out somewhat longer, but it was only till the commanding Officers could obtain a Capitulation. The Surrender of this Place drew on the Ruin of all the Towns and Castles within fifteen Miles about it. *NARVA taken.*

THE Czar did not stop here: As soon as the fine Weather came, that is in the Month of *June*, he sent *Sigalei* with four-score thousand Men into the Bishoprick of *Dorpt*, with Orders to take the famous Fortrefs of *Nienbuysen*, where the *Russians* had formerly received so signal a Disgrace. *Nienbuysen* held out longer than *Narva*, and gave Time to the Grand General to make some faint Endeavours to bring together a Body of five and twenty hundred Horfe, which he caused to advance as far as *Kiriepe*, a Castle belonging to the Bishop of *Dorpt*, with Design to attack the *Russians*; nevertheless nothing was done; but the Grand General passed his Time during the Siege in a scandalous Indolence in his Camp; and when he knew that the Fortrefs had capitulated, he plundered, and set Fire himself to the Castle of the Bishop, his Ally, and then took to Flight with all the Speed he could. Thirty thousand *Russians*, after the Taking of *Nienbuysen*, spread themselves over the Bishoprick of *Dorpt*, where they put every Place under Contribution, not to say, that they ruined all those who had already submitted to the Czar.

THE greatest Part of the Families that were free, had already retired to *Revel*, when they

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

they soon found the Town block'd up by a Camp of the Enemy, which consisted but of six thousand Men: The Chancellor of the Bishoprick made a Sally out at the Head of a numerous Company of the Nobility, to go, as was said, to reconnoitre the Enemy; but they all meanly abandoned their Country to go into a Place of Safety. The Burghers, seeing themselves thus forsaken, were willing to submit and acknowledge the Czar for their Sovereign, when they found all the Avenues to the Town were stopt up. The Bishop and some of the Militia, with the Canons, would have defended the Place; so that the Town was all on a sudden divided into two Factions: The *Russian* General being inform'd of this, shut them up still closer, when at length the Burgo-master sent to know on what Conditions he would receive the Town under the Dominion of the Czar; *Sigalei*, like a good Politician, made a golden Bridge for the Enemy to come over, he allowed them very advantageous Terms, especially as they promised him at the same Time, that the Bishop should deliver up to him the Fortress of *Val-kena*; but at the Return of the Deputies, the Party in the last Place that opposed this Resolution, revolted, and would resist to the last Extremity: *Sigalei*, to preserve the Town and spare his Soldiers, proposed to them, that he would force no one to take an Oath to the Czar; and for those who were desirous to retire, they might do it with all Security; but if they rejected this Proposition, he would listen to no other, and give Quarter to none. About four hundred Persons went out of the
Town,

Town, Ecclesiasticks, Women and Children, who retired to *Revel*, escorted the best Part of the Way by a Detachment, with *Sigalei* himself at the Head of it, to prevent any Wrong being done them, contrary to the Promise he had given: So false is it, that the *Russians* treated them with Cruelty, as some have reported.

THESE were the Beginnings of the War, which the *Russians* declared with *Livonia*, which lasted above twenty Years, and was the Occasion of those Alterations that happened in this fine Province, and the Extinction of the Order of *Teutonic* Knights in those Parts: When this War began, *William* of *Furstenberg* was Grand Master in *Livonia*. After the Taking of *Dorpt*, seeing it was impossible to save the Country out of the Hands of the *Russians*, especially as such Discord reigned among the People, and between them and the Bishops, he resigned the Grand Mastership intirely to his Coadjutor *Gothard Kettler*, who was of an ancient and most noble Family in the Duchy of *Berg*: He was Grandson of *Gothard Kettler* and *Margaret* of *Batenberg*, Son of *Gothard Kettler* and *Sibylla* of *Nesselrod*, and Brother to *William*, Bishop of *Munster* in 1556. The Change of their Master changed nothing in their Affairs: They fought for Succours on all Sides, and receiv'd every where many Promises, but nothing else. The *Russians* returned the Year following, continued their Disorders, and besieged * *Felin*,
where

* This Fortress is situated in the Centre of *Livonia*, upon the River *Fela*, between *Dorpt* and *Pernaw*, at some few Miles Distance from the Lake *Werezzer*, in that Part of the Country called *Esthonia*.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

where was, at that Time, the late Grand Master *William* of *Furtemberg*, who was resolved to defend himself; but the Garison mutiny'd, and delivered up the Place to the Besiegers, who carried *Furtemberg* to *Moscow* in Triumph. There was found a great Quantity of Ammunition in this Fortres, especially of Cannon, which the Grand Master had got together at a great Expence.

DURING these Transactions *Gustavus Vasa*, the King of *Sweden*, died, and *Eric XIV.* his eldest Son, succeeded him; a weak and unsettled Prince, always ready to form Projects, but never to put any in Execution. *Magnus*, the Son of *Christiern III.* King of *Denmark*, and Brother to *Frederick II.* arrived at this Time in *Livonia*, to take Possession of the Bishopricks of *Piltten*, *Oesel* and *Hapzel*, which his Brother had bought to make an Appenage for him, and which, having embraced *Lutheranism*, had been secularized. In the mean Time, there was no Appearance of obtaining any Succours from the neighbouring States; but the *Livonians* were upon the Point of seeing themselves more ravaged by the *Russians* than ever, since besides *Narva*, *Dorpt* and *Nienbuysen*, *Felin* had opened to them an Entrance into the very Heart of the Province: But at length these poor People were offered the Assistance of *Sigismund*, King of *Poland*, and *Eric*, King of *Sweden*, on Condition that they should put themselves entirely under their Protection, with this Difference, that the *Poles* demanded all *Livonia* to be annexed to their Crown, whereas the *Swedes* would content themselves with *Revel* and some Lands in *Esthonia*.

thonia. The Grand Master *Gotbard Kettler* agreed with the first; but the People of *Revel* fearing, that at the Return of the *Russians*, they should undergo the same Fate with *Narva* and *Dorpt*, closed with *Sweden* upon very honourable Terms.

THIS Division obliged the Grand Master, the Archbishop of *Riga*, and the Nobility, to hasten the Conclusion of their Treaty with *Poland*, consenting that all *Livonia* should be annexed to that Crown, on Condition of the King's obtaining the Emperor's Remission of their Oath of Fidelity; that he should maintain the Protestant Religion in *Livonia*, and confirm to the People all their Rights and Privileges, especially those of the Nobility; and that the Grand Master *Gotbard Kettler* should have for himself and his Heirs Male, in Perpetuity, the Duchies of *Courland* and *Semigal*, as Fiefs arising from *Poland*. Lastly, it was agreed on both Sides, that they should endeavour to recover and re-unite to the Province all that had been separated from it. This Treaty was sworn to in the Diet of *Wilna*, on the 28th of *November* 1561. The Grand Master and principal Knights immediately quitted the Habit and other Ensigns of the Order, and he received the Investiture of his new Dukedom. Thus ended this famous Order, which had been maintained in *Livonia* above three hundred Years.

THE Province in this Manner was divided among four Powers; the Czar held one Part, another was put under the Protection of *Sweden*, *Poland* pretended to the Whole, and the Duke *Magnus* of *Holstein*, in Quality of Bishop
of

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

of *Pilten*, &c. challenged also a Part of it. Thus, instead of protecting the Country, it was to fall to his Lot, who could usurp the Whole. All the Powers of the North were therefore engaged in this War; Duke *Magnus* and the King of *Poland* obliged the King of *Denmark* to attack *Sweden*; this Crown, on the other Hand, made a Truce for two Years with the Czar, who would willingly have had *Esthonia* and *Revel* comprehended in it, where had formerly been the Staple of Commerce between the *Russians* and the People of *Lubeck*, and which the Czar had transferred to *Narva*. The King of *Sweden*, *Eric XIV.* and *Sigismund Augustus*, King of *Poland*, both sent Troops thither; one into *Esthonia*, and the other into *Lettia*. This was the Aggressor; the other endeavouring only to preserve the Country that had thrown itself under his Protection. The *Russian* Troops, on their Side, did not cease their Hostilities, but continued to gain Ground.

THE Czar, *John Basilowitz*, being now a Widower, demanded *Catharine*, the Sister of *Sigismund Augustus*, King of *Poland*, in Marriage, which the *Poles* would not consent to, unless he agreed to establish the Succession to the Throne of *Russia*, on the Children by this Marriage, excluding those he had by the first Ventre. The Czar refusing to be guilty of such a Piece of Injustice, and especially as his Son *John* was a Youth of great Hopes, the *Polanders* made a Jest of him, and in a Manner extremely insolent, sending him, instead of the Princess, a Mare, dressed up in the Attire of a Woman of Quality. It is
easy

easy to imagine how a Prince, naturally of a haughty Temper, received an Affront of this Kind. He took a dreadful Oath upon the Spot, that he would have a bloody Revenge, and take no Rest till he had accomplished it.

THE War in *Livonia* furnished him with a Pretence to have a constant Army on Foot, and continually to make new Levies, and other necessary Preparations; for which Reason, it was easy for him to get a formidable Body of Forces together; but this was not enough; he was desirous to overcome without striking a Blow, wherefore he joined Cunning to Force. He sent an Express to the King of *Poland* with Letters, in which he expressed the Desire he had of terminating the Differences between them, which had been occasioned by the Governors in their Frontiers, and to this End required he would send Ambassadors to him with full Instructions. The King and the Senate of *Poland* suffered themselves to be drawn in by this Lure, and, for this Embassy, named three Grandees of the Kingdom, who were ordered to depart immediately: And whilst they advanced, on one Side, towards *Moscow*, the *Russian* Army entered into *Lithuania* on the other.

THE Palatinate of *Polocz* is in the most Northern Part of *Lithuania*, and on the Confines of the Duchy of *Pleskow*. The Country is wild and full of Woods, where is the strong Town of *Polocz*, and that of *Wielicz*. The first is situated upon the *Duna*, at the Confluence of the *Polota*, which runs thro' the Town, and waters the Fosses. As this Town is the most advanced towards the Fron-

E

tier,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

tier, nothing had been neglected to put it in a Condition of resisting the Enemy. The *Russians* had made several Attempts, at different Times, to become Masters of it; laying Claim to it, as having once belonged to the Dukes of *Novogorod Weliki*, who had conquered it. The Czar *John Basilowitz*, whom the greatest Difficulties could not discourage, form'd a Design of beginning his Vengeance on the *Poles*, for the Insult they had offer'd him, by sacking this Town. He came very near it with three hundred thousand *Russians* and *Tartars*. The Town had a good Garison in it, who wanted neither Cannon nor any Kind of Ammunition. At the Approach of the *Russians* they put themselves on their Defence, and all the People in the Place, except the Women and very old Men, assisted in carrying their Artillery on the Ramparts, from whence they fired furiously on the Enemies, to prevent their Approach. The Czar, on his Side, would not give them Time to fortify themselves, but harrassed them incessantly; and when they expected to be besieged in Form, the Czar took a shorter Way: He sent a Trumpeter into the Town to tell them, if they did not surrender, he would spare none of them; that he had an Army numerous enough to give Assault upon Assault; that they had no Succours to expect; and that if they would submit, he would shew them Mercy.

His Courage was known, nor were they ignorant of his Severity; wherefore the Garison and the Burghers being dispirited at once, opened their Gates to the Conqueror, fear-

fearing that otherwise, after he had burnt their Suburbs, he might plunder the Town, and use them with Cruelty. All the *Polish* Soldiers had Liberty to retire where they would; the *Russians* and *Lithuanians* were made Prisoners; the *Jews* were ordered to be baptized, and all who refused, were thrown into the *Duna*. The Booty got in this Place was very considerable.

JOHN BASILOWITZ, by this Conquest, found himself able to carry Fire and Sword into the very Heart of *Lithuania*, for there was no Place that could obstruct him from *Minski* to *Wilna*. Several Detachments of his Army spread themselves from one Side of the Country to the other, carry Desolation with them where-ever they went, and they would have gone farther, if the Diet, which was then assembled at *Peterkow*, had not sent an Ambassador to the Czar to inform him, that they were assembled to elect a Successor to their King, who had no Children; and that they might, if he approved of it, let their Choice fall upon him, or one of his Sons. *John Basilowitz* suffering himself to be deceived by this Hope, repassed the *Duna*, and retired into his own Dominions, where King *Sigismund Augustus* had found Means to form a terrible Conspiracy against him.

THE greatest Part of the *Russian* Nobles had engaged themselves in this Plot, the Design of which was to take from the Czar both his Crown and his Life, and put the Empire of *Russia* under the Protection of the King of *Poland*. *Sigismund* looked upon *John Basilowitz* as a Tyrant; but was his own Behaviour

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

to be commended, who excited his Subjects to rebel against their lawful Sovereign, and become his Assassins? A Procedure so scandalous, was enough to tarnish the Glory of the greatest Hero, and render his Name odious. As to the Plot, it had the Fate of most others, it was discovered by some of the People concerned in it, the Conspirators were abandoned, and even disowned by the Prince who set them to work, and the Czar took a horrible Vengeance on them.

INFORMED of the Number of the Conspirators, and their Names, he pretended an Inclination to renounce the Government, and retire into a Cloyster; he even went out of *Moscow*, with some of his most faithful Counsellors, as far as *Slaboda*, from whence he wrote to the Patriarch, that he was resolved to go and hide himself in the Forests, and the most remote Parts of *Russia*, and would never more appear among his unworthy Subjects, who had nothing to do but to chuse a Prince, whom they could obey, and with whom they and all their Country might be destroyed.

THIS News was no sooner spread abroad, but the People, in a Consternation, flock'd together from every Part of the City; the Senate assembled, and immediately deputed the Archbishop of *Novogorod*, the Bishop of *Susdal*, the Abbot of *Troitski*, and some of the principal Boyars, to wait upon his Majesty, who, after being reproached by him with the Perfidy and Treason of his Subjects, without naming any of them, they obtained a Promise from him, that he would return to
Moscow,

Moscow, but it was upon Condition, that they should take a new Oath of Fidelity and Obedience to him. He augmented his Guard, and afterwards began to punish the Conspirators of all Ranks, with an unprecedented Severity; for he not only caused them all to be put to Death with the most exquisite Tortures, but pursued his Revenge against all that belonged to them, Women, Children, Servants, and even brute Animals, going so far as to poison the very Fish in the Ponds, upon the Estates of some of the Conspirators. Whole Towns were involved in this monstrous Revenge, such as *Novogorod-Weliki*, *Pleskow*, *Tweer*, *Narva*. He surpris'd *Novogorod*, and caused a Body of *Tartars* to enter the Town to prevent the Citizens from saving themselves; and these Troops immediately secured all the Avenues, so that no one could escape. The People frightened, as soon as they saw these Life-Guards of their Sovereign, ran to hide themselves, but to no Purpose. *Skrutow*, who had the Execution of this barbarous Business in Charge, gave a Signal, when the bloody Tragedy was to begin, to his Men, who spared neither Age nor Sex. Men and Beasts were cut to Pieces, Virgins deflowered, Children pierced thro' with Halberts, and Fire being set to the four Corners of the City at once, made a dreadful funeral Pile.

SEVEN hundred Women, with their unhappy Children, were thrown into the River *Wokhow*, and because they begg'd Time of their Executioners but to make a short Prayer to Heaven, they were treated with the more

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

to be commended, who excited his Subjects to rebel against their lawful Sovereign, and become his Assassins? A Procedure so scandalous, was enough to tarnish the Glory of the greatest Hero, and render his Name odious. As to the Plot, it had the Fate of most others, it was discovered by some of the People concerned in it, the Conspirators were abandoned, and even disowned by the Prince who set them to work, and the Czar took a horrible Vengeance on them.

INFORMED of the Number of the Conspirators, and their Names, he pretended an Inclination to renounce the Government, and retire into a Cloyster; he even went out of *Moscow*, with some of his most faithful Counsellors, as far as *Slaboda*, from whence he wrote to the Patriarch, that he was resolved to go and hide himself in the Forests, and the most remote Parts of *Russia*, and would never more appear among his unworthy Subjects, who had nothing to do but to chuse a Prince, whom they could obey, and with whom they and all their Country might be destroyed.

THIS News was no sooner spread abroad, but the People, in a Consternation, flock'd together from every Part of the City; the Senate assembled, and immediately deputed the Archbishop of *Novogorod*, the Bishop of *Susdal*, the Abbot of *Troitski*, and some of the principal Boyars, to wait upon his Majesty, who, after being reproached by him with the Perfidy and Treason of his Subjects, without naming any of them, they obtained a Promise from him, that he would return to
Moscow,

Moscow, but it was upon Condition, that they should take a new Oath of Fidelity and Obedience to him. He augmented his Guard, and afterwards began to punish the Conspirators of all Ranks, with an unprecedented Severity; for he not only caused them all to be put to Death with the most exquisite Tortures, but pursued his Revenge against all that belonged to them, Women, Children, Servants, and even brute Animals, going so far as to poison the very Fish in the Ponds, upon the Estates of some of the Conspirators. Whole Towns were involved in this monstrous Revenge, such as *Novogorod-Weliki*, *Pleskow*, *Tweer*, *Narva*. He surprised *Novogorod*, and caused a Body of *Tartars* to enter the Town to prevent the Citizens from saving themselves; and these Troops immediately secured all the Avenues, so that no one could escape. The People frightened, as soon as they saw these Life-Guards of their Sovereign, ran to hide themselves, but to no Purpose. *Skrutow*, who had the Execution of this barbarous Business in Charge, gave a Signal, when the bloody Tragedy was to begin, to his Men, who spared neither Age nor Sex. Men and Beasts were cut to Pieces, Virgins deflowered, Children pierced thro' with Halberts, and Fire being set to the four Corners of the City at once, made a dreadful funeral Pile.

SEVEN hundred Women, with their unhappy Children, were thrown into the River *Wokhow*, and because they begg'd Time of their Executioners but to make a short Prayer to Heaven, they were treated with the more

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Barbarity, as if they disputed the Orders of their Sovereign. The principal Citizens were hanged at the Windows of their own Houses, and the Senators were strangled in the Senate House. The Priests could find no Sanctuary at their Altars; neither their Prayers, Tears nor Groans, neither Religion nor any Respect to holy Things, could suspend their Fate, or stop the Fury of their Murderers.

AFTER having thus severely punished *Novogorod*, he ordered his Troops to *Narva*, where some of those of the first Place had secured a Part of their Effects. They began with plundering the Town, and afterwards all the People belonging to it, Men, Women and Children, were treated with the same Barbarity as those of *Novogorod*. The Tyrant went next to *Pleskow*, plundering every Place in his Way, When he arrived in this fine City, under Pretence of making some Regulations, he assembled the Senate, and while he exercised his Cruelty there, the Soldiers massacred the richest of the Citizens.

TAKING his Route to return to *Moscow*, he arrived at *Tweer*, with a Design to have chastised that Town as he had done the others; but, instructed by the Misfortunes of their Neighbours, and fearing the same Fate, the People of this Place had secured their Effects, and took to Flight. He treated those who remained, in the same Manner with the Inhabitants of *Novogorod* and *Pleskow*. He obliged the Wives of some who were fled to discover their Treasure, and suspecting *Lowe-sick* the most faithful of all his Favourites, of having given Notice to the People of *Tweer* to

to save themselves, he gave him the *Knout*, caused both his Legs and Arms to be broke, and afterwards ordered him to be impaled alive in the Presence of the People.

AT his Return to *Moscow*, he ordered eighteen new Gibbets to be erected at the common Place of Execution, and had all the most dreadful Instruments of Torture set about them. The first that he made a publick Example of, on this bloody Theatre, was his Chancellor *John Wiskow*, and the next his *Great Treasurer*. These two illustrious Persons were the first of two thousand unfortunate Wretches who perished in the most cruel Torments. Even his own Brother, *George*, found no more Mercy than the rest. This Prince was a Person of an extraordinary Vigour, both of Mind and Body, handsome in his Person, and affable in his Manners, he was easy of Access, and had a great Reputation for his Equity and Humanity: In short, he had all the good Qualities of a great Prince, and wanted nothing but a Crown to make him more esteemed than he was. He knew the imperious Temper and Avarice of his Brother, therefore, that he might give him no Suspicion, he kept himself at a Distance from Court, and meddled not with Affairs, only, on some Occasions, he had appeared in the Army, and had rendered Services both to him and the State. At the Time that the Czar punished, with so much Severity, all those whom he suspected to have had any Share in the Conspiracy, even to the ordering two hundred and fifty Gentlemen to be stifled in a Morass, who were attempting

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

to make their Escape into *Poland*, an infamous Villain took upon him to accuse Prince *George* of having spoken ill of the Czar, his Brother, in his Absence, and of endeavouring to excite the People to a Revolt, with a View of setting himself on the Throne. The Czar, upon this, immediately sent to seek his Brother, who, as soon as he saw the fatal Messengers, guessed at their Errand, endeavoured to save himself in the Apartment of his Lady, who, terrified to the last Degree, exposed herself to all the Insults of these rude Russians, in Hopes of screening her Husband, but all to no Purpose. She saw him torn from her Arms, in Spite of all her Tears and Intreaties; and at quitting her, he advised her to hide herself, with her Children, and most valuable Effects, otherwise they would soon become a Prey to his avaricious Brother.

PRINCE GEORGE no sooner appeared before the Czar, but he was delivered up to the Executioners, in order to be forced, by Torments, to confess a Crime he had not been guilty of. The Prince seeing himself thus unworthily treated, desired, at least, to be permitted to speak, and justify himself; but this was refused him: Then lifting up his Hand that had a Chain upon it; Soldiers! said he, behold the Ornaments of a Prince, under whose Command you have been led forth to Battle; behold these Chains, not put on by the Enemies of our Country, but by yourselves, you whom I have commanded, you whom I have loaded with Acts of Beneficence; and it is thus I am rewarded. But as Reproaches will avail but little in the present
sent

sent Condition I am, let me intreat one Bounty of you; if *Basilowitz* thirsts for my Blood, and is determined this Moment to put an End to my Days, it matters not to him which Way I perish, let me intreat you therefore to spare me the Ignominy of the Rack; and if you are ashamed to lay Hands upon me yourselves, give me, I beseech you, a Sword, that I may execute upon myself what you have promised the Czar to see done.

NOT being able to obtain any Favour, he burst into a Rage, and, looking on the Czar, wished, that Heaven might cause his Destruction in the same Manner that he treated the Innocent. You are already, continued he, covered with the Blood of your Subjects, and I beg the Almighty, that I may be the last Victim to your Cruelty; and may those Arms, which are refused me, be turned upon yourself; and may you suffer all those Torments which you undeservedly inflict on others: And then he ordered the Executioners to dispatch him. The Czar, hereupon, making a Sign to some of his Guards, they threw themselves, with Sword in Hand, upon the unfortunate Prince, who made no Motion to avoid them, nor gave way to unmanly Tears, or lamentable Groans, but met Death, and met it as a Man who scorned to fear it.

THE virtuous Princess, his Wife, met with no better Fate; on the News of her Husband's Execution, she endeavoured to conceal herself, accompanied by some of her Women; but the Place of her Retreat was soon discovered, and she delivered herself up, demanding only her Life, which had been promised her; but the

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

the cruel Czar had no Regard to his Word, but immediately sent his Assassins to put a Woman out of the Way, whose Sight must have continually reproached him with the Death of his Brother. When she saw these Butchers coming towards her, she advanced to meet them, being supported by two Slaves, and bad them hasten to join a wretched Woman to her beloved Husband; but they were not even merciful enough to kill her, till after they had dragg'd her thro' the Streets, and then they threw her Body into the River. But let us close this horrid Scene, too shocking to be longer dwelt upon; and consider, that how blameable soever this Czar may have been, in carrying his Revenge to such Excess, there were some Cases, among such a People as the *Russians* were in those Times, that would not permit their Sovereign, with Safety, to shew them any Mercy.

THE Czar believing very justly, that he had carry'd Matters too far, endeavoured, or, at least, feigned that he endeavoured to appease the offended Deity; for, on the Feast-Day of the Prophet *Elias*, he spent several Hours in the Church, prostrated at the Foot of the Altar, and even performed the Divine Service in the Vestments of the Patriarch.

JOHN BASILOWITZ however still continued the War with *Livonia*, and having discovered, that not only the Diet of *Poland* had deceived him, but also that *Sigismund* had made this odious Attempt upon his Life, he caused his Troops to re-enter *Lithuania*, to put all to Fire and Sword. He gave the Command of these Troops to *Swirski*, who got his Army to-

together under *Poloczko*. *Nicholas Radziwil*, Palatine of *Troki*, was at *Lukomla*, some Miles from thence. The *Russian* General being on the March towards *Ula* Castle, in the Palatinate of *Witepsk*, the *Lithuanian* Troops began also their March, and both Armies being met on a vast Plain, they were immediately ranged in Order of Battle. The *Lithuanians* began the Action; but they were received with so much Vigour, that they began to give Way; nevertheless, being encouraged by their Generals, they renewed the Attack, and pushed so home upon the *Russians*, that they put them in Disorder, and obliged them to take to Flight. The *Lithuanians* pursued them for near five Miles, giving Quarter to none, so that the Road all along was covered with dead Bodies, of which there were numbered near ten thousand: Among whom were the General *Swirski*, and thirty Officers of Distinction. A few Weeks after, the Palatine *Radziwil*, who was encamped at *Desch*, where he expected a Reinforcement from *Poland*, hearing that a Body of sixty thousand *Russians* and *Tartars* were encamped at some Leagues Distance from him, he sent four hundred Horsemen to reconnoitre them, with Orders to endeavour to draw them out of their Camp, by flying before them; but this Stratagem had no Success; the *Russians* set Fire to their Waggon, and then retired with Precipitation: The *Lithuanians*, who pursued them, took some of the least nimble, and the Arms of those who had meanly throw'd them down to be the less incumber'd in their Flight.

THE

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

THE King of *Poland* finding his Conspiracy had failed, and seeing no Means to secure his Dominions from the Enterprizes of *John Basilowitz*, but by raising Troubles on another Side, began to practise with the *Tartars*, and engaged them to make an Irruption into *Russia*. They gave Ear to the Propositions of the *Poles*, but the Success did not answer to the Hopes they had given them. The *Tartars* advanced as far as *Resan*, and immediately retired, being satisfy'd with the Booty they got, and the Slaves they carry'd off.

LIVONIA was still the Theatre of the War. *John*, Duke of *Finland*, had deposed his Brother *Eric*, King of *Sweden*, and taken his Throne in his stead. The Czar had maintained a good Correspondence with *Eric*, before his Fall, and had at *Stockholm* an Ambassador with above two hundred Persons in his Train. There was another, at the same Time, from *Sweden* at *Moscow*. The Design of the first was not very agreeable to the new King, *John*, for he was contriving Means to carry off his Wife, the Princess *Catharine* of *Poland*. We have seen before, that the Czar had demanded her in Marriage. He was really in Love with her, and *Eric*, who did not love his Brother, had given the *Russian* Ministers Hopes, that a favourable Opportunity might be found to take her away, and deliver her to the Czar their Master. The *Russian* Ambassador continued not long at *Stockholm*, where all the Designs of *Eric* were frustrated by his Deposition. The Czar, having no longer any Hopes of his Enterprize, and believing it would not be politick to irritate the
new

new King too much, wrote him a very obliging Letter, recalled his Ambassador, and sent a Passport to that of *Sweden*.

THE Czar, *John Basilowitz*, was obliged to act in this Manner, because he was informed, that a considerable Armament, then making by the *Turks*, was designed against him. *Selim*, the Son of *Soliman* the Magnificent, and *Roxelana*, had succeeded his Father in the Year 1565. This Prince formed the vast Design of subduing all *Tartary* to wipe off the Disgrace of the Imprisonment of the Sultan *Bajazet*, who had been defeated, and taken in the Plain of *Ancyra*, by the celebrated *Timur-Beck*, or *Tamerlane*, Great Cham of the *Tartars*. *Selim*, to this End, had made Alliances with some Princes who were to send him Succours by the *Caspian* Sea: Thus an Army of three hundred thousand Men, in which were the Choice of the *Janizaries*, embarked at *Constantinople*, happily crossed the *Black Sea* and the *Palus Mæotis*, and landed at *Azoph*, where were their Magazines and their Rendezvous; in their Way the *Preco-pian Tartars* had joined this Army with a Reinforcement of forty thousand Archers.

WITH this vast Body of Men they first marched towards *Astracan*, where the Sultan made his Soldiers hope they would find all the Treasures of *Armenia*, *Persia* and *India*, and gave them such a flattering Idea of the Weakness of all the Places of the *Tartars*, that they imagined it would be sufficient only for them to appear before them, to subdue and have all these great Towns to plunder.

ZEREBRINOW, who commanded for the Czar, was at first a little frightened at such a Multitude of Enemies; but he got his *Russians* together with all the Speed he could, to whom he joined as many *Tartars* as was possible; he sent for Succours from the Governor of *Casan*, and made all necessary Dispositions, that he might not be constrained to yield, without selling the Victory very dear to the Enemies who covered all the Country. But this the Terror, they first brought with them, lasted not long; for, at the first Encounter, they were dispersed, and learned to know, that their Softness, their Cowardice, their Disorder, and, in short, the Want of every thing that they expected to have found in abundance in the Country of their Enemy, rendered them fitter to be despised than capable of giving Fear. The *Russian* General prepared an Ambuscade for them in a Country which was unknown to them; and when they approached the Town, attacked them with Vigour: Seeing themselves first attacked, where they expected to have found no Resistance, they immediately gave Way, and their great Numbers were a Trouble to them, the one embarrassing the other; so that the Disorder soon became general throughout the whole Army. *Zerebrinow* made the best of it, he pursued them and took their Artillery and Baggage; those who had straggled abroad to pillage the Country were cut to Pieces, and the Generals perished in endeavouring to rally them. To compleat their Misfortunes, their Allies were not to be found, at the Time appointed, at their Rendezvous, near the Mouth

of the *Wolga*. The *Russians* and their *Tartars* became bold, not to say rash, in Proportion to the Weakness and Timidity they found in their Enemies; they followed them on all Sides, and obliged them to make a shameful Retreat towards *Azoph*, where they found a new Subject of Sorrow to them, that great City having been almost overthrown by the blowing up of the Magazine of Powder. The *Russian* General having no longer any Enemies to contend with, went in Quest of them, and being informed of the Succours that the *Turks* expected by the *Caspian Sea*, he thought there wanted but this to make his Triumph compleat, and therefore went against them, and succeeded so well, that the greatest Part of their Ships were taken with their Provisions, and the rest sunk. Thus *Selim* got nothing from this grand Enterprize but Loss and Disgrace; for almost all his Troops, that had escaped the *Russian* and *Tartarian* Soldiers, perished, either by Hunger, or by Storms, in crossing over the *Black Sea*.

WHEN the Czar received the News of this great Event, a new Embassy was just arrived at *Moscow*, from *John* King of *Sweden*, with magnificent Presents, to solicit the Czar to prolong the Truce, that had been made between the two States, that he might have Time to finish the War he had with *Denmark*; but King *John* was too straitly ally'd to the King of *Poland* to be favourably listened to by *John Basilowitz*, who, besides that, had just then formed a new Plan to bring all *Livonia* under his Dominion; so that the *Swedish* Ambassadors were very ill received, they
were

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

were even arrested, and put into Prison, where they were confined as many Years, Days and Hours, as the last *Russian* Ambassadors had been kept in *Sweden*.

THE Czar found, by Experience, that the *Livonians* had an Aversion to the Dominion of the *Russians*, and that they would more patiently submit to the Government of any *German* Lord. This Reflection made him think of drawing into his Interests Duke *Magnus*, Brother to the King of *Denmark*, who, he thought, would be the more easily brought to favour his Designs, as he was actually at War with *Sweden*. He therefore gave the *Livonians* to understand, that he pretended to nothing more than to become their Protector, and that he would yield the Possession of their Country to Duke *Magnus*. Such a Proposition could not fail of pleasing this young ambitious Prince, especially as the Czar added to it the fine Title of *King of Livonia*. The King of *Denmark*, who, on his Side, immediately conceived Hopes, by this Means, of uniting *Livonia* to *Denmark*, exhorted his Brother to take Advantage of this favourable Disposition of the Czar. *Magnus* therefore sent Ambassadors to *John Basilowitz* to treat seriously of the Affair; and having received an agreeable Answer, he set forward himself to attend on the Czar, who received him so much the better, as he brought him Assurances of soon making himself Master of *Revel*, by the Means of *Nicholas Kursel*, the *Swedish* General, who had promised to deliver up to him the Castle of that important Town.

MAGNUS
made King of
LIVONIA.

THIS

THIS *Kursel* seeing King *John*, his Master, embarrassed in his War with the *Danes*, had raised himself into a little Tyrant in *Esthonia*, under Pretence that there was a great deal due to him and his Soldiers; he undertook to make himself Master of the Castle of *Revel*, with a Design of getting a large Sum by delivering it up to the *Danes* or the *Russians*. His Enterprize succeeded in Part, he entered into the Town, and forced the Garison, making *Oxenstiern*, the Governor, Prisoner with his Wife and Children, and himself Master of the Castle. The Magistrates of the Town, who feared some Treachery, would have treated with *Kursel*, who made them no Answer, but that he would keep the Place as a Pledge till the King had pay'd him and his Troops. At length he came to an Agreement with them, on Condition that they should give Notice of his Pretensions to the King of *Sweden*, and that, in the mean Time, he should keep the Castle. Things were in this Situation at the Time that he promised Duke *Magnus* to deliver up the Place to him; but the *Swedish* Soldiers having penetrated into his Design, resolved to make themselves Masters of the Castle. *Nils Dublare*, one of their Captains, gained over some of the Garison. The Day being come when the Design was to be put in Execution, he made the Guard drunk, and entering into the Castle, by an obscure and hidden Way, he cut a Part of the Garison in Pieces, took the rest Prisoners with *Kursel*, and restored *Oxenstiern* to Liberty. *Kursel* had afterwards his Head cut off with those of his Faction.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

THE Duke *Magnus* received the Title of *King of Livonia*, from the Czar *John Basilewicz*, on Condition that he should pay him a small annual Tribute, and acknowledge him for his Protector. He added also, that he would yield the Possession of all *Livonia* to the new King, as soon as he had driven out the *Swedes*, against whom he would protect him, as well as against all his other Enemies, in Quality of his Vassal. He promised moreover to renew a strict Alliance with the Emperor of the *Romans*, and to shew particular Marks of his Favour to all the *Germans*, throughout the whole Extent of his Empire. Afterwards having declared, that he would give this Kingdom to Duke *Magnus* and his Descendents of the Male Line, he assured him, that in Failure of that, he should have no Successor but of the House of *Holstein*, or of *Denmark*; and that never any *Russian* should have Jurisdiction or Authority in *Livonia*. And to confirm all these fair Promises by something that seemed real, he gave Orders to set at Liberty several *Germans* who were Prisoners in his Dominions.

Magnus did every thing in his Power to gain over the *Livonians*, and particularly those of *Revel*, by promising Mountains of Gold, on one Side, and, on the other, by threatening to punish those, with the utmost Rigour, who should refuse to submit to him: But the *Livonians* regarded neither his Threats nor his Promises, and the Czar was obliged to send an Army into *Livonia* to put his new King in Possession of the Throne he had given him. Several Conspiracies, at this Time

Time discovered, still kept the Czar at *Moscow*; where he punished the Culpable with such Severity as might intimidate others. Some Secretaries, and the Czar's Chief Cook, were executed with near two hundred of their Accomplices. The Czar pardoned a greater Number, at the Request of the Inhabitants of *Moscow*, who, at the Sight of the Preparations, that were made for this Execution, hid themselves in the lower Parts of their Houses, from whence they could not be drawn, but by the Voice of the Czar assuring them they had nothing more to fear.

SIGISMUND, King of *Poland*, did not cease moving Heaven and Earth against the Czar. At length, that the King of *Sweden* might attack him on one Side, while he prepared Enemies to fall upon him elsewhere on the other, he offered his Mediation to make Peace between *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and the City of *Lubeck*. He also engaged the Emperor *Maximilian II.* and *Augustus*, Elector of *Saxony*, to join with him to terminate this long Quarrel. Conferences were held at *Stetin*, where, after five Months Contest, a Peace was concluded, not very advantageous to *Sweden*; the other Enemies, that *Sigismund* had stirred up against the Czar, were the *Tartars*, who re-entered *Russia* in greater Numbers than before, passed the *Occa*, and advanced towards *Moscow*, which, after they had pillaged, they set Fire to, and consumed, in a Moment, above two Thirds of that great City. The *Russian* Armies were all on the Side of *Livonia*, where Duke *Magnus* besieged *Revel* and *Wittenstein*. But he had no Success

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

before either of these Places ; and after having been beaten in several Rencounters, he was forced to alter his Measures.

THE *Swedes* supply'd *Revel* with fresh Provisions ; but as their King, *John*, was full of the Project of re-establishing the *Roman Catholick* Religion in *Sweden*, he endeavoured to bring the Czar to listen to Peace. But this Monarch received his Propositions with Pride and Contempt, threatening to go and ravage *Finland*, and set at Liberty the unfortunate King *Eric*, his Friend, who was kept close Prisoner at *Abo*. These Menaces made the King take *Eric* out of that Prison, and transport him to *Grypsholm*, and from thence to *Oerbi*, where he some Time after put him to Death : And as the King of *Sweden* could not confide in the *Scotch*, who were in his Service, he sent them into *Livonia*, in which Country, under the Command of *Olaus Ackeson*, and *Peter de la Gardie*, they did much Mischief to the *Russians*.

THE Czar himself commanded an Army of eighty thousand Men in *Livonia*, resolving, if possible, to put an End to this War which had continued so long, by obliging this obstinate People to submit to him, by some Act of Severity. He took *Wittenstein*, the Commandant of which he impaled alive, and then roasted ; and of all the *Swedes* and *Livonians*, who fell into his Hands, gave Quarter to none. He treated the Town of *Niewhof* in the same Manner ; and, after having taken *Kockenhausen* in *Lettia*, he retired to *Novogorod*, to assist at the Nuptials of Duke *Magnus* with a Princess of the *Russian* Blood. But the
Swedes

Swedes had their Turn in his Absence; for they fell upon the Troops that were left in *Esthonia*, *Olaus Ackeson* having met them at *Lode*, caused them to be attacked by his Vanguard composed of *Livonians*; these having broke thro' the Battalions of the Enemy, immediately took to Flight, and left those who followed them in the Midst of the *Russians*; the *Swedes*, who made but six hundred Horse, and some hundred Foot, fought with so much Bravery against sixteen thousand *Russians*, that they cut in Pieces seven thousand, put the rest to Flight, and took a thousand Waggon with their Baggage. The *Russians* soon had their Revenge, for the *Swedes* flesh'd with this Success, advancing to take *Wessenberg* and *Felsbourg*, were the greatest Part cut off, and the others forced to fly.

DURING these Transactions, the King of Poland, *Sigismund Augustus*, died; he was succeeded by the Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to the King of *France*; but he abandoned both the Crown and the Kingdom, a few Months after, incognito, to succeed his Brother *Charles IX.* by the Name of *Henry III.* In his stead the *Polanders* raised to the Throne *Stephen Battori*, Prince of *Transilvania*, whose Valour had rendered him worthy of the Choice.

SIGISMUND,
King of Po-
LAND, dies.

HENRY, Duke
of ANJOU,
chosen in his
room; and then
STEPHEN,
Prince of
TRANSILVA-
NIA.

THE Czar could not be brought to resolve on abandoning his Designs on *Livonia*, whatever Instances the King of *Sweden* made to engage him to come into a Peace, and whatever Employment the *Tartars* gave him on the other Side, who, grown bold by the Success of their late Invasion, did not cease to harass the *Russian* Troops, and menace the Country

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

with a new Irruption, so that the Czar was obliged to divide his Forces; it is true, that his Troops being better disciplined, were more capable of great Enterprizes; but he wanted good Generals.

*The SWEDES
attempt in vain
to surprise
NARVA.*

THE King of *Sweden* made an Attempt upon *Narva*, whither he would have hindered the People of *Lubeck* from transporting their Commodities, and, on that Account, took many of their Ships. The *Russians* had no Ships on that Side, and could defend themselves only from their Ramparts, which they did with such Vigour, that the *Swedes* endeavoured twice, to no Purpose, to surprize the Town. On the other Hand, the *Russians*, Masters of all *Lettia*, except *Riga*, made a new Progress in *Esthonia*, where they carry'd the Town of *Pernaw*.

THE King of *Sweden*, altogether taken up with his religious Project, and entirely governed by the Insinuations of *Possevin*, the Jesuit, sent to him by Pope *Gregory XIII.* very much neglected the Affairs of *Livonia*, so that they were exposed to all the Ills the *Russians* were pleased to load them with, who even went into *Finland*, and did such Things as, indeed, cost them many Men, but ruined the Country. *Revel* was besieged by eighty thousand *Russians*, *Danes* and *Tartars*, with much Vigour, and this Siege lasted six Weeks, *Henry Horn*, the Governor, and *Charles*, his Son, defended themselves with so much Courage, that the Czar, who was come before the Town with his Son *Theodore*, was obliged to raise the Siege. He threw himself afterwards, with great Fury, into *Lettia*, ravaging all the Country,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

71

Country, he retook *Kockenhausen*, *Wenden*, and other Fortresses, and threatened *Riga*, held by the *Poles*.

THE Divisions occasioned by the Election of King *Henry*, and then by that of King *Stephen*, had so rent the Kingdom of *Poland*, that they would not yet allow the new King to take the Affairs of *Livonia* to Heart; nevertheless he entered into Measures at a Distance, to begin this War with Advantage.

IT was well known, that Duke *Magnus* had no Reason to be satisfied with the Czar, for which Reason King *Stephen* endeavoured to bring him over to his Interests: This Prince seemed not unwilling to enter into Measures with *Poland*; but at the Time that the Business was in Treaty, the Czar, who had the best Spies of any Prince in the World, was informed of the Correspondence carried on by Duke *Magnus*, and his Enemy. He did not seem to know any Thing of the Matter, and entered into *Lettia* with a new Body of Troops, with a Design, as he said, to besiege *Riga*. He took *Marienhausen* and *Lutzen*, and being advanced as far as *Kockenhausen*, he marched all on a sudden towards *Wenden*, where Duke *Magnus* had his Residence, while several Detachments seized on all the little Places, garisoned by Duke *Magnus*. Having invested *Wenden*, he summoned the Duke to appear before him, and this Prince obeyed with the greatest Submission. The Czar charged him with his atrocious Crimes, reproached him with Ingratitude, and after having stripped him of all the Ornaments of his regal Dignity, would have

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

put him to Death, if the Duke had not shewn his Repentance in the most abject and servile Manner : But if he pardoned the Duke himself, it was only to treat those who belonged to him with the greater Severity, delivering up the unhappy Town to the Brutality of Soldiers, who committed the utmost Excesses. Some Ladies of Distinction, with what Nobility there were in the Town, retired into the Castle, to see what would be the Consequence of this Surprise : They were summoned to open the Gates ; but they refused, and the Czar ordered the Walls to be battered by five Pieces of large Cannon, which soon made a wide Breach in them. The poor Wretches within, drove to Despair, resolved to blow themselves up in the Air, rather than fall into the Hands of their cruel Enemies. After having exhorted one another to die with Resolution, they received the Sacrament ; and seeing the Enemy ready to mount the Breach, they shut themselves up in a Gallery, and one of them setting Fire to the Powder out of the Window, they all perished together in an Instant. *Wolmar* was garisoned by the Duke's Troops, the Czar sent a Detachment thither, who seized on it with little Trouble, and cut all the Garison to Pieces.

AFTER this Expedition the Czar retired to *Dorpt* with his Prisoner, who could not obtain his Liberty till he had paid a Ransom of forty thousand Ducats to the Czar, and solemnly promised to be his Vassal.

At length King *Stephen Battori* having made a Treaty of Alliance with the King of
Sweden,

Sweden, by Consent of the Diet of *Poland* and *Lithuania*, raised an Army to attack *Russia* in earnest; to retake what *Poland* pretended belonged to it; and to put an End to this War, which had lasted too long: And he had the greater Hopes of Success, as some Reverse of Fortune which the *Russians* lately had in *Letitia*, where the *Swedes*, assisted by some *Germans* and *Polanders*, had retaken *Wenden*, had much dispirited them. However, the King would not march against *Russia*, without declaring War in Form with the Czar, in case he refused what he sent to demand of him.

FOR this Purpose, *Basile Lapotinscki* was chosen Ambassador, and accompanied by a fine Train of Nobility. On the Frontier all Honours were paid to *Lapotinscki*, that were due to the Character with which he was invested; but when he was advanced farther in the Country, and his Errand was known, he had much ado to get safe to *Moscow*. Before this Ambassador had his Audience of *John Basilowitz*, he was told, that if he would be secure of his Life, he must refrain from entering into the Imperial Palace with his Sabre drawn: *Lapotinscki* answered, that the Czar was Master of his Life, but that nothing in the World should hinder him from acquitting himself of his Duty with the utmost Exactness. The Day of Audience being come, he was conducted to the Palace, his Master of the Horse carrying his Sabre naked before him. The Czar received him in a Hall magnificently adorned, being cloathed himself in a Robe covered with Diamonds and Pearl,
The

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

The Ambassador saluted him in the *Polish* Manner, and his Train did the same. The Czar, in Appearance, received him very graciously. *Lapotinski* made him a Speech, in which he demanded Reparation for all the Damages done to *Poland* by the *Russians*, declaring, that the *Poles* would otherwise be obliged to take Vengeance; and at the same Time presented his Letters to the Czar, with a Seal of Gold and a Scymeter. This Boldness of the Ambassador irritated the Czar, who opened, with Precipitation, the Letter that was wrote in the *Russian* Language.

THE King therein demanded Reparation of the Czar for all the Depredations committed in *Poland* and *Lithuania*, or threatened to come and make War in his Country. He afterwards exaggerated his own Strength, and the Ills committed in *Lithuania* and *Livonia* by the *Russian* Generals: Nevertheless he offered him Peace, and even his Alliance, if he would restore *Livonia*, and the Places he had usurped upon *Poland*.

AFTER reading this Letter, the Czar answered, that he was not so susceptible of Fear as, at the Sight of these Menaces, to abandon his Dominions to *Poland*, and that those who had so often vanquished the *Poles*, and the *Livonians*, who had subdued the *Tartars* of *Casan* and *Astracan*, and even triumphed over the Forces of the *Ottoman* Empire, might make King *Stephen* repent of his Bravades. He took Leave of the Ambassador, ordering Care to be taken of him, and that no Honours should be omitted that were due to him. So true it is, that Virtue com-
mands

mands Respect even in an Enemy, for the Czar regarded the Law of Nations less than the Intrepidity of this Ambassador.

As soon as an Account of this was spread abroad, all the Preparations were made that so important a War required, for they were informed of those that were making in *Poland*. Besides the Troops that the Czar himself raised, the Garisons that he reinforced, and the Magazines that he placed in all necessary Parts, he excited the *Tartars* of *Pre-cop* to make an Invasion into *Poland*. King *Stephen* was the first in the Field, with Volunteers of all Nations, who were willing to learn the Art of War under so renown'd a Leader. All the Strength of the War was to fall on *Poloczka*. The King took Possession of all the Avenues, and *Radziwil* sent to the *Russians* to surrender; but they would not listen to the Trumpet that was sent to them. The King's Troops, while they waited his Return, began to seize on *Kosian*, *Sitno*, and *Krasny*. The King soon after arriving, with the Artillery, besieged the Place in Form.

THE Czar was under *Pleskow* with his Army, contented to defend his Country, without taking much Trouble to preserve his Conquests. During the Siege, the King sent several Detachments into *Russia* on the Side of *Smolensko*, where they put all to Fire and Sword, and even burnt the Suburbs of that City. A Detachment commanded by *Ostrog*, and *Michael Wiesnowieski*, passed the *Borysthenes*, and made an Irruption as far as *Petzop*, *Rad-*
boft;

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

boft, and *Starodub*, from whence they brought a considerable Booty.

IN the mean Time the Siege was pushed with Vigour, and the Besieged defended themselves with the same. The Czar, on his Side, from Time to Time, sent several Detachments, which endeavoured to throw themselves into the Town. There have been few Sieges in which the Besieged gave greater Proofs of Valour. Their great Guns were used with an inconceivable Rapidity, and they exposed themselves to all Dangers with as much Courage and Obstinaey as if they had a Nursery of Men to supply the Want of those who lost their Lives. The Trenches had been open eighteen Days, when the King gave Orders to set Fire to all the Outworks of the Place. His Soldiers executed this Order with Bravery; there were some so impatient as even to go through the Flames to attack the Enemy. The Fire did not dismay these, and Men were seen, like so many Salamanders, fighting in the Midst of the Flames. This Temerity of the *Polanders* astonished the *Russians*, who made a Feint of capitulating, that by the Favour of a Suspension Arms, they might make a new Intrenchment in haste, behind the Flames that concealed them from the Besiegers. Their Design was immediately penetrated into, and the King gave Orders, that no Respite should be allowed them Night or Day. At length they beat the Chamade, when they saw their Works destroyed on the other Side the Town, and that the *Poles* were Masters of an Eminence that commanded them. The King, who

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

77

who fought not to shed Blood, and who had an Interest to preserve this Fortrefs as entire as possible, granted them Life and Liberty, and gave those who were willing Leave to enter into his Troops, and the rest to retire to the *Russian* Army.

Poloczka taken by the POLES.

A PRODIGIOUS Quantity of Cannon, Powder and Ball, was found in the Place. Some Persons of Distinction were taken Prisoners, who had opposed the Surrender of the Town, among the rest, the Archbishop of *Wielkiluki*. The Taking of *Poloczka* was followed by the Rendition of *Turowla*, *Sussa* and *Sokol*. The two first surrendered immediately, upon offering the Garisons the Liberty of retiring in Safety with their Arms and Baggage.

Other Conquests made by King STEPHEN.

SOKOL held out longer, and the Siege was more bloody. This is a Fort situated between the *Dreyffe* and the *Neyffe*, on the Road from *Poloczka* to *Pleskow*: Besides the usual Garison, *Theodore Basilowitz Czeremetoff*, who had attempted in vain to throw himself into *Poloczka*, with a Detachment of Fusileers and several *Russian* Lords, was retired into this Fort, and two thousand Militia, well disciplined, kept under the Cannon of the Place to defend the Avenues; nevertheless they suffered the *Lithuanian* Troops, commanded by *Radziwil*, to pass the *Dreyffe* unmolested, contenting themselves with making a Noise, and giving out that they had a Body of *Casaneze* and *Astracaneze* near at hand to assist them. As the Country was covered with Woods, the *Polanders* were obliged to intrench themselves for Fear of a Surprise, and afterwards they opened the Trenches in Form. The Fortifications

cations and Works of *Sokol* were built, as all in that Country, with Beams and Planks that were very thick, but strengthened in the Inside with green Turf. The Houses, in this Country, are only of Wood, therefore the Officer who commanded the Artillery, discharging three red-hot Bullets into the Town, it is no Wonder that they set Fire to the Places where they fell; the Garison endeavoured, but in vain, to extinguish them, and the Flames spread on all Sides in an Instant. All the brave People in the Place seeing themselves reduced to perish miserably, or to open themselves a Passage through the Besiegers, resolved upon the latter as the least dangerous: This they attempted, but were repulsed with so much Vigour, that they were obliged to throw themselves again into the Flames that they had fled from: Pressed thus on both Sides, they made several Signals to surrender, demanding Quarter; but the *German* Soldiers did not understand their Language, and the *Poles*, irritated by the deadly Resistance made by the Garison of *Poloczko*, would not listen to them; therefore, seeing that they must inevitably perish, it is not surprizing, that in such an Extremity, Men of Spirit should endeavour to sell their Lives as dear as could be.

THEY made a fresh Sally, and the *Poland*ers and *Germans* drove them back, and followed them quite within the Place: A Centinel, who was then upon the Gate, let fall the Port-Cullis, at that Instant, which shut both the Besiegers, and the Besieged, in the Town, in the Midst of the Flames; nothing

nothing can be imagined more terrible than the Battle that ensued; at length the Fort was reduced to Ashes, four thousand *Russians* perished in it, and almost as many were taken Prisoners, in the Number of whom were *Czeremetoff*, and the Chief of the Militia.

THE Czar was all this Time at *Pleskow*, where he imagined that it would be impossible for the *Polanders* to take *Poloczko*, when he learnt that not only that Town, but even *Sokol*, was in the Power of his Enemies, notwithstanding its strong Garison; he then began to despair of the Success of the War, and did all that was in his Power to conceal his Loss from the People, and to lessen the Advantages gained by the *Poles*. These, after the Destruction of *Sokol*, entered into the Territories of *Russia*, where all submitted to King *Stephen*, who made an End of this glorious Campaign to go and assist at the Diet of *Warsaw*.

THE Czar retired to *Novogorod*, and caused some great Men of his Empire to write to the Palatine of *Wilna*, to sound him, if he thought there might not be some Means found out to bring the King to listen to Terms of Peace. The King was willing to have Peace, but could not, with Honour, consent to it, as long as the *Russians* kept *Livonia*, and the less, since besides the Cession made of that Province to the Crown of *Poland* by the *Teutonic* Order, Duke *Magnus*, who was retired under the Protection of King *Stephen*, had transferred to him all the Rights that he had to it, either by the Investiture of the Czar, or by the Oath that the People had taken

*Propositions of
Peace rejected.*

to

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

to him. Therefore it was resolved in the Diet, that the War should be continued against *Russia*, with all the Forces of *Poland*, and her Allies.

The Czar nevertheless sent an Ambassador to the King, and this was *Nancekyn*, a Man of Cunning and Address, who knew how to sow Dissensions in the Diet by the Means of *Gregory Oschyk*, which would have caused an Insurrection in *Lithuania*, if his Letters, that were intercepted, had not discovered his Designs. While this passed in *Poland*, the Czar, who sought only to make the *Poles* lose all Patience, because he knew they had not consented, but with Regret, to this second Campaign, would not hazard one Battle, that might decide any Thing to his Disadvantage, as his Troops were not so well prepared as those of the King of *Poland*, who, besides his *Polanders* and *Lithuanians*, had two good Bodies of auxiliary Troops, one composed of *Germans*, and the other of *Hungarians* and *Transylvanians*. For this Reason *John Basilowitz* contented himself with putting good Garrisons in the Places that the *Polanders* would be obliged to force, so that he might make them lose Time in these Sieges. Besides this, as soon as he knew that the *Polish* Army was upon the *Duna*, he sent Ambassadors, not so much to propose Conditions of Peace, as to make his Enemies lose their Time. Audience was given to these Ambassadors, who went into Invectives against the King and the Nation, saying, that they had very advantageous Propositions to make, and demanding a Suspension of Arms, and that Commissaries might

might be appointed; but the *Poles* would not stoop to this Lure, and the Army continued its March to *Wielkiluki*, which it had in View. WIELKILUKI besieged.

THIS Town was one of the Keys of *Russia*, situated on an Eminence in the Midst of Marshes, covered, on one Side, by a Lake, and, on the other, by the *Lowat*: It is in the Province of *Rzeva*, 120 Wersts on the North of *Witepsk*, and at the same Distance Southward from *Novogorod Weliki*, from which it is separated by Forests, sandy Plains, and the great Lake *Ilmen*. *Pleskow*, which is on the North-West, is at the Distance of 180 Wersts. The Garison was numerous, and provided with every Thing to make a long Resistance.

THE King, before he undertook this Siege, took Possession of *Wieliscz* and *Uswiath*, two important Posts on the *Duna*. The last continuing firm, the King was forced to approach it with his whole Army, and then marched to *Wielkiluki*. The Czar continued at *Moscow*, to make his People believe that the *Polish* War gave him but little Concern. He passed his Time in Feasts and Diversions, being then married for the seventh Time, and assisting at the Nuptials of his eldest Son *John Iwanowitz*.

WIELKILUKI could not be carried without setting Fire to it, and none were saved but a few *Greek* Monks. The Commandant, who went to *Farenbeck*, was massacred by the *Hungarians*. All the Country was put to Fire and Sword, and nothing was more deplorable than the sorrowful Condition to which all the Country People were reduced by the licen-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

tious Soldiers, who thought every Kind of Barbarity was allowable in an Enemy's Country.

TOROPIECZ
taken.

NEWEL ta-
ken.

ZAWOLOCZ
taken.

THE King sent a Detachment to seize upon *Toropiecz*. *John Sbaraz*, who commanded it, met a Body of *Russians* and *Tartars*, that made Head against him for some Time; but they were put to Flight, after several of them had been killed, among whom was *Nancekyn*, the Ambassador, whom we have before mentioned. *Toropiecz* is at the Distance of seventy or eighty Wersts on the East, from *Wielkiluki*, and on the Road to *Moscow*. The Detachment of *Sbaraz* surmounted all the Difficulties they found in this Rout, interrupted by Woods, Morasses and Rivers, and took not the Place before they had endured a vigorous Resistance; the Garison surrendered only on Condition that they should retire to *Novogorod*. *Bornemissa*, another General, took *Newel*, between *Polocz* and *Wielkiluki*, after having encountered with all the Difficulties that are to be met with in taking the strongest Places. *Zamoyski*, who was looked upon as one of the most successful Officers in the *Polish* Army, attacked *Zawolocz*. This Fortrefs is situated on the *Wielka*, between *Wielkikuli* and *Pleskow*, as *Toropiecz* is between the first and *Tweer*. There was more Difficulty in passing the River, than in carrying the Place, which was not so well furnished as the others; nevertheless he was forced to make many Assaults. The Garison would listen to no Capitulation, and all were put to the Sword. *Radziwil* made a cheaper Conquest of *Zieburyssza*, for the Town was delivered

up

up to him as soon as he granted them the Liberty of retiring elsewhere. Thus the *Poland*ers went on in their Course as far as *Porckow* and *Opolsko*, which are but about seventy Wersts from *Pleskow*.

THE King had a great Inclination to attack the last of these Towns, but he was not provided with every Necessary for an Enterprize of such Importance, and the Season was too far advanced ; it was therefore thought adviseable to defer this Siege till the next Campaign, and for the King to go and assemble the Diet again, to obtain the Succours that were wanting.

THE Czar was always of Opinion, that the Republick of *Poland* could not long support the Expences of the War, and that they must either continue it so faintly, that he should find himself in a Condition to fall upon them, or that, at length, they must desire a Peace, which he would grant them on the Terms they should propose, in order to make War again, when a more favourable Opportunity should offer ; but the Advices he received from his Spies in *Poland*, shewed him his Mistake, and gave him to understand, with great Concern, that King *Stephen* would have nothing less than the City of *Pleskow*, and that he was making all necessary Preparations not to miss of his Aim. The Czar could not confide in the great Men of his Empire, and his Forces were not in a Capacity to make Head against the victorious Troops of the King of *Poland*. It was proper then to have Recourse to some other Means, and the following seemed most likely to succeed.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

The CZAR desires the Mediation of the POPE.

JOHN BASILOWITZ was not ignorant of the Zeal with which the Pope endeavoured on every Side to repair, by some important Acquisition, the Breaches that *Calvin* and *Luther* had made in the Church of *Rome*. He knew that the Jesuit *Possevin* had been sent into *Sweden*, where he had left no Art untry'd to reunite that Kingdom to the Popish Communion. The Czar apply'd to the Pontiff, he took him for Mediator, and promised, if he made his Peace with *Poland*, that he would submit the Church of *Russia* to the Holy See. This Bait was too tempting for the Pope not to bite at it. *Possevin* had immediate Orders to go to the King of *Poland*, and endeavour to oblige him, by the Obedience he owed to the Church, to put an End to the War with the Czar.

The Advantages of the SWEDES in LIVONIA.

WHILE the *Poles* made such Conquests on the Frontiers, and even in the Country of *Russia*, the *Swedes*, their Allies, did so much in *Livonia*, that the Czar was obliged to abandon it, or, at least, was not able to defend it as he had done before. *Pontus de la Gardie*, to whom the King of *Sweden* had given his Daughter in Marriage, subdued the Province of *Kexholm*, and set Fire to the Town. He went afterwards into *Livonia*, where he defeated several little Detachments of *Russians*, and made himself Master of *Wesenberg*, *Telsbourg*, *Lode*, *Fickel*, &c. The King of *Sweden* had attacked *Narva*, to no Purpose, some Years before; *Pontus de la Gardie* laid Siege to this important Place, and promising his Soldiers the Plunder of it for twenty-four Hours, they assaulted it with so much Fury, that

that they soon carry'd it, and cut seven thousand *Russians* in Pieces. From *Narva* they went to *Iwanogorod*, which surrendered by Capitulation; *Jamagorod* and *Coporio* did the same. The *Swedes* afterwards going towards *Novogorod*, turned, on a sudden, upon *Wittenstein* in *Livonia*, which they took, and from thence went and lay'd Siege to *Pernaw*.

THE King of *Poland* began his third Campaign with a Design of besieging *Pleskow*. We have seen before how this City came under the Dominion of the Czar: It is very long, and about two Leagues in Circumference: It is narrow towards the West, and the River *Welika* washes its Walls on the South. This River, whose Name signifies *the Great*, is made so by the Waters it receives from many others, and which it carries at five Wersts Distance into the Lake *Pelba*, commonly called *Piepus*. The City is divided into three Parts by so many Walls; one which is towards the West, is called *Sa-Pskow*, that is to say, beyond *Pleskow*, for in the Country this City is called *Pskow*. The Citadel, which is between the second and third, is also divided into three Parts, that on the Side of the *Welika* on the South, is named *Krsennof*, the other *Domantof*; and the third in the Middle or Centre, has the Name of the Town. This City, notwithstanding its Largeness, was well enough fortify'd, especially to the North, where it was defended by a Wall of Stone, within which the Czar, after the Taking of *Poloczka* and *Wielkiluki*, had raised a broad Terrass made with large Planks, and filled with Earth; all round the Town

were Stone Towers; but as these were ancient Works, whose Flanks could not well defend each other, the Czar had added in the Spaces good Works of Turf, with Port-Holes, and furnished them with Artillery. Besides all these exterior Repairs, he not only provided a numerous Garison within, but brought from *Narva* all Sorts of Provisions, and stored several Magazines besides what were there formerly. The Garison was composed of seven thousand Horse, and fifty thousand Foot, taking in the Burghers who were fit for Service. The Generals, who commanded there, were *John* and *Basile Zwirski*, Nephew and Brother of him who had been killed in the Battle of *Ula*, *Chorofchin*, and *Plesceioff*. Round the Town the Czar had brought several Bands of *Cossacks*, commanded by a brave *Circassian*, with a View of employing them in hindering the *Poles* from ravaging the Country, because this Militia, who were incumbered with nothing but their Arms, were very proper to go upon all Parties.

PLESKOW
besieged.

THE King of *Poland* approaching *Pleskow*, had reconnoitred all the Out-works, and learned from some Deserters, and even from the People of the Country, the Condition of the Place within. He had a great Mind to have renounced this Enterprize, it seeming to him likely to fail for several Reasons. In the first Place, he had not Troops enough to form a Line of Circumvallation; in the next, he had not Foot enough for the Assault and the Trenches, and stood in need of Powder, as by the Negligence of some who were to have

have watched it, his Magazine at *Susa* had been blown up; and lastly, he found insurmountable Difficulties with respect to Provisions: Therefore this Prince was willing to lay aside the Thoughts of besieging *Pleskow*, to undertake that of *Porchow*, or of *Udow*. These were two Castles situated one between *Pleskow* and *Novogorod*, and which, in the Hands of the *Poles*, would have prevented the Communication between those two Cities; the other near *Iwanogorod*, and by Means of which all Communication might have been cut off between *Pleskow* and *Narva*. The King would even have preferr'd going to besiege *Novogorod*, which without Doubt would not have been found in so good a State of Defence. Nevertheless Fame had given such a Description of *Pleskow*, that it would not have been for the Honour of the King and the Nation to have retired from before it, after having approached so near; besides that such a Step would have given fresh Courage to the dejected *Russians*; who had a considerable Army near *Novogorod*. Therefore it was resolved to keep to the first Design, and that the Siege of *Pleskow* should be formed without Loss of Time. The King disputed for a long while with General *Zamoycki* on the Choice of the Place where it was to be attacked, and at length they agreed the Attack should be made towards the East; so the Troops crossed the *Caresch*, and blocked up the Town on that Side.

THE Forces were divided according to their different Nations; the *Poles*, *Lithuanians*, *Hungarians* and *Germans*, had each their

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

different Posts, where every one endeavoured, through Emulation, to gain more Glory than the other. Without entering into a Detail of the Particulars of this famous Siege, let it suffice to say, that both the Besiegers, and the Besieged, did every Thing that could be expected from the most warlike People. What the King had foreseen happened, the Besiegers began to want Powder, which obliged them to batter the Town but faintly, till they could have some brought from *Riga*, and elsewhere. There were no Efforts that the *Russians* of *Ingria* and *Novogorod* did not make use of to throw Succours into the Town; but the King, *Zamoyski*, and *Farensbeck*, were in all Places, and opposed all Attempts that the *Russians* could make.

DURING the Siege, the King of *Poland* received several Ambassadors; among the rest, one from the Grand Seignior, to demand certain *Tartars* who had deserted. These Ambassadors, after having felicitated the King of *Poland* upon his Conquests, offered him very considerable Succours, which were neither accepted, nor refused. The Jesuit *Possevin* arrived also in the King's Camp. He was invested with the Dignity of Legate from the Holy See, and came from the Court of the Czar, with whom he had conferred on the Conditions of the Peace, of which he was come to be the Mediator in the Name of the Pope. He had an Audience of the King, to whom he laid open the Sentiments of the Czar, who was desirous to make Peace upon the same Terms he had proposed during the Siege of *Poloczko*. The King disdained to
make

make any Answer to them; but gave this Mediator to understand, that no Peace could be made unless the Czar yielded all *Livonia* to the Crown of *Poland*. The Jesuit dispatched a Courier to the Czar, who immediately named the Town of *Zapolcia*, about ninety Wersts from *Pleskow*, for the Conferences to be held in, under the Mediation of the Pope. The King sent thither two Plenipotentiaries and one Secretary, and soon after arrived also two Ambassadors from the Czar, accompanied by a Secretary; the Jesuit *Possevin* was also found in the Place in Quality of Mediator.

THE Design of the Czar was to draw the Negotiation out in Length, in Hopes that the Cold, which began to be very violent, and to which the Troops that composed the *Polish* Army had not been accustomed, would oblige their Generals to decamp. He knew that *Pleskow* wanted for nothing, and he was satisfied of the Bravery and Fidelity of those who were to defend it. The King of *Poland* was obliged to go and assist at the Diet, and it was known that *Zamoyski* was not beloved by the Troops. The *Poles* were informed of all these Circumstances by a Person in the Train of the *Russian* Plenipotentiaries, who knew the Secret of the Embassy. For which Reason they redoubled their Attacks, and besides that undertook the Siege of the Monastery of *Pezzura*, on the Road from *Pleskow* to *Riga*; which being fortified and filled with Troops, very much incommoded the Foragers of the *Polish* Army. At last the General made all the necessary Dispositions;

to

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

to oblige the Town to surrender, by Famine, having been informed, by one *Suturma*, the Governor's Secretary, who had been taken Prisoner, that they had not Provisions and Ammunition to last but a short Time.

WHILE this passed at the Siege, and the *Russian* Plenipotentiaries try'd all Ways to gain Time, by sending Couriers continually to the Czar, with the Hopes of the Frosts obliging *Zamoyiski* to raise the Siege, a large Detachment of the *Polish* Army, commanded by *Christopher Radziwil*, *Kmita*, and *Haraburda*, had entered into *Russia* by *Mobilow*, *Skolw*, and *Toropiecz*. They advanced very far into the Province of *Rzeva*, when two Foragers falling into their Hands, told them, that a Body of fifteen thousand Men were not far off, and that the Czar, with his Court, was at *Starica*, and that he had another Body near *Rzeva*: *Radziwil*, nevertheless, advanced as far as the *Wolga*, beyond which he sent his *Tartars* out in Parties, and would have followed them himself and advanced towards *Starica*, if one *Murfa*, an Officer of the Czar's Household, coming to throw himself into the Arms of the *Poles*, had not spoke with such Confidence of the great Army, at the Head of which the Czar was at *Starica*, that *Radziwil*, considering the Idea he had of that Monarch's Power, could not but believe what the pretended Renegado told him: But it was afterwards known, that the Czar had but eight hundred Men about his Person, and that as soon as he heard that the *Poles* had crossed the Head of the *Wolga*, he had retired with Precipitation; so that it would
not

not have been difficult for *Radziwil* to have taken him Prisoner, if, having good Spies, he had marched directly to *Starica*, instead of amusing himself in sending Parties to spoil the Country in the Way to *Moscow*. After having missed this Blow, the *Polish* Detachment retired, by the Province of *Rzeva*, and encamped at *Cbelm* on the *Lowat*, from whence they advanced toward *Staraja-Russa*, continually pillaging the *Russian* Territories on every Side.

THE Season of the Year, or the other Inconveniences that the *Polanders* found before *Pleskow*, no Ways discouraged them. They had raised Barracks, and were resolved to pass the Winter before that City, that they might force it to surrender by Famine. On the other Side, although the *Russians* were persuaded that the Czar, their Sovereign, had good Reasons for remaining inactive, while the *Swedes*, on one Hand, and the *Poles* on the other, made every Day fresh Conquests; and the last, in their Progress, committed the greatest Disorders; yet they could not forbear murmuring at a Conduct, in which there appeared more Cowardice than Prudence; therefore several great Men, joining together to make their Remonstrances to the Czar, threw themselves at his Feet, offering him their Lives and Fortunes, and conjuring him to wipe out the Stain that so long an Inactivity would bring upon the whole *Russian* Nation; they added, that he had nothing to do but to command it, and he should soon see an Army on Foot as numerous as the Leaves of a Forest, and that if he would put his eldest Son at their Head, his Presence

would be sufficient to render them capable of surmounting the greatest Difficulties.

THIS Remonstrance irritated *John Basilowitz* to the greatest Degree, for it was in some Sort to reproach him with Cowardice; he therefore told these Enquirers into his Conduct, that since they wanted a Sovereign who would obey their Wills, and be accountable to them for his Actions, they might choose one where they would. The *Russians*, afraid of the Wrath to which they found they had provoked their Prince, prostrated themselves again at his Feet, protesting, that it was not through any Disaffection to him, that they had taken this Step which they saw was displeasing to him, assured him that they were very sorry for what they had done, and conjured him to continue to govern them at his own good Pleasure. *John Basilowitz* would not hearken to them, but on Condition, that they should discover the Authors of this rash Undertaking, that he might punish them for their Boldness; and suspecting that his Son had an Intelligence with those who demanded him for their General, he reprimanded him very severely. This virtuous young Prince, extremely concerned to find himself suspected by his Father, begged that he might be permitted to justify himself; but the Czar, to stop his Mouth at first, gave him a Blow on the Head with a Stick he had in his Hand, that had an Iron Ferrel to it, and which unfortunately touched him on the Temple. The Prince did not perceive he was wounded till the Blood ran down his Robe, and then immediately he dropt down motionless at his Father's

JOHN BASI-
LOWITZ kills
his own Son.

Father's Feet. The Czar had always tenderly loved him, and he was the Darling of the whole People. When the Father beheld this deplorable Spectacle, which was the Work of his own Hand, from Anger he fell into the most piercing Sorrow, threw himself upon the Body of his Son, embraced him, pressed him to his Bosom, and spoke to him with all the passionate Fondness of a loving and afflicted Parent. The Prince in a short Time recovered his Speech and Strength enough to assure his Father, that there was no Conspiracy, nor was he capable of harbouring such a Thought, and so far from having any Design against him, he besought the Almighty to give him the Empire of the Universe, and to add to his Life the Days that he had taken from his own. The Prince lived four Days longer, and then his Death threw his Father into so much Affliction, that it had like to have put an End to his own Life. He was several Days without changing his Dress; was, with much Difficulty, prevailed upon to take the least Nourishment, and all the rest of his Life could never hear the Prince mentioned without immediately shedding Tears. He caused a most magnificent Funeral to be made for him, and to expiate his Crime, if such a Crime was to be expiated, sent eighty thousand Ducats to the Patriarch of *Constantinople* and *Alexandria*, and to the Monks that watched the holy Sepulchre, that they might pray without ceasing for the Soul of his Son.

At length the Peace was concluded at *Zalpozia*. The Articles proposed were for a long Time contested on both Sides, as was
that

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

that especially of admitting the *Swedes* into the Treaty; but as the King of *Poland* had a good deal of Reason to be dissatisfy'd with them, since, as it was said, they had ran away with the Game while he was beating the Bush, by subjugating all *Esthonia* and *Ingria*, by the Favour of the War that *Poland* made with the *Russians*, he did not much insist upon having them comprehended in it.

It was agreed that the Czar should yield to the Crown of *Poland* all that he possessed in *Livonia*, and that the King of *Poland* should restore to the Czar all that he had taken in his three Campaigns, except *Poloczko*, *Wieliczko*, and their Dependencies, and that Conferences should be afterwards held to regulate the other Differences between the two Nations, and for setting the Prisoners at Liberty.

THIS News was immediately carry'd to *Pleskow*, where it occasioned an universal Joy, as well as in the Army of *Poland*. General *Zamoyski* recalled all his Detachments, and the long Siege was raised, which had cost no less to the Besiegers than to the Besieged, and which had brought no less Glory to one Side than to the other; for if the *Poles* had shewn an invincible Constancy to accomplish so difficult an Enterprize, the *Russians* had given Proofs of an extraordinary Valour and an inviolable Fidelity to their Sovereign, in supporting this Siege so long, altho' they receiv'd no Succours, nor had any Hopes of being relieved.

WE will not digress from our Subject to relate the Consequences of this Peace, with
respect

respect to *Sweden*, *Livonia*, and Duke *Magnus*, who had put himself under the Protection of the *Poles*. Let it suffice to observe, that the King of *Sweden*, threatened with a War from *Poland*, which pretended to all *Livonia*, sought to make his Peace with the Czar; but as they could not agree upon their respective Pretensions, a Truce only was concluded for two Months, which was followed by another of two Years, during which Time the Czar, *John Basilowitz*, died. This Prince, after the Death of his Son, fell into an extreme Melancholy, that allowed him not one Day's Pleasure for all the rest of his Life.

AFTER the Peace was concluded with *Poland*, he made Preparations to retake *Narva* from *Sweden*; but the King of *Poland* writing to him to dissuade him from that Design, as he could not keep the Town, to which *Poland* pretended a Right in Virtue of the Treaty of *Zapolcia*, he gave over that Enterprize, and sent back an Express which the King of *Poland* had sent to him with a very sharp Letter, during the Conferences at *Zapolcia*, and caused him to be told, that since Peace was made, and a good Intelligence re-established between them, he did not think it proper to answer the Invectives in that Letter wrote in the Time of War.

THE Jesuit *Possevin* having succeeded in all that the Czar desired of him with respect to the Peace, demanded that Prince, in his Turn, to fulfil his Promise, and re-unite the Church of his Dominions to the holy See of *Rome*. *John Basilowitz* answered him, that this was an Affair that could not be executed
in

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

in a short Time; that he thought it not just to force the Consciences of any Christian with regard to Religion, and that therefore Time, and the Insinuations of his Clergy, must do the Work; that he would lend his Assistance, and give an Account from Time to Time of its Progress to the holy Father. In this Manner he disengaged himself from the reverend Jesuit, who was honourably conducted to the Frontiers of *Bologna*.

JOHN BASILOWITZ did not survive the Time of the Conclusion of the Treaty of *Zapolcia* but about two Years, which he employed in correcting several Abuses crept into the Provinces of his Empire, during the Troubles of a War of more than twenty-six Years Continuance. He made a good Peace with the *Tartars* of *Pre-cop*, which was what their Cham, *Machmet-Girey*, very much desired, that he might declare War with *Poland*.

The Death of
JOHN BASI-
LOWITZ.

THE Czar, *John Basilowitz*, died on the 28th of *March*, 1584, aged 56 and some Months, after a Reign of 44 Years. He had been ill a long Time, and, during that Illness, had shewn many Acts of great Clemency. At the Time of his Death, he desired his Son to set all Prisoners at Liberty, to abolish several new Taxes, and to extend his Beneficence to all those of his Subjects who had been unjustly deprived of their Estates. The News of his Death was no sooner made publick, but the People expressed the greatest Concern; they thought every Thing was lost, and that, losing so great a Monarch, *Russia* would soon become the Prey of her Neighbours.

JOHN

JOHN BASILOWITZ was, in Truth, the *His Character.* greatest Prince that *Russia* had known till his Time. He was a profound Politician, knew all the Interests of his Neighbours, and how to make Advantage of any false Step that was taken by them. He was valiant, let slip no Opportunity of extending the Limits of his Empire, and was almost always successful till King *Stephen* declared War with him, and then, seized with a Kind of Stupor, either thro' the Remembrance of a former Prediction, or through the Fear of hazarding, against so redoubted a Warrior, the Glory he had already acquired, he would not bring into the Field an Army, that might have forced him to a decisive Battle, but contented himself with several little flying Camps, which were at too great a Distance from one another; by these, indeed, he covered *Novogorod-Weliki* and *Moscow*, but did not hinder Parties of the Enemy from pillaging several Places on his Frontiers. It may be said, that at this Time his Policy deceived him; he knew the Genius of the *Polanders*, and any other as well as he might have thought that they would never have consented to continue the War for three Years successively: But there are Conjectures to be found in which the Multitude give Way, and when a Nation will sacrifice even their Vices to the Bravery of their Master, or to Reasons of State.

JOHN BASILOWITZ was learned, and had particularly studied Religion, for which Reason he would never allow of Persecution in Matters of Faith, knowing that Conviction must come from Reason and Conscience, and

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

not from Violence and Tortures, which might make Men Hypocrites, but could never make them good Christians; it is nevertheless true, that he used some Cruelties towards the *Jews*, but this was thro' a Zeal not to be commended, and a Christian Hatred to that Nation, because they had crucify'd Jesus Christ. He gave, on many Occasions, Proofs of a solid Piety; and was, without Doubt, persuaded that Kings were the sovereign Pontiffs of their own Dominions, since he would often officiate pontifically with an exemplary Devotion, and at such Times retired to the Monastery of *Alexandrowa*, to prepare himself for those holy Functions.

JOHN BASILOWITZ began what one of his Successors happily executed in our Days, he had undertaken to civilize the *Russians*, and teach them the Manners of the other People of *Europe*, by cultivating among his own Subjects the Arts that were practised by them; but these Innovations were displeasing to this gross People, and made them murmur against the Author of them, without examining if they would be prejudicial to them or not. A most extraordinary Example there is of the Genius of these stupid Nations, in what happened in the Time of *John Basilowitz*. The King of *Poland*, *Stephen Battori*, having recovered *Livonia*, as well by the Treaty of *Zapolcia* as by the Conventions made with the King of *Sweden*, went himself into that Province to establish a new Form of Government. According to the constant Custom there, when any Peasant, who in this Country were all treated as Slaves, had committed a Fault, he
was

was whipp'd with a Rod till the Blood came. The King was willing to commute this barbarous Punishment for one that was more moderate; but these Peasants, insensible of the Favour designed them, threw themselves at his Feet, and begg'd that he would alter nothing in their ancient Customs, because they had experienced, that all Innovations, so far from bringing them any Redress, had always made their Burdens sit the heavier upon them.

JOHN BASILOWITZ found himself in Circumstances, wherein the Welfare and Glory of his State required Enterprizes more difficult than any his Predecessors had been engaged in: From hence the Murmuring of his People, their Seditions, and Conspiracies, and from hence the sorrowful Necessity that he found himself in of employing the Severity of Tortures to preserve the Safety of his Life: Therefore, if *John Basilowitz* committed, on some Occasions, Acts that appeared very cruel and tyrannical, they must in some Measure be imputed to the Manners of his Country, and the Conduct of his Subjects, to whom he would do good whether they would or not. Scarce any Prince was a greater Lover of Justice and Order. He composed a Body of Law, collected from many Precedents and Customs, and called it *Sudenaja Kniga*, which, in the *Russian* Language, signifies the *Book of Justice*, and delivered it to his Judges. This Book was always observed, and made the Standard in all Law Proceedings, tho' not printed till the Reign of *Alexis Michaelowitz*. He was always ready to hear the Complaints of all those who he thought

H 2 had

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

had any Reason to make them. The Governors of Towns and Provinces, and those whom he had set over them, to render Justice, found an inflexible Master; if there was the least Complaint against their Administration; and, on the other Hand, he punished, with the utmost Rigour, those who in any Manner screened such as offended from Justice.

JOHN BASILOWITZ had had seven Wives, and, it is said, was very desirous to have added our Queen *Elizabeth* to the Number, having made strong Courtship to her, and was indeed always an Admirer of, and Friend to, the *English* Nation, whither, it was thought, he once intended to have made his Escape, in Case of Extremity, and that the Plot which he suspected a great Part of his Boyars to be concerned in, had taken effect.

He left but two Sons at his Death, *Theodore*, who succeeded him, and one younger, named *Demetrius*, whom he placed under the Tutelage of the Knez *Bogdan Bielki*, and whose Name we shall find afterwards made a great Noise.

THIS Knez was ambitious, proud, cruel, and one of those restless Spirits, which seem born to change the Face and Order of Things; he was bold to Audaciousness, and enterprizing even to Rashness; he despised Virtue, which he made only the Handmaid to his Policy; he had a vast Genius, was always employed in great Designs, and listened to nothing but what tended to satisfy his Ambition.

THEODORE,

THEODORE, twenty-two Years of Age, THEODORE
IWANOWITZ. was a hopeful Prince, engaging in his Person, and of a most amiable Temper: The Severity with which his Father used those who were nearest to him, as well as others, was the Reason that this Prince was never willing to meddle in Affairs; and, that he might give no Umbrage, he preferred the Conversation of Monks; and others of that Sort, to the Company of great Men, and Ministers of State; so that when he came to the Throne, upon the Death of his Father, he brought to it only Moderation and Mildness, without any of those Talents necessary to govern so untractable a People as the *Russians*.

It was this that gave Rise to the Projects of the Knez *Bielki*. This ambitious Man thought it would be easy to seize on the sovereign Authority, if by excluding the *Czarewicz Theodore Iwanowitz*, as incapable of governing so vast an Empire, he could place his Pupil on the Throne. The *Russians* flattered themselves with Hopes of better Times, after the Death of *John Basilowitz*, and *Theodore* confirm'd them in these Hopes by some of the first Acts of his Authority, for he immediately abolished some very heavy Impositions, he discharged several miserable Wretches out of Prisons, where they had lain so long, that they despaired of ever more viewing the Sun, and broke those Guards, called *Aprisnes*, which were render'd odious to the People, by having been made use of in the Executions ordered by the late Czar.

WHILST the new Czar endeavoured thus to conciliate to himself the Affections of his

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

People, *Bielki* used all Means to debauch the Grandees, but his Endeavours proved in vain, so that he was obliged to leave Intreaties and Artifices to have Recourse to open Force, before the States of the Empire assembled should take an Oath to the new Czar, that alone might be capable of frustrating all his Designs; for few Subjects are more faithful to their Sovereigns than the *Russians*, after they have once acknowledged them, and sworn Fidelity to them.

HE began to raise Troops, and found no great Difficulty to form a considerable Body in a short Time. The People complained of his Insolence, and accused him of having a Design to overturn the State, under the Pretence of maintaining the Rights of his Pupil, of whom he had made himself the absolute Master. The great Men stood by *Theodore*, not that they judged him more capable of governing than his Brother *Demetrius*, but because they foresaw, that under the last they must be obliged to stoop to the tyrannical and haughty Temper of *Bielki*, who had already seized on the Castle of *Moscow*, from whence he shewed how much he despised all those whom he thought he had in his Power. Every one ran to Arms, they seized the Castle, *Bielki* fled, and was afterwards arrested; when it was given him to understand, that if he would preserve his Life, he had no Way to do it, but by entirely renouncing the Management of Affairs; that the People had already but too many Proofs of his natural Inclination to Violence and Oppression, and that it was unworthy of

a Man, who ought to be watchful of the State, to take up Arms to destroy it. *Bielki* seeing no Medium between his Abdication and a shameful Death, chose the first, and banished himself into one of the extream Parts of the Empire, in the Kingdom of *Casan*.

As soon as the Troubles were a little appeased, Preparations were made for the Coronation of the Czar *Theodore*, which Ceremony was performed in the Church of *St. Michael*, where an Amphitheatre was erected, the Floor of which being covered with rich Tapestry, the Knezes and Boyars received him at the Door, and conducting him to a magnificent Throne, the Crown was set on his Head by the Metropolitan of *Moscow*, with the loud Acclamations of a vast Multitude of his Subjects, who were come from all Parts of this Capital to assist at a Ceremony, which they looked upon as the Beginning of their Repose and Happiness.

THE Czar *Theodore* had married the Sister of the Knez *Boris Gudenow*, to whom he had given the Post of Grand Master of his Horse. This Man knew how to take Advantage of the Incapacity of his Brother-in-Law, and to seize insensibly on all his Authority: To a distinguished Birth, he joined an insinuating Behaviour, that made him capable of undertaking and executing any Thing he had a Mind to. He had Greatness of Soul, but was naturally cruel; nevertheless he could put on an Air of Meekness and Popularity that concealed an insatiable Ambition. He endeavoured, at first, to gain the People, and the

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Nobles, by a thousand Acts of Beneficence ; he was accessible to all, and if he sent away any dissatisfied, he knew how to throw the Blame on some other. He seemed to have no End in all his Actions but the publick Good ; by which Means he raised himself to the Post of the Czar's Lieutenant, with the Approbation of every body.

THE Truce which the Czar *John Basilowitz* had made with *Sweden* being now at an End, it was renewed for four Years ; that is to say, till the End of the Year 1590. The celebrated *Pontus de la Gardie*, who was charged with this Negotiation, unfortunately perished, with eighteen Persons in his Train, the Vessel in which he was embarked foundering just as he approached *Narva*,

THE Czar likewise confirmed the Treaty of Peace for ten Years, that had been made by his Father with *Poland*, carefully avoiding every Thing that might embroil him with that Nation, where he knew the Jesuit *Possévin* did all that was in his Power to rekindle the War with *Russia*, because the late Czar had not kept his Word with him to submit the *Russian* Church to the Holy See.

THE King of *Poland*, *Stephen Battori*, died two Years after *John Basilowitz*, and the Diet of *Poland* was divided about the Choice of a Successor. The greatest Part of the Members of the Diet voted in Favour of *Sigismund*, Prince of *Sweden*, the Son of *John*, and Nephew, by his Mother's Side, of the late King of *Poland*, *Sigismund Augustus* ; the rest of the Members had elected *Maximilian* of *Austria*. This Division drew the last into
Poland

Poland at the Head of an Army, which was beaten by General *Zamoyiski*: *Maximilian* was taken Prisoner, and obtained his Liberty by renouncing the Crown. It was to be feared, that the two Kings of *Sweden* and *Poland* would make an Alliance so much the more fatal to *Russia*, as the *Crim Tartars* still threatened the Provinces with an Irruption; which indeed they put in Execution; but it was not attended with all the ill Consequences that had been apprehended, because the Knez *Boris Gudenow* opposed them with Troops, which, if they were not capable of attacking and driving them away, harrassed them in their Progress, and prevented their penetrating far into the Country.

GUDENOW thought only how he might find Means to assure to himself the sovereign Authority, all the Functions of which he exercised in the Name of the Czar *Theodore*. He placed all those at a Distance from the Prince, who he thought were capable of seeing thro' his Designs, and to prevent the Execution of them. He gave considerable Governments to these Men, and other Employments, that kept them from Court. All Things succeeded to his Wishes, and seemed to favour his Design. The Czarina, his Sister, brought the Czar no Children; King *John* was more employed in *Sweden* about the Affairs of Religion than those of War; and the Misunderstanding that still subsisted between him and his Brother Duke *Charles*, would scarce allow him to intermeddle with the Affairs of his Neighbours. The *Polanders* were not well pleased with his Son *Sigismund*,
who

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

who contrary to the Tenour of the *Pacta conventa*, to which he had sworn when he accepted the Crown, had not yet reunited *Livonia* to *Poland*.

ONE Child only was almost an invincible Obstacle to *Gudenow's* Projects; this was the young *Demetrius*, Pupil to the Knez *Bogdan Bielki*, of whom we have before spoken.

GUDENOW
contrives to
have DEME-
TRIUS, the
Czar's Bro-
ther, assassi-
nated.

THE Czar *John Basilowicz* had him by his last Wife, and at his Death had given him the City of *Uglitz*, with its Dependences, for his Appenage. This young Prince was brought up under the Care of the Czarina Dowager his Mother, who employed her whole Time in his Education. *Boris Gudenow* resolved to sacrifice this innocent Victim to his Ambition, and trusted his Design to an Officer, to whom he promised a Reward proportioned to the Service he expected from him. This Man soon found an Opportunity to execute his cruel Orders; but *Gudenow*, who knew that if he was capable of committing such a Crime, must be also capable of divulging it, instead of giving him the great Reward he had promised, had him waylaid on the Road from *Uglitz*, and assassinated.

SOME have said, that this Officer belonged to *Boris Gudenow*, others that he was an Officer in *Demetrius's* own House. The clearing up this Point would dissipate many Doubts concerning this Murder, for if the Assassin was a Domestick of *Demetrius*, there is no Likelihood that he could be deceived; but if he belonged to the Grand Master of the Horse, it was very easy for the Mother of the young Prince to deliver another to him in

the Room of her Son. For some of the Historians of those Times have pretended, that the Czarina, informed in good Time of the criminal Design of *Gudenow*, sent her Son out of the Way, and putting another Boy of the same Age in his Place, by that Means saved his Life. The Thing would have been difficult to have been put in Practice in any other Country than *Russia*, or *Turky*; but nothing seems more easy to those who have any Idea of the Manners of the *Russians*. The great People are absolute Masters of their Vassals, and the Peasants are born Slaves, whom they dispose of as we do of the brute Animals about our Estates and Houses; so that it was no difficult Matter for the Czarina to find a Child whom she might sacrifice to save the Life of her Son.

THE News of this Murder soon arrived at *Moscow*. The Author of it was not named, tho' he was sufficiently suspected. The Czarina Dowager made great Complaints of it to the Czar, from whom she demanded Justice; and *Gudenow* himself gave Orders for discovering the Assassin; but those who knew him did not suffer themselves to be deceived by such Appearances. He understood that his Name was whispered about, and believed that he ought, at any Rate, to stifle the Report. The Expedient that to him seem'd the most likely to answer this End, was to draw off the Attention of the People to something that touched them more nearly; therefore he caused Fire to be set to the spacious City of *Moscow* in several Places at once. The unfortunate *Demetrius* was thought on no longer,
every

*Sets Fire to the
City of Mos-
cow.*

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

every one being employed to save his House, his Children, or his Goods, from the Flames, which spread on all Sides. At the same Time *Gudenow* sent Troops to *Uglitz*, to raze the Castle to the Ground, and drive away the Inhabitants, because, as he said, they had suffered this Murder, and given Harbour to Assassins. At last, to do his utmost to gain the Affections of the People, and efface the ill Impressions made on their Minds by the inhuman Murder of the young Prince, he bestowed large Sums among them to rebuild, in a handsomer Manner, the Houses that he himself had caused to be burnt.

THE Truce which had been already several Times renewed with *Sweden*, being near at an End, Commissaries were named on both Sides, to meet on the Frontiers of the two States, to convert it into a Peace. The very Name of War alarmed the Czar *Theodore*, and the *Grand Master of the Horse*, his Brother-in-Law, had powerful Reasons for endeavouring to preserve that Tranquillity which the State had been in for some Years, for in the Midst of Arms, and the Embarrassment of a War, wherein he must have appeared in Person, he could not form a Party to put the last Hand to the Plan which he had been laying down so successfully hitherto; the *Russian* Ambassadors had Orders therefore to purchase Peace, if it was not to be obtained otherwise, and to offer considerable Sums to the *Swedes*, if they would, in changing the Truce to a Treaty of Peace and Alliance, restore to the Czar the Places in *Ingria* and *Carelia*, which they had kept ever since they

they had conquered them. The *Swedes* were haughty, and all that could be obtained was a Truce for three Months, at the Expiration of which the Commissaries of both Powers were to meet again.

BORIS GUDENOW now conducted himself in another Manner, and that he might not be the Dupe of the *Swedes*, and to shew them, that if he was willing to pay for a Peace, it was not through an Imbecillity, or Want of Power to obtain it otherwise, he caused the *Russian* Ambassadors to be followed by an Army capable of giving Weight to their Demands. They entered into Conferences, because the *Swedes* were come to the Place of Appointment; but broke up soon, when it was known that the *Russian* Troops had sack'd and burnt *Jamagorod*, upon the Borders of the *Laga* in *Ingria*, and at about twenty Wersts Distance from *Iwanogorod*. The *Russian* Plenipotentiaries in vain protesting, that these Hostilities were committed unknown to them, the *Swedes* retired.

THE Truce was ended; therefore the *Russian* Army, an hundred thousand strong, pursued their Point, took *Iwanogorod*, and besieged *Narva* in the Middle of *February*. The *Swedish* Army, commanded by *Gustavus Banier*, retired under *Wesenberg*. The *Russians* imagining they would soon return if they had the least Reinforcement, gave the Town Assault upon Assault. *Charles Gora*, who commanded the Garison, repulsed them with Vigour; but there was all the Appearance that they must in the End be obliged to yield to Numbers: Therefore the Citizens,
and

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

and the rest of the Garison, seeing the Enemy disposed to give the last Assault, by which they could not but be overcome, desired this brave Officer not to come to that Extremity. Upon which they parley'd with the Enemy, and gave up all the Conquests the *Russians* had made upon them in *Ingria*, on Condition that they should raise the Siege of *Narva*. To this they consented, and the Czar *Theodore* made his Entrance into *Iwanogorod*. The *Tartars* of the *Russian* Army were got into *Finland*, where they had made a Progress, which cost the Lives of many thousand Peasants: The Czar recalled them, and returned towards his Capital, after having concluded a Truce with *Sweden* for a Year.

JOHN King of
SWEDEN dies.

JOHN King of *Sweden* had a great Desire to have repaired this Loss; but the Divisions that reigned at that Time between him and his Subjects, hindered these from being ready to give him any Assistance; and he died in the Year 1592. Duke *Charles*, his Brother, who was Regent in the Absence of *Sigismund*, then in *Poland*, sent Commissaries to the Frontiers of *Russia*, where they agreed with those of the Czar to prolong the Truce for two Years; the Czar would willingly have made Peace, so much he feared, that the two Crowns being united upon one Head, *Sigismund* would have employed all the Forces of both Kingdoms against him. But the Misunderstanding that happened between Duke *Charles* and the *Swedes* on one Hand, and between *Sigismund* and the Nobles of *Poland* on the other, as well on Account of Religion, as with respect to *Esthonia*,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

III

nia, removed all Subject of Fear from the Czar, and gave *Boris Gudenow* Time to confirm his Authority, and to make Creatures for his Purpose. In the mean while, as he was informed, that in all the Negotiations between King *Sigismund* and his Uncle Duke *Charles*, and between the States of the two Kingdoms, the first Article always stipulated a strict Union against *Russia*, and believed that if any Revolution should make these People of one Mind, the *Russians* must become a Victim to them, he ordered the Plenipotentiaries he had sent to *Narva* to press the *Swedes* in such a Manner, that at length a Peace was concluded to the Satisfaction of both Nations. The *Russians* renounced *Esthonia* for ever, and the *Swedes* gave up *Kexolm*, and a Part of *Carelia*.

THE Czar *Theodore* sent soon after a solemn Embassy to the Emperor *Rodolphus II.* to renew the ancient Alliance that was between the Czars and the Emperors of *Germany*. Which was one of the last publick Acts of this weak Prince, who died in the Year 1597, not without the Suspicion of his Brother-in-Law's having abridged his Days by the Help of Poison; and this the Czarina seemed so sensible of, that she strongly reproached her Brother *Boris Gudenow* with the Murder of her Husband, and would never speak to him afterwards. *Theodore* was the last Prince of the Line of *Rurick*, which had continued above seven hundred Years upon the Throne. His Mother *Anastasia*, the Daughter of *George Romanoff*, of a very ancient Family in *Russia*, had a Nephew named *Theodore*

The Czar
THEODORE
dies.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Theodore Nikititz Romanoff, whom the Czar *Theodore* had a great Affection for, and intended, as it was thought, to have left his Crown to him, which was one Reason of *Boris Gudenow's* precipitating the End of that Prince; after which he sent *Theodore Nikititz* to Prison, on some feigned Pretence, and then separated him and his Wife against their Wills, and forced them into different Convents, obliging them both not only to take Orders, but *Theodore*, according to the Rules of the Convent, to change his Name to that of *Philaret*: But in vain did he oppose the immutable Decrees of Fate, for we shall see the Blood of *Romanoff* on the Throne of *Russia*, in the Person of the Son of *Theodore Nikititz*, and his Posterity at this Day become the Happiness and Glory of that great Empire.

The End of the First Book.



T H E



THE
HISTORY
OF
RUSSIA,

To the End of the REIGN of the
Empress CATHARINE.

BOOK II.

The CONTENTS.

An Account of the Usurpations of Boris Gudennow ; his Son Theodore Borissowitz ; the Impostor Demetrius ; Basile Zufki ; two other Impostors under the Name of Demetrius ; of the Election of Wladislaus, Son of the King of Poland ; of a fourth Demetrius an Impostor ; and of the Election of Michael Theodorewitz Romanoff, the first Czar of the present Imperial Family.



BORIS GUDENOW was not ignorant of what was said, concerning the sudden Death of the Czar *Theodore* ; therefore, altho' he had formed a Party strong enough to have withstood any Opposition, he

feared if he should shew too much Eagerness for the Crown, it might confirm the Suspicions of the People, and give his Enemies, or rather the Friends of Justice, a good Reason to exclude him from the Throne. Whereupon as soon as he had given Orders for the Funeral of the late Czar, and for assembling the principal Persons of the State, who had a Right to dispose of the vacant Throne, he retired to a Convent: Where hearing of the Irresolution of the States, while he employed his Friends to work under-hand, he caused a Report to be spread, that he was going to be shaved, and take the Habit of a Monk. It is to be remarked, that at the Time we are now speaking of, the *Russians* were of Opinion, that to come out of a Convent, after a Person had been shaved, was a Sin that was never to be forgiven in this World, or the next; *Gudenow* therefore was willing to make the *Russians* believe, by whom he was generally beloved, that they were in Danger of losing him for ever. The Stratagem succeeded, and the great Men and People in this Apprehension ran in Crouds to the Convent, where throwing themselves on the Ground, tearing their Hair, and beating their Breasts, like Men in the utmost Despair, they vowed they would never quit the Place till he had promised them to accept of the Crown; which he made some Difficulty of at first, but at length seemed to be overcome by the Intreaties of some of his most particular Friends.

BORIS GUDENOW, in the Beginning of his Reign, had some Misunderstandings with the
Tartars,

Tartars, and with the *Turks*; but he more especially took Part in the Affairs of *Sweden* and *Poland*. He greatly sympathized with *Charles* Duke of *Sundermania*, who had not less Ambition than himself, and who, like him, found nothing but the Throne capable of satisfying it: He wanted only to drive his Nephew from it, and there was nothing he would not have attempted to gain his Ends, but in an artful Manner, that might not stain his Glory with the odious Name of an Usurper. This Prince was sure of one Part of the Provinces, and of the Grandees of *Sweden*; but there was a great Number besides firm to *Sigismund*, the Son of King *John*, and King of *Poland*. Therefore, as it was prudent for him to look out for some powerful Support from abroad; he turns his Eyes towards the new Czar, whom he found disposed to enter into all his Measures against the King of *Poland*: But the Czar *Boris* sought less the Interest of Duke *Charles* than his own, and to have an Opportunity of fishing in troubled Waters, when *Poland* and *Sweden* should be embroiled with one another; which he made sufficiently appear, by the Part he acted at this Time.

ERIC XIV. King of *Sweden*, Brother of King *John* and Duke *Charles*, had had two Sons by his Mistress *Catbarine*, whom he afterwards married. One of these Sons, named *Gustavus Ericzon*, that is, the Son of *Eric*, was retired to *Thorn* in *Prussia*, where he led a private Life. Him the Czar *Boris* invited to come to his Court, where he greatly caressed him, and, seeing the Differences that

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

were beginning between the *Swedes*, and their King *Sigismund*, insinuated to *Gustavus*, that now was the Time for him to make good his Pretensions, and that he ought to demand, that *Sweden* should at least give him *Esthonia* and *Finland*. He added, that if he would be * baptized, and embrace the *Greek Religion*, he would present his Daughter to him in Marriage, and lend him Forces sufficient to maintain his Rights. *Gustavus* rejected these Proposals, protesting to the Czar, that he would rather lose his Life than give Ear to them: This Refusal could not but irritate the impetuous *Boris*, who, seeing his Projects thus destroyed, when *Gustavus* would have gone away, not only took every Thing from him, but threw him into a Prison, where he died, in the Year 1607. And, indeed, it would not have been prudent in the Czar to have let a Man go away, to whom he had discovered his Designs against *Sweden*.

THE POLES were informed of the Alliance between the Czar *Boris*, and the King of *Sweden*, *Charles IX.* who had accepted the Crown, after he had excluded his Nephew *Sigismund*, and his Son *Wladislaus*. *Charles* soon threatened *Livonia*; it is true, he, at first, kept within the Bounds of *Esthonia*; but the *Poles*, who had declared War with him, and would have taken that Province from him, and even *Finland*, if possible, having made

* At that Time, when any one would embrace the *Russian Religion*, he was obliged to be re-baptized, which was done in a River; after which he was to detest his first Religion as *Heresy*, and obliged to spit every Time he heard it named.

made a Beginning in *Esthonia*, by taking *Wittenstein*, had Reason to fear that the *Swedes* would pass the *Tela*, and throw themselves into *Lettia*, of which they might have made an easy Conquest with any little Assistance from the *Russians*; for which Reason it was the King of *Poland*'s Business to make a Diversion, and find such Employment for them at home, that they might not be able to meddle with the Affairs of *Sweden*.

THERE was at this Time, in the House of a *Lithuanian* Lord, named *Adam Wisnowieski*, a young Man, well made, of about twenty-four Years of Age, who said he was that very *Demetrius*, Son of the Czar *John Basilowitz*, whom *Boris Gudenow* had sent to assassinate in the Castle of *Uglitz*; and pretended, that when the Assassin came to take away his Life, another Boy of the same Age had been put in his Place, which disappointed the barbarous Intention of *Boris*; to confirm this, he shewed a Cross of Gold, enriched with Diamonds, which had been hanged about his Neck when he was baptized *. *Wisnowieski* was so well persuaded of the Truth of this, that he immediately furnished him with an Equipage, and treated him with all the Respect that was due to the legitimate Heir of so great an Empire. An Adventure of this Kind could not be long concealed, the Re-

The first Impostor DEMETRIUS.

I 3

port

* *The Russians, at the Time of Baptism, hang a Cross about the Child's Neck, made of Gold, Silver, or Lead, according to the Ability of the Parents, which it is obliged religiously to preserve all its Life; for when any one dies without this Mark of Christianity about them, they are deny'd Burial.*

port of it was spread every where, and soon came to the Ears of the Czar *Boris Gudenow*, who expressed much Uneasiness at it. If he had treated the Story at first as a Forgery, or had appeared unconcerned about it, perhaps *Demetrius* might soon have sunk into his primitive Obscurity; but he set a Price upon his Head, and had him demanded from the Court of *Poland*. Such Proceeding gave Weight to the Discourse of *Demetrius*, and it was said, that *Boris* would not have been so much afraid of him, if he had known him to have been an Impostor. Be that as it may, *Wisnowieski* thought him not safe in *Lithuania*, and so near the Frontiers of *Russia*, therefore sent him to *George Mnieski*, the Palatine, or Weyvode of *Sandomir*, who promised him all the Assistance in his Power to restore him to his Throne, upon Condition that he would tolerate the *Roman* Catholick Religion in *Russia*, as soon as he had establish'd himself thereon. *Demetrius* not only agreed to the Condition, but, being privately instructed, changed his Religion, and promised to marry the Palatine's Daughter. The Hopes of so advantageous an Alliance, and the Palatine's great Zeal for his Religion, made him engage the Credit of all his Friends in his Favour, and promised to interest the Republick in it, if there was Occasion.

WHETHER this *Demetrius* was the very Person he pretended to be, or an Impostor, has been made a Doubt by some * Writers; those who believe the latter, say, that he was

a

* Vide Olearius, Lib. III.

a *Muscovite* Monk, named *Griska Utropoja*, born at *Jeroslaw*, of a noble House, but not very rich, and had been thrust into the Monastery on Account of his Extravagance and Debaucheries. He was a very handsome Person, and had much Wit, which Qualities an old Monk, of the same Monastery, made his Advantage of, by bringing this Impostor out of his Recluse in order to set him on the Throne of *Russia*. The better to carry on his Design he sent him into *Lithuania*, where he was entertained by a great Lord, *Adam Wisnowieski*, before-mentioned, into whose Favour he very shortly insinuated himself by his Ingenuity and constant Services; but one Day, his Master being angry with him, called him *Bledinfin*, or Son of a Whore, and struck him; *Griska*, taking Advantage of this Disgrace, fell a weeping, and told his Master, that if he knew who he was, he would not call him Son of a Whore, nor treat him in such a Manner. The Curiosity of the *Polish* Lord made him press *Griska* to tell him who he was. The Impostor made Answer, that he was the legitimate Son of the Czar *John Basilowitz* the Great; that *Boris Gudenow*, in the Reign of the late Czar *Theodore*, his Brother, would have murdered him; but the Misfortune fell upon a Priest's Son very like him, whom his Friends had substituted in his Place, while he was convey'd away; And hereupon shewed him the rich Cross, which, as he said, was hung about his Neck at his Baptism; adding, that the Fear of falling into the Hands of *Boris Gudenow* had kept him from discovering himself till that

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Instant. Then he cast himself at his Lord's Feet, and intreated his Protection; enlivening his Relation with so many Circumstances, and his Actions with so much Shew of Sincerity, that his Master could not but give Credit to it, and thereupon immediately supply'd him with Cloaths, Horses, and an Attendance suitable to his supposed Birth; but not thinking him safe in his House, sent him into *Poland*, where he was received, as before related, by the Palatine of *Sandomir*.

SOME Authors, who have treated all this Story as a Fable, say, they cannot see with what Design, or to what Advantage, this old Monk, whose Name is never mentioned, should put *Griska* upon acting this Part; besides, there are other Authors contemporary with him, who assure us, that they had seen *Griska Utropoja* in his Cloyster, from whence he never went out till the Knez *Zuski*, who had an Interest in giving an Air of Truth to this Invention, had brought him to *Moscow*, and that he disappeared from thence, and it was never known afterwards what became of him.

BE this as it may, the Republick of *Poland* entered strongly into the Interests of *Demetrius*; the Proofs that he brought of his Birth were examined in the *Diet*; he was acknowledged as the legitimate Heir of the Crown of *Russia*; and they raised a considerable Army to set him on the Throne of his Ancestors. The *Russians* always cherish and respect the Blood of their Princes, so that this Report was no sooner spread in *Russia*, but all the Towns declared for him, and opened

opened their Gates to him. Several Officers and Boyars joined him, and the Army commanded by *Demetrius* in Person, and the *Polish* General *Zapotski*, entered *Russia* by the *Ukrain*, because the *Cossacks* had declared in his Favour.

THESE *Cossacks* inhabit the *Ukrain*, and are, COSSACKS, their Original. perhaps, the only People who bear a Name different from their Country; but this was given them to express their principal Quality, which is the *Agility* with which they make their IncurSIONS into the Territories of their Enemies: For *Cossacks* and *Runners* signify the same. This People is formed of *Polish*, *Russian*, and *Tartarian* Volunteers. The Liberty that they enjoyed, the Riches they had amassed, and the Reputation that the first of them had acquired for Bravery, drew to them a still greater Number of Vagabonds, so that they found themselves strong enough to make Expeditions on the *Black-Sea*, and to go and raise Contributions as far as the Suburbs of *Constantinople*, and the City of *Trebisonde* in *Asia*. *Poland* believing that she could obtain great Advantages from the Service of this warlike People, in opposing the frequent IncurSIONS of the *Tartars*, took them under her Protection, in a Diet held in the Year 1562, ordering the Republick to pay them a certain annual Subsidy. King *Stephen Battori* judged it proper to settle them in *Ukrania*, where he gave them, for their Capital, the City of *Trethimiroff*, which is upon the *Borysthenes*, about eleven Leagues below *Kiow*.

THE *Cossacks*, being respected by the *Tartars*, their wandering Neighbours, and living

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

peaceably in this fine Province, began to apply themselves to Labour, and, in a little Time, the *Ukrain* was one of the richest Provinces of *Poland*; in the Time we are speaking of, it might pass for a large Kingdom, if we consider its Extent, the great Number of well-built Towns they had raised on a sudden, or the Richness of the Territory, being a Country so plentifully stored, and so fertile, that the *Polanders* called it, *The Land flowing with Milk and Honey*. The chief Persons of *Poland* had fine Estates there, from which they drew considerable Revenues. The *Cossacks* had their own General, and their Army acted separately, as that of an Ally or Confederate, and not as dependent on the Crown of *Poland*. They have been able to raise two or three hundred thousand Men; and the History of *Poland* observes, that the Republick would have been invincible, if they had kept Possession of this fine Country, and had not broke with the *Cossacks*, whose Bravery was indisputable; they endured all the Inconveniences of War, at all Seasons, without accounting them Hardships; they were good Countrymen, and intrepid Soldiers, only a little too cruel. But the *Polish* Nobility having endeavoured to usurp upon the Liberty of this brave People, and going about to treat some of them in the same arbitrary Manner with which they use their own miserable Vassals, the generous *Cossacks* revolted more than once, and when they took Part in this Expedition of *Demetrius*, it was but a little after their second Revolt had been appeased

peased by the tragical Death of their General *Nelevasko*. The rest of their History, the Manner how this formidable People has been almost entirely destroyed, and how the fine Country of the *Ukrain* is become little better than a wild Defart, is not our Subject at present: But we thought it not improper to give an Idea of the *Cossacks*, such as they were at that Time, to shew of what Importance their Junction was to the Army which *Poland* had then set on Foot, to establish *Demetrius* on the *Czarian* Throne.

THE Czar *Boris*, informed of the Rout that the *Polish* Army had taken, and that *Demetrius* had already subdued several Towns, among others *Putivl*, *Rylsk*, *Croomy*, and that he advanced towards the Province of *Resan*, he sent a Body of Troops against him, that he thought capable of stopping his Progress. While this Army used all Means to defeat so powerful an Enemy, he fell into a deep Melancholy, a Sort of Despair seemed to mix itself in all his Actions, and the Remembrance of the Crimes by which he had paved his Way to the Throne, threw him into a Condition, such as would have excited Compassion in his very Enemies. Every one seemed to be *Demetrius*, he could confide in no body: All his fine Parts gave Way to a most extravagant Timidity, that would not suffer him to take a Moment's Repose, alarmed at every Noise, and terrified by every Object. Nevertheless he forgot nothing that might stop the Progress of his Enemy; his Army was as numerous as possible, considering

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

ing the * deplorable Condition of *Russia* at that Time ; and he joined to it an Expedient likely enough to have a good Effect among so superstitious a People ; which was a Mandate of the Patriarch, to anathematize all who took the Part of *Demetrius*, whom he treated as a Cheat, an Impostor, and Magician.

IN the mean Time the *Russian* Army, commanded by *John Gudenow*, a Relation of the Czar, by *Mierisloff* and *Zuski*, stopp'd the Rapidity of *Demetrius's* Conquests, and when the People saw the Prince on the Throne in a Posture of making Head against this New-comer, they took fresh Courage, either thro' Fear of Chastisement, if not having Success, they should be convicted of Infidelity ; or thro' the natural Hatred that they bore to the *Polanders*.

THE Palatine of *Sendomir* thought, that it would be sufficient to enter into the *Russian* Territories, to see the whole Country taking the Part of him, whom he was for setting on the Throne, and that as soon as he approached the Army of *Boris*, among whom he had dispersed his Manifesto's, the Soldiers and Officers would desert by whole Regiments ;
but

* During the two Years that preceded the Invasion of *Demetrius*, *Russia* had been exposed to a Famine, the most dreadful that ever had been known in that Empire. Mothers devoured their own Children, or fed upon their dead Carcasses when killed with Hunger. Corn that was sold before for twelve Pence a Measure, was then worth twenty Crowns ; so that there was scarce any Thing to be purchased but human Flesh. Husbands sold their Wives, Parents their Children, and, in a Word, all the People were reduced to the utmost Wretchedness and Misery.

but he found the contrary, unhappily for the Interests of *Demetrius*; for the *Russians* received him with much Firmness, and in a little Time his small Army was attacked on all Sides, defeated, and put to Flight; so that gathering together what remained of it, he retired to *Putivl*, and from thence returned to *Poland*. *Demetrius* continued at *Rylsk*, supported only by his *Cossacks*, and his own Courage, till the Monks, whom he had brought out of *Poland* forsook him, except two Jesuits, whom the Order and the Pope himself had placed there, to have an Eye upon all the Proceedings in this Enterprize, wherein the Society and the Holy See had so strong an Interest.

At length *Rylsk*, which was near being a Witness of the total Ruin of this rash Enterprize, saw all on a sudden a Change of Fortune. The Army of *Boris* judging with Reason, that Time ought not to be given to the Vanquished to rally and repair their Losses, marched towards *Rylsk*, in Hopes of destroying the little Body of Troops which had taken Shelter in that Place; they attacked them in the Beginning of *March*; the Action was begun by the Horse, that of the *Russians* was bore down, and had scarce lost a thousand Men and some Prisoners, but they took to Flight, leaving the Infantry to the Discretion of the *Cossacks* and *Poles*, who made, at first, a great Slaughter among them; but *Demetrius*, willing to gain the Good-will of the Soldiers, cried out aloud to give them Quarter; he gained a considerable Booty; and this Victory was followed by the Surren-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Surrender of many Towns and Castles, among others, by that of *Bielgorod* on the *Donetz*, where *Demetrius* found many Cannon, and much Ammunition. He then took his Rout towards *Resan*; *Livna* and *Galicz* upon the *Szefna* surrendered to him; but that did not hinder the *Russian* Army from going to besiege *Croomy* upon the *Occa*, into which a Party of *Demetrius's* Forces had thrown themselves.

ALTHOUGH Victory had declared for him, when he had the least Reason to hope for it, yet he durst not attempt a second Action to succour this Fortrefs, because if he should have had any ill Success, he saw no Means of being relieved. He contented himself to encourage the Besieged by large Promises, and on the other Side endeavoured to intimidate the Besiegers, by Reports that he caused to be spread of the Approach of a formidable Army.

THE Czar *Boris* could not bear up against the Chagrin that this Defeat of his Army near *Rylsk* gave him. He recalled his Generals *Mierisloff* and *Zuski*, to be informed by themselves of the Condition of Affairs; and giving Audience to the Ambassadors of the Kings of *Sweden* and *Denmark*, who, as Enemies of *Poland*, had sent to offer their Alliance and Succours against King *Sigismund*, he fell into so violent a Passion in speaking against this last Prince, that he was on a sudden seized with * a Bleeding at the Nose that could not be stopp'd, so that he died in a few Days after, at the End of *April* 1605, after a Reign of seven Years.

BORIS GUDE-
NOW dies.

THIS

* Several Authors say he ended his Days by Poison.

THIS Prince was born for great Designs, and had formed that of revenging *Russia* for the Losses brought upon her by King *Stephen Battori*, when Death prevented the Execution of it. The Holy See, and especially the Jesuits, could not digest the Affront put upon them by *John Basilowitz*, who had made Dupes of them, in the Person of *Possevin*; and it was not doubted, but they had spirited up this *Demetrius*, against whom the fertile Genius of *Boris* could find no Expedient to secure himself.

IMMEDIATELY after his Death he was interred, without any Ceremony, in the Church of St. *Michael*, near the other Czars: And the Senate, the Boyars, and Ministers, raised to the Throne his Son *Theodore Borissowitz*, conjointly with his Mother; which shewed they did not believe *Demetrius* to be what he pretended; for if so, they might have done him Justice without apprehending any ill Consequences from it; for the Son of *Boris* was of an Age and Character not to be feared; he was but fifteen Years old, was given up to his Pleasures, and had been educated amidst a Crowd of Flatterers, who sought only how to gain his Favour by soothing his Passions: He had something in his Behaviour and Manners very brutish and insolent, leaning greatly towards Tyranny, and which promised nothing that was good. Therefore it is a strong Presumption, that the chief Part of the Nation looked upon *Demetrius* as an Impostor, by the Boyars thus preferring *Theodore* to him, altho' one seemed to have as much Moderation, as the other had Brutality,

THEODORE
BORISSO-
WITZ made
CZAR.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

lity, in his Composition, and was endowed with all those Talents and Virtues which form a great Prince. Be this as it may, the Consequence shew'd, that every one had not the same Sentiments with the Boyars, or that Men are capable of the most execrable Perfidy when they would satisfy their Ambition or Revenge.

DEMETRIUS, who rely'd entirely on the Valour and good Conduct of General *Zapotski*, charged him with the Care of succouring *Croomy*, the Garison of which was reduced to the last Extremity. The Thing was difficult enough, for *Zapotski* could not employ but eight or ten thousand Men in this Service, and the Army of the Besiegers consisted of an hundred thousand; he therefore contrived to make Cunning supply the Place of those Forces he wanted. He knew there was a Misunderstanding between the *Russian* Generals, and resolved to make his Advantage of it: He ordered a Man to advance towards the Town, who was to pretend a Desire of getting into it, but was to take a Rout, by which he was sure of falling into the Hands of the Besiegers; this Man was charged with a Letter to the Besieged, exhorting them to defend themselves with Vigour, because an Army of fifty thousand *Polanders* was coming to their Succour. The Spy was taken, and a Report was immediately spread through the *Russian* Camp, that an Army of an hundred thousand *Polanders* and *Cossacks* was approaching to force them to raise the Siege; *Zapotski*, to confirm this false Report, caused a great Number of all Sorts of People to be got together,

gether, Suttlers, Servants, and Peasants, whom he mounted on Horseback, and ordered to be drawn out in a long Line on an Eminence, where they might be seen by the *Russians*. The *Russian* General, *John Gudenow*, judged it would be best to go and attack *Zapotski*, before he could be joined by this fresh Supply; but *Peter Busmanoff*, who was dissatisfied with having any other than himself employed in this Expedition, was of a contrary Opinion; and while these two Generals disputed the Matter, the last, on a sudden, took off the Mask, and cry'd with a loud Voice, at the Head of the Troops he commanded, *That Demetrius was the only lawful Heir to the Crown, and required those who had the Love of their Country at Heart to follow him*. Whereupon he immediately went over to *Zapotski*, with a great Part of his Troops, and above five hundred Persons of Distinction. These all went to *Putivl*, where they found *Demetrius*, who received them with so much Affability, that it compleated the Attachment they had to his Person. *Gudenow*, abandoned by his Army, took to Flight, with a small Number, but was pursued and taken: And when he was brought before *Demetrius*, refusing to prostrate himself, he was committed to Prison. At this Time was taken all the Baggage, all the Artillery, and all the Ammunition of the *Russian* Army, with seventy Pieces of Cannon, among which were some of a most extraordinary Size.

The Czar
THEODORE
arrested.

THIS Revolution that happened in the Army, was soon known at Court, where it occasioned a great Consternation; every one

K

imme-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

immediately determined to follow that Path which his Interest pointed out to him, and nothing was heard but the Name of *Demetrius* thro' the whole City of *Moscow*. He set out himself for this Capital, after having wrote to the Nobility and the People to engage them to shake off the Yoke of an Usurper, assuring them of his Clemency, if they came immediately over to their Duty, as the Army had done, by acknowledging their lawful Sovereign. These Letters produced the Effect that was expected from them; the People ran to the Castle, and having made themselves Masters of it, flung both the *Czarina* and her Son *Theodore Borissowitz* into Prison.

And dies.

As soon as *Demetrius* heard this, he hastened his March, and arrived at *Moscow* on the 16th of *June*. The Czar *Theodore* and his Mother were both dead; it is said, that this generous Princess, rather than see herself exposed to the Contempt and Insolence of the Victor, chose to put an End to her Days, and that after having taken Poison herself, she encouraged her Son and Daughter to follow her Example. The Czar and his Mother died immediately; but there was Time enough to save the Princess, by giving her an Antidote. Others have said, that *Demetrius* sent a *Diack* with Orders to strangle the Mother and Son, and then gave out that they had poisoned themselves.

DEMETRIUS
proclaimed
Czar.

BE this as it may, *Demetrius*, upon his Entry, was proclaimed Emperor of the *Russians*, Czar of *Moscow*, *Novogorod*, &c. and King of *Astracan* and *Casan*. A Detachment of *Polish* Horse began the Procession, having
their

their Kettle-Drums and Trumpets at their Head; after them came fifty Musqueteers, in the Middle of which was *Demetrius's* Coach drawn by six Horses, and follow'd by several other Horses richly caparison'd; next came the Clergy with their Banners, preceding the Bishops who carried the Images of the Virgin *Mary* and *St. Nicholas*, the Patron of *Russia*; after these came four Archbishops, who preceded the Patriarch. At some Distance came *Demetrius*, mounted on a fine white Horse, and surrounded by a great Number of the great Men of the Empire. This Company conducted him to the Church of *Our Lady*, from whence, after he had paid his Devotion, the same Company attended him to that of *St. Michael*, where are the Tombs of the Czars, and where was interred *John Basilowitz*, whose Son he was said to be; but being informed that *Boris* was also interred in the same Place, he ordered his Body to be transported to a Chapel without the Town; and passing afterwards by his Palace, he turned his Head another Way, and commanded, that it should be pulled down to the Ground, because, he said, it had been built by Magick. *Demetrius* being then arrived at the Palace of the Czars, took the Reins of Empire, and laboured to established Peace both at home and abroad.

THE first Thing he did, was to name an Ambassador to go with his just Acknowledgments to the King, and the Republick of *Poland*. With this honourable Employment he invested *Athanasius Iwanowitz Rosloff*, High Treasurer, to whom he gave a Train

of three hundred Gentlemen. He received Homage from all the Lords of his Empire, and about seventy Families ally'd to that of the Czar *Boris*, or strongly in his Interest, were banished, according to the Custom in *Russia*, where the Crime of one Person commonly involves all his Relations and Friends. This Act of Justice, as it would have been thought in any other Prince, was much condemned in him; as it was observed in the first Days of this Reign, that *Demetrius* had shewn greater Confidence in the *Poles* than the *Russians*, it was said aloud that he would not have banished these Families, but to have enriched Strangers with their Spoils; which would draw others into the Country, who must likewise be rewarded at the Expence of those who should commit the least Fault. This was what gave Rise to a discontented Party, which every Day increased, and at the Head of which, the Knez *Theodore Basilowitz Zuski* had put himself. This Nobleman was greatly distinguished for his Bravery, and his Prudence had raised him to the first Posts in the Army and the Council; he was bold, enterprizing, always engaged in great Designs, vindictive to Excess, and ready to sacrifice every Thing to an Ambition that knew no Bounds.

*ZUSKI con-
demned to die.*

DEMETRIUS had notice of the Plot he had formed, and of the injurious Reports he spread every where concerning his Birth, treating him as one raised, on a sudden, out of the Dust, and whose chief Designs were to subdue the *Russians*, to exterminate the Nobles, and overturn the Religion of their Country.

Country. The Czar ordered him to be taken into Custody, he was try'd, and condemned to Death ; and great Preparations were made for his Execution ; it was thought that this Example was to be made to restrain others from committing the like Offences, and keep the People to their Duty ; but this Shew was only made, that the Czar's Clemency towards the Criminal might be the more conspicuous : He was brought to the Scaffold, was upon his Knees, and waited only for the Stroke of the Executioner, whose Arm was already lifted up, when the Czar's Pardon was brought him. And *Demetrius* afterwards received him into his most intimate Confidence : We shall soon see how fatal this Moderation was to him.

DEMETRIUS judged very rightly, that *Zuski* was not the only Person whose Friendship might be useful to him ; therefore he forgot nothing that he thought might conciliate the Affections of the People to him. He had found immense Sums, that the Avarice of *Boris* had amassed together in the Treasury, with these he caused a new Species of Coin to be struck, which was dispersed among the Publick, and now Money was seen to circulate in a Manner that had been a long Time unknown in *Russia*. He hastened the Ceremony of his Coronation, which had been fixed for the first Day of the Year, that is, the first of *September* ; but it was now ordered to be performed at the End of *July*, after he had brought to Court the *Czarina*, Widow of *John Basilowitz*, whom he called his Mother, and whom the Czar *Boris* had confined in a Convent,

*The CZARINA
Widow of
JOHN BASI-
LOWITZ sent
for to Court.*

Convent, in one of the extreme Parts of the Empire.

And how received.

DEMETRIUS went several Wersts out of *Moscow* to meet her, and, to give the greater and more publick Marks of his Respect, as soon as he perceived the Coach she was in at a Distance, he alighted himself, and went up to her on Foot, embracing her with all imaginable Transports of Joy and Affection: This Meeting was of great Weight to put an End to the Doubts which many had concerning his Birth, and seemed to satisfy every one, that he was the Person he pretended to be; those who examined the most curiously into all his involuntary Motions, could find nothing in them but what seemed to flow from the Transports of an inexpressible Joy at seeing a Mother, to whose Pains and Care he was doubly indebted for his Life. On the other Hand, there were seen in the Princess all the Marks of Tendernefs and Affection, which shew'd themselves in her Embraces, her Tears, her Transports of Joy, in such a Manner, that every one was persuaded it could be only Nature that thus worked in her, knowing it must be very difficult to counterfeit such a Part so perfectly, as to blind the Eyes of the most clear-sighted, and deceive them, who had an Interest in not being made her Dupes. But this Czarina was a Woman, and what cannot that Sex do when they have a Mind to deceive? In acknowledging *Demetrius*, she re-ascended that eminent Degree of Honour from whence the Death of *John Basilowitz* had precipitately cast her down; and she must have had but
little

little Ambition, if so high a Rank, and so much Power, could have no Charms for her, especially as she was redeemed from a wretched Banishment to be Mistress of her Fate; and what perhaps might have still more Power with one of her Sex, by this feign'd Acknowledgment, she would be in a Condition to revenge herself on the Family of *Boris*, and all its Adherents. Needed there any Thing more to make her act this Part, supposing she was fully persuaded of the Death of her Son? But if she had been made to believe, that a faithful Hand had saved him, as *Demetrius* gave out, unknown to this Mother, how easily might her Tendernefs have been deceived, if the Secret was only then revealed to her; she might have really believed, that it was her Son she then saw, for, if this was an Impostor, he had two Defects in Nature in common with the other, *viz.* one Arm shorter than the other, and a Wen in his Face, not to mention the great Resemblance in other Respects between them, and the Conformity of their Ages. These two Defects might easily have been found in two Men; but that they should meet in the same Person, since it was impossible they could be counterfeited, seemed a Prodigy, supposing this to be without Contradiction.

DEMETRIUS followed the Coach of this tender Mother to the Palace on Foot, and bare-headed, surrounded by all the Lords of his Retinue, in the same respectful Manner. He was crowned two Days after, with a Pomp and Magnificence beyond any Thing that had been used on the same Occasions by

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

his Predecessors. The Czarina, after the Ceremony, retired with the Ladies of her Court to the Monastery of *Tebude*, which was a Place of Retreat for young Ladies and Widows of the first Quality. The Czar made *Philaret*, or *Theodore Romanow*, Archbishop of *Rostow*, and conferred Favours on others of his supposed Relations.

THE Ambassador that *Demetrius* had sent to King *Sigismund* had Orders, after he had paid his Master's sincerest Acknowledgments to that Prince, and the Republick of *Poland*, to propose a Treaty of the strictest Alliance, and especially to make War upon the *Turks*, and drive them not only from the Frontiers of *Poland*, and out of all *Hungary*, but to take from them the *Holy Land*, which he saw with Grief in the Hands of those Infidels. And lastly, the Ambassador was to desire *Sigismund's* Leave, for the Czar to marry the Daughter of the Palatine of *Sendomir*, his generous Benefactor.

SIGISMUND answered the Ambassador, that he was very sensible of the Acknowledgments of the Czar his Master; that he commended his Zeal for the Christian Religion against the *Turks*; that he should accept, very willingly, his Alliance; but that he must first deliberate on that with the Republick; that as to the Marriage of the Czar with the Daughter of the Palatine of *Sendomir*, he not only consented to it, but should be greatly rejoiced at it.

WHEREUPON the Ambassador espoused this Princess, whose Name was *Anna Maria Mniefski*, in the Name of the Czar his Master.

The

The Bishop of *Cracovia* performed the Ceremony of the Espousals. The Ambassador having brought the Lady Presents to the Value of above two hundred thousand Roubles, she appeared at Court with a Magnificence fuitable to the Rank this Marriage had raised her to; the King gave a very grand Entertainment on the Occasion, at which the Ambassador of *Persia* was present, who had arrived a little before in *Poland*.

WHILE this passed, *Demetrius* was running on his Ruin at home. The Conspiracy of *Zuski*, and what had given Rise to it, ought to have made him more circumspect, and cautious in managing the *Russian* Nobility; but giving himself up entirely to two Jesuits, that he had in his Court, who were the Reverend Fathers *Nicolas Cnermiow*, and *Andrew Lowitz*, he did nothing without their Advice, and these consulted only a precipitate and imprudent Zeal. The first delivered the Czar's Eulogium on the Day of his Coronation, and a few Days after *Demetrius* granted to these Reverend Fathers a large Convent near the Royal Palace, where they had Liberty to exercise the *Roman Catholick* Religion. This Concession very much exasperated the Minds of the People, who were Enemies to all Religions but that of the *Greek Church*; and the Confidence which the Czar placed in the *Polanders* alone, and particularly in these two Jesuits, lost him the Affections of the great Men, who in *Russia* have always a Share in the Management of Affairs, and the Disposal of Offices, which are very lucrative, and in great Numbers.

Besides

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Besides these, all the other Actions of *Demetrius* were carefully scanned; for as a wise * Author says, the Lives of great Men are exposed to the Censure of the Publick in Proportion to their Elevation. Every one easily perceived, that *Demetrius* did not follow the established Customs among the *Russians*, in the Performance of his religious Duties, and especially not using to bathe himself, which among them is looked upon as very unclean. These Things observed, made them begin to doubt of his Birth; and his Marriage with a *Roman Catholick* compleated the ill Opinion they had of him.

ZUSKI, not being able to conquer the Shame and Uneasiness he was under for being indebted for his Life to a Man whom he thought an Impostor, sought all Ways how he might find an Excuse for the Inclination he had to repay with Ingratitude, that great Obligation which *Demetrius* had laid upon him; and at length the fine Pretext of *Love of his Country*, which has in all Ages been the Cloak for a thousand Vices, and ambitious Designs, came to the Assistance of his scrupulous Conscience, and taught him the Way to be innocently criminal in his own Judgment. He would say, that the Love of one's Country, and our Obligations to her, ought to get the better of all other Considerations; and therefore, as the Malecontents were without a Chief, for the Sake of his dear Country, he voluntarily put himself at their Head, but however deferr'd the Vengeance of the Nation till the Arrival of the Lady, whom the Czar had chosen for his Bride.

* *Salust. in Bello Catil.*

THE Murmurings of the Malecontents were not kept so secret, but that they oftentimes reached the Ear of the Czar, who, at length, began to be apprehensive of them; and understanding that they complained, above all Things, of his not placing any Confidence in his own Subjects, but that he went continually surrounded by a Guard wholly composed of Foreigners, *Germans*, and *Polanders*; he came to the imprudent Resolution of disbanding this Guard, and forming another of *Russians*. But soon finding, that this Complaisance was not sufficient to appease the exasperated Minds of the People, he repented too late of having delivered himself up into the Hands of his Enemies, and to repair this Error, fell into that of adding to his new Body of Guards, some Companies of *Livonians*, *Germans*, *French*, *English*, and *Scotch*.

WHILE DEMETRIUS took these false Steps, *Zuski* still increased his Party, into which he found no Difficulty to bring the Patriarch, and the greatest Part of the Clergy, by shewing them the Danger their Religion was in, upon the Ruins of which *Demetrius* was determined to establish that of the *Romish* Church.

THE future Czarina was set out from *Cracovia* in the Beginning of the Month of *January*; but that City being three hundred *Polish* Leagues from *Moscow*, and the Train and Equipage of the Princess being very numerous, she did not arrive till towards the End of *April*. Besides her Father, her Brother-in-Law, with their Domesticks, and those
of

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

of the *Russian* Ambassador, a Croud of the *Polish* Nobility took this Opportunity to see the Country; and a Multitude of Traders, *German*, *Italian* and *French*, had put themselves into the Princess's Train, that they might safely transport their valuable Cargoes into *Russia*, of which they expected to make very great Profit.

THIS Princess was received in a Manner so splendid that there never had been an Example of any thing like it in that Country. *Peter Busmanoff*, to whom the Czar had great Obligations, as before mentioned, had in Charge the Care of this Solemnity. He met her with a most superb Retinue of *Russian* and *Polish* Nobility, and conducted her thro' the Acclamations of vast Crouds of the People, accompany'd by the Noise of Cannons, and Sounds of various Sorts of musical Instruments, first to the Palace, and from thence to the Convent of *Tebude*, where the Czarina Dowager was, and where she was to continue till every thing was ready for her Nuptials. She remained there but four Days; on the fifth the Patriarch performed the Ceremony of blessing the Marriage. The Church was sumptuously adorned, on the Occasion, with a Hanging of Crimson Damask, laced and fringed with Gold. The Czar had the Imperial Crown on his Head, the Sceptre in one Hand, and the Globe in the other; the Czarina, being placed by his Side, was crowned at the same Time, after which the new married Couple went to the Palace, with a Court as shining as it was numerous, where the Day and Night passed in such Diversions

as

as are usual on the like Occasions. It is no uncommon Thing for Disorder to slip into Feasts of this Kind, and it could hardly be expected to be otherwise at this, considering the Disposition of the People's Minds at the Time. *Alexander Gofenski*, whom the King of *Poland* had sent to the Czar in Quality of Ambassador, with very considerable Presents, arrived at *Moscow* a little before the Czarina. The Superscription of his Letters was found to be faulty, in that the King of *Poland* gave not the Title of *Emperor* to *Demetrius*, which had been used to be given to the Czars. The *Russians* attributed this Omission to the Contempt that the King of *Poland* had for their Monarch; the Ambassador endeavoured to excuse the Mistake, but very sharp Expressions passed on each Side, which exasperated both Nations. *Demetrius* refused to accept the Letters in publick, but knowing how much he stood in need of the Support of *Poland*, he dissembled the Matter in private. This Quarrel between the two Nations was renewed at the Feast of the Czar's Nuptials. The Ambassador *Gofenski* declared, that he would not assist at it, unless he was placed at the Czar's Table with the same Distinction that had been shewn to the *Russian* Ambassador, on an Occasion of the like Kind at *Cracovia*. The Boyars strongly opposed this; but *Demetrius*, without having any Regard to their Arguments, allowed the Ambassador what he demanded. The *Polanders* rallied the *Russians* hereon, and these could not brook it, thinking they were treated as a conquered Nation and Slaves to the *Poles*.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

THE Czarina was to give a magnificent Entertainment the *Sunday* following to all the Nobility of her Court, as well *Russians* as Foreigners. The Conspirators chose the Eve of this Feast for the Execution of their Enterprize. *Demetrius* had Notice of it from many Places, but intrepid in Times of Danger, and accustomed to Reports of this Sort, spread every Day, he did not so much as deign to double his usual Guard, how much soever he was requested to do so by his most intimate Favourites. Nevertheless, altho' he took so little Care of his own Preservation, yet he advertised the *Poles* to be upon their Guard, for he thought they were the Object of the Hatred of the People, whom he could not think capable of drawing the Sword against himself.

ON *Saturday*, at Six of the Clock in the Morning, a Company of the Conspirators, as well Noblemen as Plebeians, seized on the Palace, where they found but few Guards, and those in no Condition to defend it. They exhorted one another to be resolute in exterminating the *Poles*. *Peter Busmanoff*, awaked by the Tumult, ran almost naked to endeavour to appease it; but was the first Victim to the Fury of the People: All they met, that look'd like *Polanders*, or belonged to such, immediately fell beneath their Blows. *Zuski*, armed with a Sabre in one Hand, and a Cross in the other, ran about every where to animate the People to take Vengeance; and, lastly, to bring those out of their Beds who were prevented, by Sleep, from knowing what passed, he ordered the great Alarum Bell
to

to be rung, and spread a Report thro' every Corner of the Town, that the *Polanders* had taken up Arms to massacre all the *Russians*. At the Sound of this dismal Bell every one got up and ran out of his House; but when they heard the frightful Report, that immediately passed thro' every Mouth, each armed himself, designing to sell his Life as dear as possible.

DEMETRIUS arose himself, and asking what was the Matter, was answered by one of the Guards, who was in the Plot, that it was a Fire; but the Cries of the Dying, and of those who fled for Shelter, soon taught him the true Cause of the Uproar; whereupon he armed himself with a Cimeter, and would have gone out of his Chamber, but was prevented, upon which he jump'd out of the Window, and when he would have got up, he found he had put his Thigh-Bone out; so he was taken, and *Zuski* ordered him to be conducted into the great Hall of Audience, and kept there under a strong Guard, while the Conspirators continued to slaughter all the *Polanders* they could meet: And several *Russians* shared the same Fate, being in *Polish* Dresses. All their Riches, and those of the Merchants who had followed the Czarina, became the Prey of the Populace.

DEMETRIUS was exposed to the Insults of those who were to guard him: And a Boyar reproaching him, with being a Traitor and an Impostor, he cleft him asunder with his Cimeter; so boldly did he maintain his high Spirit, even when overwhelmed by so many calamitous Circumstances. At length *Zuski*

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

and his Adherents brought into his Presence the old Czarina, Dowager of *John Basilowitz*, whom he had treated as his Mother, and obliging this Princess to swear by the Cross, they demanded of her whether this *Demetrius* was her real Son or no? Whereupon, shedding a Torrent of Tears, “ she owned it was
 “ but too true, that her Son *Demetrius* had
 “ been assassinated by Order of *Boris*, and if
 “ she had acknowledged this Man for her Son,
 “ in that she had but followed the Example of
 “ all the People who had declared for him;
 “ besides indulging the Satisfaction it would
 “ give her, to see the Blood of her dear
 “ Child revenged upon that of *Boris* and his
 “ Adherents.”

DEMETRIUS
 killed.

As soon as the People had this Testimony of his being an Impostor, they fell upon *Demetrius*, and covered his Body with a thousand Wounds at once. Others say, that the Czarina Dowager had made the foregoing Declaration, not in his Presence, but, that being told of it, *Demetrius* desired that he might confront her; but that *Zuski*, without deigning to give him an Answer, drew out a Pistol, and shot him thro’ the Head.

THE *Polish* Ambassador was secured, with the Palatine of *Sendomir*, his Son-in-law, and the young Czarina his Daughter. This Princess, who is very much praised for her Beauty, in a Moment saw herself despoiled of all her Riches, and the fine Jewels that *Demetrius* had presented her with; and, being covered with a very mean Garment, was long kept in Suspence what her own Fate was to be, hearing all round her nothing but the Cries and
 Groans

Groans of her slaughtered Countrymen; but, at last, she was shut up in a Convent.

THE mangled Corpse of the unfortunate *Demetrius* was dragged thro' the Streets, to an open Place before the Castle, where, with the Body of *Busmanoff*, it was left exposed for three Days, and then buried.

THE Boyars and Senators met immediately to settle the Government, and after some Debate, they all united in giving the Crown to the Knez *Theodore Basilowitz Zuski*, to whom the Nation owed its Deliverance.

* STRAHLENBERG gives the following Account of this Election. " The false *Demetrius* being dead, and his Adherents deprived of all Power, the Senators called all the chief Families and ancient Nobility to *Moscow* to proceed to an Election. When this Assembly came to vote, the Majority fell upon *Basilus Zuski* and Prince *John Galliczin*; but both having equal Votes, the Assembly desired these two Princes to retire, and to give them Time to consider.

" WHEN they were retired, Prince *Worotinski* made a Speech to the Assembly, representing to them the Necessity of considering some Circumstances in so weighty an Affair: For, I. They ought to be cautious of choosing one of a Family that had many Relations and Adherents in the Country, which afterwards might be prejudicial to others. II. That it was necessary to prescribe certain Conditions to him who should

L

" be

* *Histori-Geograph. Description of the N. and E. Parts of Europe and Asia.* Pages 208, 209.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

“ be chosen, *viz.* (1.) If he had been at Variance with any Person before, that every thing should be forgotten and laid aside. (2.) That he should make no Pretensions to any Money or Estates of any Person whomsoever, nor commence Suit against any one, on that Account; but should renounce all Demands whatsoever, in order to avoid the Exercise of unlawful Power, or the Occasion of new Troubles in the Empire. (3.) That no new Laws should be made, or old ones altered; nor no Taxes or Contribution imposed upon the Publick, without the Knowledge and Consent of the Senate.

“ ALL this the Convention thought right and just, and made no Scruple to consent thereunto. At last, he represented, that those who had given their Votes to Prince *Galliczin*, as an honest and prudent Man, had done well; but that his Family being too great, and of too high a Reputation, he desired them to consider better, and give their Opinion of it. Upon this, one in the Assembly answered: *These Lords are of equal Merit, and we have already done what our Duty requires: But to decide this Matter, let us consult the People, to the End, that no body may have just Cause to blame us.* And with this the whole Assembly concurred. In the mean Time *Worotinski* sent a Person privately among the People to give out, that *Zuski* was chosen, and that as soon as the *Boyars* came out, they should proclaim him. When, therefore, the *Boyars* came into
“ the

“ the Church to consult the People, they
“ all cry’d out, God save the Czar, *Basilius*
“ *Zuski*. This so surprized the *Boyars*, that
“ they thought it a Miracle, for they knew
“ that none of their Body had left the As-
“ sembly.”

THUS was *Zuski* declared Czar ; he was soon after crowned, and received the Homage of all the People ; but to justify his own conduct, and render the Memory of *Demetrius* yet more odious, he published a long Manifesto, which was in Substance, “ That *Demetrius*, whom the divine Justice had punished for his Crimes, was an infamous Impostor, who would have passed for the Son of the Great *John Basilowitz*, altho’ he was no other than a vile Monk even of the Convent, that was within the Palace, into which he would never enter, lest he should be known by some of his quondam Brethren ; that his true Name was *Griska Utropoja*, who in his Youth had apply’d himself to Study, especially to that of History and Musick ; and that having made some Progress in the last Science, he exercised it the Patriarchal Church. That moreover he was a Sorcerer, who had raised himself to the Throne by the Art Magick ; that he was an Infidel, observing none of the Fasts, nor any of the Ceremonies used in the Greek Church ; and that he had promised the Pope of *Rome* to extirpate the Greek Christian Religion, as appears by Letters which the Pope had wrote, to him, wherein he exhorts him to keep stedfast to his Promise of building Churches and Col-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

“ leges for the Jesuits. That it appeared by
 “ other Letters, that this Usurper had re-
 “ solved to enrich Foreigners with the Spoils
 “ of the *Russians*, for he had promised the
 “ Province of *Smolensko* to his Father-in-Law,
 “ that of *Novogorod* to his Wife’s Brother-in-
 “ Law, and other Lands and Territories to
 “ the Sons of the Palatine of *Sandomir*; that
 “ he had not so unjustly put to Death so ma-
 “ ny of the *Russian* Nobles, but to enrich the
 “ *Polanders* with what he had taken from the
 “ first; that he placed no Confidence but in
 “ his Foreigners; that all Access to him
 “ was barr’d against the *Russians*, of what
 “ Quality soever, against whom the insolent
 “ Pages would shut the Doors in their Faces,
 “ tho’ the basest *Polanders* were suffered to
 “ go into the Imperial Palace at Pleasure;
 “ that he had carried his Expences and his
 “ Luxury beyond whatever could be ima-
 “ gined, even so far as to give Orders to
 “ build a Throne of Silver gilt with Gold,
 “ which was to be supported on each Side by
 “ six Lions of the same Materials; that he
 “ had, by his infamous Debauchery, pro-
 “ faned the Convent where his future Spouse
 “ had retired for some Days, and that after
 “ having made the unfortunate Daughter of
 “ the Czar *Boris* submit to his Pleasures, he
 “ had most filthily abused the Eyes and Ears
 “ of the religious Persons in that sacred Asy-
 “ lum of Chastity. That he had unworthily
 “ treated several Monks, even ordering some
 “ of them to be cudgel’d; that under feign’d
 “ Pretences he had plunder’d their Cloisters;
 “ that he had suffered his mercenary *Polanders*
 “ to

“ to plunder with Impunity the Merchants
“ who traded to *Astracan*; that Heaven en-
“ raged at so many Crimes had punished the
“ Nation that had suffered them, and, at
“ length, brought the infamous Impostor to
“ the Fate he deserved.”

THE new Czar not contenting himself with this, caused the mangled Corpse of the Impostor to be taken out of the Grave and burnt, and the Ashes to be thrown into the *Moscua*, that nothing of him might remain; and sent to *Uglitz* for the Body of young *Demetrius*, who had been assassinated by Order of *Boris*, to which he gave a pompous Burial in the Church of St. *Michael*; and the Patriarch having declared him a Martyr, he was enrolled among the Number of the Saints.

THE Czar *Zuski* employed his first Cares to remedy the Disorders, which are inseparable from Revolutions of the like Sort, and to re-establish the Tranquillity of the State. It is not to be doubted, but that the *Polanders* were incensed to the last Degree, at the Insult offered to their Ambassador, and the Palatine of *Sandomir*, who were both put under an Arrest. It is true, that this was said to be only as a Precaution, and to screen them from the Insolence of a licentious Mob; but who could excuse the Massacre of so many *Polish* Noblemen as had perished in this Combustion, and to whom they gave no Quarter? The Czar began with publishing a Sort of Apology; he afterwards sent an Ambassador to King *Sigismund*; and because there were found among the Papers of *Demetrius*, and

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

the Palatine of *Sendomir*, Letters which proved that the Invasion of *Demetrius* was not an Enterprize of the Jesuits and the Palatine only, * but that the King and the Republick had a Share in it, not only by giving their Consent and Approbation to it, but by lending real Succours; the Czar and the whole *Russian* Nation thought they had a Right to complain of such a Conduct, which was so great a Violation of the Treaties sworn to on both Sides. Besides all this, it appeared, that *Demetrius* had sent considerable Sums of Money into *Poland*, to satisfy those who had furnished him for the Expences of his Enterprize; the Czar required these to be restored, and that the King should disavow the whole Undertaking, or else he must be obliged to take Vengeance by the Way of Arms.

POLAND was torn to Pieces by a Civil War; the Confederation of *Rokoss*, at the Head of which were *Radzivil* and *Stadniski*, demanded the Reformation of an infinite Number of Abuses that were crept into the Government and the Ecclesiastical Affairs, and

* *The Historians of those Times, that will have it that Demetrius was a Monkish Impostor, say, that he first discovered his Design to the Jesuits of Poland, requiring their powerful Protection, and promising to establish their Order, and the Roman Catholick Religion in Russia. With these Hopes the Jesuits took Care to instruct him in every Thing that might give Success to so great an Enterprize, and found Means to interest Pope Clement VIII. in the Affair, who wrote to the King of Poland about it. The Palatine of Sendomir, gained by the Reverend Fathers, the Jesuits, and with the View of raising his Daughter to the Throne, contributed not only his Money, but the Assistance of his Friends, to carry on the Enterprize. Thus it may be said, that this whole Affair was the Work of Jesuitical Policy.*

and they were especially irritated against the Jesuits, by whom the King was beset, and whom they considered as the Authors of all their Misfortunes. On the other Hand, the States of *Sweden* assembled at *Upsal*, had declared King *Sigismund* and his Son both excluded from the Crown of *Sweden*, which they had set upon the Head of his Uncle *Charles*, Duke of *Sundermania*. This Prince, on his Side, was going to make good his Pretensions to the Province of *Livonia*, and some other Places, at the Expence of the Royal Treasure: Therefore it is not surprising, that the Czar's Ambassadors should find more Moderation and Temper at the Court of *Poland*, than they could have well expected. *Sigismund* excused all that had happened, by acknowledging that himself, and all *Poland*, had been the Dupes of *Demetrius*, whom they really thought to have been the true and lawful Heir of the Great *John Basilowitz*, and that therefore they had not violated the Treaties made with that Monarch, in aiding his Son, as they supposed him, to remount a Throne that another had usurped from him; that as to the Damages occasioned hereby, it was but just that they should be repaired on each Side, and that, in the mean Time, Conferences should be held on the Means of re-establishing the Peace.

CHARLES IX. King of *Sweden*, to whom the new Czar had also sent an Ambassador, being delighted with so fair a Prospect of drawing Succours from *Russia* to support his Pretensions against *Poland*, consented very readily to an Alliance between the two States.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Thus much for foreign Affairs. As to Matters at home, he had nothing to fear, but that the Suggestions of Strangers might be capable of drawing the People from their Duty, and of engaging them in new Designs, for which Reason the Czar caused all the *Poland*ers and *Germans* that were disperfed about his Dominions to be fought out, and having got together about fifteen hundred, whom the Soldiers or the Populace robb'd of all they had, he divided them into three Bodies, ordered them to be cloathed, and gave them wherewithal to defray the Expences of their Journey sparingly, and then sent three hundred of them back, by the Way of *Smolensko*, five hundred by *Livonia*, and the rest by *Poloczk*.

A second Impostor named
DEMETRIUS.

ALL these wise Precautions seemed to promise the *Russians* that Tranquillity which they had stood so much in need of, since their Misfortunes at the End of *John Basilowitz's* Reign, the Weakness of that of his Son *Theodore*, the Troubles of that of *Boris*, and the Calamities occasioned by the Revolution of *Demetrius*. But a fresh Impostor started up, with the Name of *Demetrius*, who, although he never appeared, caused more Mischief in *Russia*, than he had done whose Name he took, and of whom he was the fatal Spectre.

THE Knez *Gregory Schacopski* gave Rise to this Imposture. He was Keeper of the Seal to *Demetrius*, when he was killed; and seeing all in Combustion, and that they were seeking for every one who had been attached to that Prince, he sought his Safety by Flight.

He joined himself with two *Polish* Gentlemen dressed like *Russians*, and took with them his Way to *Putivl*, a Town always faithful to *Demetrius*, from the Time he had first brought it under his Submission. *Schacopski* took great Care to publish on the Road, that *Demetrius* was not killed, but another in his Stead, and that he had saved himself, and would very soon return to punish his ungrateful Subjects. He affected to shew very great Respect to one of his Companions, whom he would have thought to be *Demetrius*. When he arrived at *Putivl*, he assur'd the Inhabitants that *Demetrius* was gone to implore Succours from his Allies, and had sent him to assure them, that he was living, and that he would soon see them, desiring them in the mean Time to continue firm in their Allegiance to him: The Inhabitants, upon hearing this, offered to sacrifice their Lives for their Sovereign.

SCHACOPSKI, very well pleased with this first Success, sent to the *Cossacks*, to whom he gave a Meeting at *Putivl*; they came to him from all Parts: The rest of the Partizans of *Demetrius*, who deplored his Fate, and who treated *Zuski* as an ungrateful Man, and an Usurper, gathered themselves together, under the Guidance of a Boyar, named *Isboma*; and having learnt what passed at *Putivl*, several thousand went thither, in Hopes of finding their Prince. All the Country took Part with them, and fifteen Castles withdrew from the Obedience of the Czar, who no sooner heard of what passed in the *Ukrain*, but he went thither with all Speed,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Speed, at the Head of an Army raised in haste. He imagined it would be more than sufficient to reduce a Company of Malecontents to their Duty, who had united all by Chance, and had not yet had Time enough to put themselves in a Posture of Defence; but this Confidence made him deceive himself, for his Army was beaten, and he was forced to retire in great Disorder to *Moscow*.

THE Victors receiving the additional Strength of ten thousand *Cossacks* brought them by *Polutnich*, followed him; but at the Time that they were going to make themselves Masters of *Moscow*, where all was in Confusion, *Polutnich* shewed *Ishoma* a Commission from the pretended *Demetrius*, enjoining the latter to give up the Command to the first. *Ishoma* was so piqu'd at this Affront, that having debauched near nine thousand of the *Cossacks*, he went over to the Side of the Czar, whom he acquainted, that there was no *Demetrius* at *Putivl*. Four thousand more Men followed the Example of the *Cossacks*, and abandoned *Polutnich*, who retired, with *Schacopski*, to *Toula*, where the Czar immediately ordered them to be besieged. This Town, where they had not had Time to get together any Provisions, was soon reduced to so great a Famine, that the Inhabitants were forced to eat the most nauseous Animals. *Polutnich* at length seeing they were resolved to surrender, endeavoured to keep up their Spirits, by assuring them they would have Succours, and by protesting to them, that he had seen in *Poland* a young Man, about six or seven and twenty Years of
Age,

Age, who, he was told, was *Demetrius*, but that he could not take upon him to be positive that it was he, because he had never seen him before; but said, if they would take the Trouble to send into *Poland* any one who knew that Prince, they might soon be informed of the Truth of it. They consented to this, but the pretended *Demetrius* never appeared. In the mean Time the Czar's Troops pressed *Toula* so vigorously, that it was obliged to surrender. The *Cossacks*, who were within, took the Part of the Victor; and the Czar, contrary to his Parole of Honour, ordered the Governour to be hanged; and loading *Schacopski* and *Polutnich* with Irons, threw them into Prison, where they died.

NEVERTHELESS, altho' the Person, who had undertaken to act the Part of *Demetrius*, had vanished thus, on a sudden; yet, as the *Polanders* had an Interest, that this Phantom should continue in some Shape or other, they soon put another in his Place. He was taken, they say, from a School of *Socola*, a Town in *Russia*, and upon the Noise that was made after the Desertion of *Ishoma*, who had no *Demetrius*, but in Idea perhaps, *Michawetski*, a *Polish* Gentleman, conducted him to *Putivl*, where he appeared at the Head of a Body of Troops, to go and succour *Toula*; but he found it taken, and the Czar's Army gone to besiege *Coluga*, the chief Retreat of the Adherents of *Demetrius*. The *Cossacks* that were found in *Toula*, having gone over to the *Russian* Army, were sent to this Siege. In the Way, they corrupted the Czar's Soldiers,
and

and caused them to mutiny; the Disorder spread itself into the Camp, so that the Soldiers threw down their Arms, and took to Flight; the *Cossacks* seized on their Cannon and Provisions, and carried them in Triumph into *Coluga*. The false *Demetrius*, strengthened by this Succour, and by a great Number of *Poles* and *Russians*, marched against his Enemy, killed eight thousand Men, and took *Misinowetski*, who commanded them, Prisoner: This Success gave great Credit to his Party, the neighbouring Towns and Castles strove which should surrender to him first, several thousand *Cossacks* came into his Camp to him, and *Wisnowieski* brought into him a great Number of the *Polish* Nobility.

THE Czar, who had got together a Body of seventeen or eighteen thousand Men, but little disciplined, was willing to try a second Battle. He was entirely defeated, and five thousand of his Men, all that were left, with much Difficulty saved themselves in *Bolcoff*, from whence they were soon obliged to pass over into the Army of *Demetrius*, who, after this new Advantage, had all the Country open to him, so that nothing hindered his March towards *Moscow*, which he would have surprized, but for the five thousand Men forced into his Army at *Bolcoff*, who deserted, and threw themselves into the City, which they defended like Men in Despair. Nevertheless the Burghers would have parley'd, and receiv'd *Demetrius*, if he had not insisted upon the Czar *Zuski's* being delivered up to him. In the mean Time *Basile Zuski*, the Czar's Uncle, got together a Body of
Troops

Troops in haste, with which he came, and encamped within four Wersts of *Moscow*. The *Polish* General, who commanded the Siege, attacked him in his Camp, defeated him, and took him Prisoner: The Czar attempted another Action, but was as unfortunate as in the former. At last there remained no Way to get out of this Embarrassment, but to engage King *Sigismund* to withdraw his Troops, and give over his Designs. To this End, *Zuski* set the Palatine of *Sandomir* and his Daughter at Liberty, upon Condition that they would employ their Interest to bring this about; but *Demetrius*, who was informed of all that passed, and who knew how much it would forward the Success of his Enterprize to have these Persons in his Power, sent several Horse to intercept them in their Way, and bring them to him. They presently saw the Imposture, and could not but express their Astonishment at the Confidence of the Man who so steadily maintained his Part, while he was personating this feigned Character; but the Palatine had been too sensibly affronted, and ill treated by *Zuski*, to let so favourable an Opportunity slip of revenging himself upon him, and his Daughter could not refuse to concur with him in it, as by this Means she might re-ascend to that high Degree of Grandeur from which she was so lately fallen, without reckoning upon the Pleasure it would be to her to revenge herself, and her Husband, on the Cruelty of *Zuski*. Thus after having been some Days in the Camp, she appeared, on a sudden, with a splendid Retinue in the Tent of the pretended

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

pretended *Demetrius*, whom she acknowledged for her Husband, and treated him, to Appearance, with the same Marks of Kindness and Respect as if he had been really so. This Step banished all Doubts, and the Impostor was acknowledged for the true *Demetrius* every where throughout *Russia*, but at *Moscow*, *Novogorod* and *Smolensko*.

THE King of *Poland* was willing to take Advantage of the deplorable Condition to which *Russia* was reduced, to recover those Places which had once belonged to that Crown. With this View he ordered his Army to advance towards *Smolensko*, to which City he laid Siege. The *Russians*, thus attacked on all Sides, could not long have resisted, had it not been for the Succours that the Czar *Zuski* received from the King of *Sweden*, under the Command of *Pontus de la Gardie*, with which he was now strong enough to make Head against *Demetrius*, but durst not hazard a Battle to relieve *Smolensko*. King *Sigismund* himself contributed to ease him in this Distress; he began to conceive a Jealousy of the Power of *Demetrius*, and feared, not without Reason, that if *Zuski* was entirely subdued, the *Russians* would put this *Demetrius* in his Place, as they had crowned the other in the Room of *Boris*.

THIS was not what he wanted, he had not produced and supported this other Impostor, but to give the *Russians* so much Employment at home, that they might not be in a Condition to lend Assistance to the *Swede*; and his Intention was, if he succeeded, to make use of all his Forces to conquer *Russia*.

He therefore recalled the *Poles* that served under *Demetrius*, who kept only his *Cossacks*, some *Russians*, and a few Auxiliaries that he gained among the *Tartars*. *Zuski* began to take Breath again, and *Demetrius*, who had chosen *Coluga* for the Seat of his doubtful Empire, troubled him no more. He even thought himself strong enough to go and succour *Smolensko*, but the *Polanders* would not suffer him to advance so far, and, as if they would spare him the Pains of his Journey, they met him at *Clusin*, attacked, and defeated him: However, *Smolensko* did not surrender; but the *Russians*, considering the Train of Defeats and Misfortunes that had attended the Government of *Zuski* for five Years together, thought that Heaven was displeased with him, and that he was therefore the Cause of all their Calamities: On the other Side, the Grandees and the Bulk of the People were persuaded, that *Demetrius* was an Impostor, and were justly incensed against him for having brought the *Poles* into the very Heart of *Russia*. They wanted a new Master, and such an one as might rid them of this *Demetrius*, and make Head against the *Poles*, or at least be agreeable to them, so that they might not be harrassed any longer by them. After many Deliberations, they could not think of any better Expedient to extricate themselves out of the Troubles they were in, than to offer the Crown to *Wladislaus*, the Son of *Sigismund*, King of *Poland*. They hoped by this Means to save *Smolensko*, to destroy *Demetrius*, and re-establish Peace; and thought, perhaps, when

when the Danger was over, there would be no great Difficulty to get rid of their new Prince, as the *Russians* had such a natural Antipathy to the *Polanders*.

WLADIS-
LAUS chosen
Czar.

WLADISLAUS accepted the Crown, *Zuski* was deposed, and retired into a Convent, from whence he was taken to be delivered to the *Poles*, with all his Family; and soon after died of Grief, or, as some say, by Poison. *Demetrius* made Head against the *Poles* for some Time, till he was massacred at a Feast by the *Tartars*, to revenge the Death of *Kasimowski* their Chief, whom he had caus'd to be drowned. Nevertheless his Party subsisted for some Years, for not only *Zarveki*, the General of the *Cossacks*, proclaimed his Son, whom the *Russians* acknowledged upon *Zarveki's* Promise to assist them in driving away the *Poles*; but a new Impostor took the Name and Place of *Demetrius*.

A fourth Im-
postor of the
Name of DE-
METRIUS.

THIS was the Clerk of an Office, whose real Name History has not preserved to us; but we are told he was a Man of Intrigue, bold, enterprizing, and who wanted neither Wit nor Conduct. He first appeared in the Province of *Novogorod*, where he gave out, that he was the true *Demetrius*, the same that had escaped from the Hands of the Assassins employed to destroy him by *Boris*, the same who had escaped from *Zuski* at *Moscow*, and from the Snares of the *Tartars* at *Coluga*. Several hundred Soldiers joined him, and the meaner People by little and little gathering to his Party, he was almost astonished himself to find how strong he was grown. He carried his Boldness so far as to send an Ambassador

bassador to the King of *Sweden*, to demand Succours from him, by Virtue of the Alliance between the two States, and published a Manifesto to engage those whom he called his true Subjects to return to their Obedience.

THE King of *Sweden*, amazed to see this *Demetrius* arising every Moment, like another Phoenix, from his Ashes, sent a Person, named *Petreius*, who was very well acquainted with the first *Demetrius*, or *Griska Utropaja*, to examine who he was. The new *Demetrius*, apprized of this, feigned himself out of Order, and sent the *Swedish* Minister to his principal Secretary, who was then at *Iwanogorod*, where all the Country had acknowledged him. *Petreius* desired him to acquaint his Master, that he had secret Affairs, of great Importance, to communicate to him; but it was of greater Importance to him not to be seen; wherefore the *Swede* was obliged to go away without speaking to him, and without determining any Thing.

KING SIGISMUND had balanced, for some Time, whether or no he should consent to his Son's accepting the Crown of *Russia*. His Ambition was to make that Empire a conquered Country, and although he had promised that *Wladislaus* should soon go to *Moscow* to receive the Homage of his new Subjects, yet he did not much hasten his Departure, but in his Stead sent such a Number of *Polanders* into the Country, that there were reckoned above ten thousand in the City of *Moscow* alone, in a Condition to revenge the Blood of their Countrymen, which had been

shed with that of the second *Demetrius*. He pressed *Smolensko* to surrender to him; the Governor declared, that he was ready to open the Gates of the City to the Czar *Wladislaus*; but *Sigismund* would have the Town surrendered and united to *Poland*, therefore the Siege continued in this Manner for almost two Years; the Garison would not capitulate, and the *Poles* were obliged to take the Town by Assault, after two hundred thousand Inhabitants had perished in it; so that *Sigismund* had a Town almost depopulated, and reduced to Ashes.

THE POLANDERS continually represented to their King, that the *Russians* sought only how they might deceive them, and that it would be more glorious for him to be the Conqueror of the Country, than only Father of the Czar. He deferred, from Day to Day, the Departure of his Son; but in the mean Time, *Stanislaus Solkouski*, the Polish General, had received the Oath of Allegiance from the *Russians*, in the Name of *Wladislaus*, and they had permitted him to put a thousand Men in Garison in the Castle of *Moscow*. The continued Delays of the Departure of *Wladislaus*, the Insolence of the *Polanders*, who had forgot how much their Licentiousness had cost them some Years before, and the Impatience of the *Russians*, who saw no End of their Miseries, all together spurred them on to meet in great Numbers in the Place before the Castle, on the 24th of *January*, 1611, where they loudly complained of the Outrages they had received from the *Poles*, who ought to have protected and defended

fended them, adding at the same Time, that they should be forced to use those Remedies that Nature had put into their Hands, for their Safety, if some better Course were not taken. General *Solkouski* did all that was in his Power to appease them, and even severely chastized some of the *Polanders*, who were the most culpable: But this did not satisfy the *Russians*; and the *Polanders*, apprehending a general Insurrection, redoubled their Guards, possessed themselves of the principal Streets, and forbade the *Russians* to assemble or bear Arms. This incensed them so, that they all rose, and met together in several Parts of the City, on Purpose to oblige the *Polanders* to divide their Forces. Those who did not think themselves strong enough to resist them, had Recourse to an horrible Method to divert their Enemies. *Moscow*, at that Time, contained above an hundred and eighty thousand Houses, the *Polanders* set Fire to three or four Parts of the Town at once, and while the *Russians* ran to the Assistance of their Wives and Children, they fell upon them on all Sides, and made so horrid a Slaughter, that that, together with the Fire, had destroyed near two hundred thousand Souls, with the greatest Part of the Houses in the City. The Czar's Treasury was plundered, as well as the Churches and Convents, from whence the *Polanders* drew an incredible Quantity of Gold, Silver, and precious Stones, which they sent into their own Country, and the common Men got so much Booty, and so rich, that, it is said, some of them loaded their Pistols with large round Pearls.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

IN this Manner the *Polanders* remained Masters for fifteen Days, when *Zachary Lippenow*, putting himself at the Head of a good Army, came and besieged them in the Castle. King *Sigismund*, who, as has been said before, had taken *Smolensko*, might have sent them Succours without much Difficulty, and put Things upon a good Footing in *Russia*, but he returned into *Poland*, without sending the Besieged any Assistance, either in Men or Money. The *Polanders*, therefore, to the Number of seven thousand, having left a Garison in the Castle, left *Moscow*, and coming to their King, obliged him to advance their Pay.

AT length *Sigismund* undertook in good earnest, to re-establish his Affairs in this Empire; but none of his Designs succeeded, on Account of the Jealousy of his Generals; so that at length *Lippenow*, who kept the Castle besieged, reduced it by Hunger; and when that had surrendered, the King of *Poland* lost all that he had in *Russia*.

WHEN the Boyars and Senators saw the State a little in Repose, it was proposed to proceed to the Election of a new Czar, as the Throne had been declared vacant by *Wladislaus's* not coming to accept the Crown. In the first Assembly that convened upon this Account, it was recommended by some of the Members to the rest, above all Things, to have a Regard for the Welfare of their Country in giving their Votes, so that all new Troubles might be avoided; and they admonished them, that though the Intention of those who were for promoting the Interest of a foreign

reign Princee might be good, and believed by them to be for the Advantage of the Empire, yet they might be mistaken, and a foreign Power might bring Ruin on their Country; but in chusing one of their own Body, they said, they ought to take Care not to give their Votes to any that had too great a Family and Relations, or who had been instrumental in the late unhappy Troubles, by which several had made themselves Friends, and others Enemies, and therefore might easily be the Cause of new Disturbances. Lastly, they said, that he who was chosen, should agree to certain Conditions drawn up by the Assembly, and not be crowned before he had solemnly sworn to observe them.

AFTER others had been named in the Assembly, who were set aside, one of the Members propos'd *Michael Theodorowitz Romanow*, Son of the Archbishop of *Rostow*, a Youth of seventeen Years of Age, who was with his Mother in a Convent at *Castroma*, his Father *Theodore Romanow*, or *Philaret*, being at that Time a Prisoner in *Poland*, whither he had been sent on an Embassy. This Proposal soon gained the Approbation of many, for in this young Man were center'd all the Circumstances above-mentioned, which they imagined necessary to preserve the Tranquillity of the Empire, and make them a happy People. There were but three Males of his Family living; he had not been concerned in the late Troubles, and his Father being a Clergyman of known Piety and Virtue, would rather advise Peace, than endeavour to excite new Divisions; of which he had given

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

a Proof, by a Letter which he found Means to convey from his Prison to his Wife's Brother *Czeremetoff*, wherein he exhorted him, as a General and a Senator, earnestly to consider the Good of the Empire, and to persuade the rest of the Senate to do the same.

CZEREMETOFF having laid this Letter before the Assembly, it inspired them with new Resolutions at the ensuing Election, and gave Occasion for naming the good Archbishop's Son, which Nomination, though none could object to, yet no one present could say any Thing as to the Qualifications of the young Nobleman. The *Castromian* Noblemen, who were then in the Assembly, had indeed seen him; but all that they could say was, that they looked upon him to be discreet for his Age. The Assembly was neither willing to set him aside, on Account of his Youth, nor able to determine the Election in his Favour, till they enquired into his Character, and had seen him; they therefore sent two Noblemen with a Letter to his Mother, desiring she would send her Son to *Moscow* with those Deputies.

THE tender Mother had no sooner read this Letter, than she began to weep, and lament her Misfortune, in that her only Son must be taken from her to share the Fate of so many Czars, who had been already miserably slaughtered, one after another. She, therefore, wrote a Letter to her Brother *Czeremetoff*, earnestly desiring him to use his Endeavours with the Senate, that her Son might be excused, being too young, and incapable of so high a Dignity, and having no Relations

tions that were capable of assisting him with their good Advice, for the Benefit of the *Empire*, as he himself, as well as they, would find, but perhaps too late; for which Reasons she intreated him to prevail on the Nobility to cast their Thoughts upon another Person, more capable to govern both himself and the Empire.

THIS Letter, and the Report of the Deputies, caused a great Dispute in the Assembly. Some took it amiss, and thought it very unbecoming the Mother thus to oppose the Will of the whole Assembly; others considering her Reasons, and that she was not ambitious of having her Son promoted to so high a Dignity, were the more confirmed in the Opinion they had conceived of him.

CZEREMETOFF, though he understood the Matter better than his Sister, dissembled, and pretended he would not concern himself in the Matter; but underhand he worked effectually to bring the Business about, and persuaded the Metropolitan of *Moscow* to insist in the Assembly upon chusing young *Romanow*. This Metropolitan, expecting to advance his own Interest by it, came one Day early into the Assembly, and declared, with a solemn Affelevation, that he had had a Revelation, and that if the Assembly was desirous to have a prosperous Prince to rule over them, they could have none better than young *Romanow*. This pretended Revelation, backed by so solemn a Speech, had such an Effect, that the whole Assembly desired *Czeremetoff* to write once more to his Sister, to let her Son come to *Moscow*. *Cze-*

remetoff was afraid, that if young *Romanow* should come to *Moscow*, many might disapprove of him, on Account of his Youth, or that, by his Answers, and Discourse, he might give Occasion to the opposite Party to raise new Objections, which, by his Absence, might be avoided, since no one there could give an Account of his Capacity; he therefore answered, with a feigned Humility: I must not oppose the Will of God, nor the Opinion of the Assembly: However, I think it ought to be taken into Consideration, that his Mother endeavours, with Tears, to avert it: I, for my Part, will be neutral in the Case, lest any body should think I have more Regard for my Relations, than for the Good of the Empire, and that I may have a clear Conscience before God, and this Assembly, in Case any Misfortune should happen on Account of his Youth.

THIS Speech, accompanied with many Tears, had such an Effect, that even those who before had been most against it, said: Why should we use so many Intreaties in this Case, since we have so full Power from the Almighty. As to his Youth, God, who has chosen him, will also protect him: Let us therefore no longer debate the Matter, but acknowledge him our Sovereign; to which all agreed. Hereupon they went to the Church, and proclaimed him, to the great Satisfaction and Joy of all who were present, especially the common People, who were mightily taken with the pretended Revelation. This was no sooner done, than they sent some of the Senators to the young Czar,
to

to intreat him to come to *Moscow*, in order to his Coronation, which he did accordingly; and thus the Imperial Crown of *Russia* first came into the illustrious Family of *Romanow*, in which it still continues with double Lustre on the Head of the present Empress ELIZABETH, Great Grandaughter of *Michael Theodorowitz*, and Daughter of PETER the Great of immortal Memory.

The End of the Second Book.



THE



THE
HISTORY
OF
RUSSIA,

To the End of the REIGN of the

Empress CATHARINE.

BOOK III.

The CONTENTS.

The Reign of Michael Theodorowitz.

MICHAEL THEODOROWITZ was called to the Throne of *Russia* in the Year of our Lord 1613. He was a Prince of a most engaging and sweet Temper, who delighted in the Arts of Peace, and was resolved, if possible, to efface the Remembrance of all the Cruelties of his Predecessors: As soon as he had notified his Accession to the King of *Poland*, his Father, the Archbishop of *Rostow*, was immediately set at Liberty, and sent home; where not long after the Czar his Son,

Son, upon the Death of the *Russian* Metropolitan, created him Patriarch, and constantly treated him with the utmost Respect and filial Piety, consulting him in all Affairs of Importance, and giving him the first Place in all publick Assemblies, which greatly raised the Credit of the Patriarch's Office, held in high Esteem before.

THE Czar *Michael Theodorowitz* began his Reign by appeasing all the Troubles within his Kingdom, and by striking at the Root from whence it was apprehended others might arise. For a large Sum of Money he engaged the *Cossacks* to put *Coluga* into his Hands, where the pretended Son of the second *Demetrius* kept his Court; they likewise delivered his Mother and *Zaveriski*, who had been declared his Protector; the last was impaled alive, and the young *Demetrius* with his Mother, the unfortunate Daughter of the Palatine of *Sandomir*, were both drowned under the Ice. The other Impostor of the Name of *Demetrius*, was delivered up to the Czar by the People of *Pleskow*, whom he had ill treated, and was hanged without the Walls of *Moscow*.

WE have seen before, that *Charles* King of *Sweden* had sent to assist the Czar *Zuski* against the *Polanders*. But the *Russians* not seconding *Pontus de la Gardie*, as they ought to have done, he retired, with several hundred *Swedes* and *Finlanders*, to seek at least to make good the Expences the King his Master had been at; he therefore endeavoured to seize on the Places that *Zuski* had promised him. He pressed the *Russians* to evacuate *Kexholm* to him;

him; but so far from doing what he required, they took from the Couriers, the Instrument of the Treaty he had made with them, and which he was sending into *Sweden*, and refused him Entrance into *Novogorod*. This Conduct, which favoured somewhat of the *Grecian* Perfidy, determined the *Swedish* General to take by Force, what he found he could not obtain otherwise; and having received a Reinforcement from *Sweden*, he took Possession of * *Ladoga*, afterwards made himself Master of *Kexholm*, and, re-entering *Russia*, went and encamped before *Novogorod*, at the Time when they were deliberating at *Moscow* about dethroning the Czar *Wladislaus*. He proposed Prince *Charles-Philip* of *Sweden* to succeed him, and some of the principal Men in the Country gave him Hopes, that this might be brought about; but having observed the Irresolution and Inconstancy of the *Russians*, he thought he might push the Affair with a better Prospect of Success, if he appeared in a Condition to be able to support him; he therefore attacked *Novogorod*, and took it by Assault. Those who saved themselves in the Castle were allowed to capitulate, upon Condition that they would put themselves under the Protection of the King of *Sweden*, and would elect the Prince of *Sweden* for their Sovereign, this Prince promising to maintain the *Greek* Religion, and to defend them against all their Enemies. After this *la Gardie* put a Garison in the Fortrefs, and took the Oaths of all the *Russians* who

* A City which gives Name to the Lake, near which it is situated.

who were found in the City ; upon which the People of *Novogorod* sent an Ambassador to offer the Crown to Prince *Charles-Philip* ; but while these Things passed *Charles IX.* died, and his Son *Gustavus Adolphus* succeeded him. This young Prince being very much embarrassed with the Wars of *Denmark* and *Poland*, and not answering so warmly to the Solicitations of the *Russians*, as they expected, the whole Affair would have fallen to the Ground, if *la Gardie* had not taken Pains to keep up the good Disposition they were in. At length, Peace being made at *Kuaredb*, between *Sweden* and *Denmark*, *Gustavus Adolphus* thought seriously on the Offers made by the *Russians*, and believed there was the more Likelihood of Success, as all the Northern Part of the *Russian* Empire seemed much inclined to a *Swedish* Prince. The King, therefore, receiving fresh Instances from the People of *Novogorod*, answered with great Civility, and assured them, that he would soon come among them, for he was inclined to take the *Russian* Empire for himself, and join it to the Crown of *Sweden*, rather than to yield it to his Brother : But this was not the Intention of the *Russians*, who could easily penetrate into his Designs, when they observed, that he made no Mention of his Brother. For which Reason, willing to have a Prince of their own, without being under the Power of the *Swedes*, and not believing that both States could be well governed by one Sovereign in the present Con-juncture, they answered *Gustavus* with much Respect, beseeching him, “ to send his Bro-
“ ther

“ther *Charles-Philip* to them without Delay;
 “since his Majesty had too much Employ-
 “ment upon his Hands in his own King-
 “dom, to have Time to re-establish the Af-
 “fairs of *Russia*, which were in great Disor-
 “der and Confusion.”

*The Prince of
 SWEDEN
 misses the
 Crown of
 RUSSIA.*

No Opportunity could have been more favourable; nevertheless it was lost, whether the King could not bear to see his Brother on the Throne of so powerful an Empire, whether the Queen, his Mother, feared to expose him to the inconstant Temper of the *Russians*; or, lastly, whether the *Swedish* Grandees, who had conceiv'd a Jealousy of *la Gardie*, did what they could to prevent an Affair of such Importance being brought about by a Foreigner.

In the mean Time the *Swedish* Troops did not remain idle in *Russia*; *Slange* took * *Notebourg* by Composition, in the Name of Prince *Charles-Philip* the intended Czar; *Everd Horn*, in the same Manner, made himself Master of *Coporio*, *Iamagorod*, *Iwanogorod*, and *Augdo*; and formed a Design upon *Pleskow*, but miscarried in it.

THE RUSSIANS had waited, with Impatience, for the Prince of *Sweden*; but observing the Contempt, or rather the Indifference, with which he answered their Expectations, their Inclinations towards him began to cool, and especially when they thought they had Reason to suspect, that *Gustavus* sought rather to extend the Limits of his own Kingdom, than to procure the Empire of *Russia* for his Brother, and assist them in retrieving their

* Now called *Slutelbourg*.

their shattered Affairs. For these Reasons they proceeded to an Election at *Moscow*, which, as hath been said before, fell upon *Michael Theodorowitz*, in Spite of all the Opposition that *la Gardie* could make, who was active enough among the People of *Novogorod* to engage them to take a fresh Oath to Prince *Charles-Philip*, whom the King, his Brother, at length sent to *Wybourg*, when it was too late.

LA GARDIE having received a considerable Succour from *Sweden*, reinforced the Garrison of *Novogorod*. The Inhabitants sent Deputies to felicitate the Prince on his Arrival at *Wybourg*, and to intreat him to come to *Novogorod*. But the Counsellors, whom *Gustavus* had sent with his Brother, would not consent to that, pretending that all the Places of the Empire should send Deputies to shew, that they were satisfied with the Election, and that the Disorders in the State should first be quieted. The *Russians* persisted, that the Prince ought to come and shew himself at *Novogorod*, which had formerly been the Capital of a particular Monarchy, and separated from the rest of *Russia*, or at least that he should go to *Iwanogorod*, that it might be said he had taken Possession of the Empire. But they could obtain nothing: The *Swedish* Counsellors kept to their Instructions, and the *Russian* Ambassadors retired, but not till they had consented to renew, upon the Cross, the Oath of Allegiance to the Prince.

THE Instructions of the Prince's Counsellors imported also, that if the *Russians* would not do what was expected from them, they

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

they should seize on all the Province of *Novogorod*: *La Gardie* judged this Enterprize too delicate, not to say impossible, with so few Forces, which would not fail of exposing the *Swedes* to the Insults of the *Russians*. But the new Czar, *Michael Theodorowitz*, was not restrained by the same Reasons, and the more Interest the *Swedes* had in managing the *Russians*, the more was he concerned to irritate them against those who had kept from him so great a Part of his Subjects; and the *Swedes*, after they had conceived great Hopes of Friendship and Alliance with the *Russians*, entered into a bloody War with them.

THE Czar sent an Army into the Field, to recover all that the *Swedes* had taken from the Empire; and at the same Time sent Ministers to *England*, *Germany*, *Denmark*, and *Holland*, to notify his Accession to the Throne; but above all, to make his Complaints of the Conduct of the *Swedes*. *La Gardie* defeated eight thousand *Russians*, who had been advantageously incamped to cut off his Communication with *Novogorod*. *Everd Horn* besieged *Augdo*, which the *Russians* had surprized; and *Gustavus* himself came to *Narva*, to assist at the Taking of that Town: In a Word, the *Russians* were distressed on all Sides.

THE King of *Sweden* thought he ought to take his Advantage of the bad Situation to which the Enemy was reduced, to make him enter into some Negotiation; and to this End employed the *English* Ambassador, who was then at the Court of the Czar; but to give Weight to his Remonstrances, he came back the next Year

Year to *Narva*, with a Resolution to besiege *Pleskow*; but this Enterprize did not succeed. *Everd Horn*, his General, was mortally wounded, and the Besieged supported themselves with so much Bravery against all Assaults, that the King, at length, for want of Artillery, was forced to raise the Siege.

THE Ministers of *England* and *France* being chosen Mediators between the two Crowns, opened their Conferences with the *Russians* at *Glebova*, where a Truce was agreed to, and the preliminary Articles of a Peace, which was concluded the next Year at *Stelbova*, by which the Czar yielded to the King of *Sweden*, *Kexholm*, and its Dependences, with all *Ingria*. These enabled *Sweden* to make a strong Rampart on that Side of the Empire, and cut off the *Russians* from all Communication with the *Baltick Sea*; but these consoled themselves with seeing their Commerce more and more established every Day in the *White Sea*, where the *English* and *Dutch* Merchantmen came constantly, and with whom they chose to traffick, rather than with any other Nations.

THE Czar forgot nothing that could be done to re-establish Order and Tranquillity in his Empire, and published every Day some new Ordinance, to remedy the Abuses that had crept into the Provinces during the late Troubles. There remained no Enemies without his Dominions, but the *Poles*, and they were too much employed by the *Turks* to give him much Uneasiness at that Time; but as soon as their Hands were at Liberty on that Side, they bent all their Force against
N *Russia*,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Russia, whither Prince *Wladisslaus* came at the Head of a numerous Army, pretending, that, by Virtue of his Election, the *Russians* ought to acknowledge him for their Sovereign. These reproached him with having abandon'd them, and said, that his refusing to come into *Russia*, when his Presence was so necessary, was sufficient to discharge them from their Oath of Allegiance to him. He attacked *Moscow*, and left the *Cossacks* to plunder all the Country round. But finding, at length, that by the *Russians* standing firm by their Prince, *Michael Theodorowitz*, he had not much to expect for himself, he consented to an Accommodation, and concluded a Truce for fourteen Years, the Basis of which was, that every one should enjoy what they were then actually possessed of.

RUSSIA now found herself at Peace with all her Neighbours, and the Czar in a Condition to put in Execution the prudent and salutary Measures he was taking for the Prosperity of his People: One of the first was, by marrying, to endeavour to provide for them an Heir to his Crown of his own Blood, when it should please God to take him from them. The Lady, who was Mistress of his Choice on this Occasion, was *Eudocia*, the Daughter of *Lucojan Streschnew*. Of the Proceedings in this Affair, we have the following Account given by *Strahlenberg*, which may not be unentertaining to the Reader.

The Czar MICHAEL THEODOROWITZ marries.

* THE Czar having declared his Intention of marrying to the Senate, the *Bojars* looked out

* *Histori-Geographical Description of the N. and E. Parts of Europe and Asia*, p. 218, 219.

out for the most beautiful Ladies that were to be found, and sent them to Court: They were received by the Grande Gouvernante of the Court, and each of them had an Apartment provided suitable to their respective Quality, till the Time of the Election. During this Interval, they all dined together at one Table, where the Czar had an Opportunity of seeing them in publick, and *incognito*, in order the better to direct his Choice to one of this beautiful Company. However, Recommendation had no small Share in this Matter; because in so short a Time, it was impossible for the Czar perfectly to judge of their Humours and Passions. And though he often disguised himself, and waited, among others, at Table, yet, in all Probability, this could not be done with so much Privacy, but every one might have a Hint to be upon her Guard, and artfully to conceal her natural Temper.

As soon as the Czar was determined in his Choice, the Grande Gouvernante only was made acquainted with it, and ordered to get Cloaths made for them all, and for the Bride a Wedding Suit. In the mean Time a Day for the Solemnization of the Nuptials was appointed, though none of them knew who was to be the Bride; and that Day being come, the new Cloaths were distributed, and the Bride then received her Nuptial Robes, which made it known upon whom the Choice was fallen. They then all paid their congratulatory Compliments to the Bride; and as soon as she was proclaimed, the rest were sent home.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

STRESCHNEW, the Father of the Czar's Consort *Eudocia*, was a poor Nobleman, who living privately upon his small Estate, about two hundred Wersts from the City of *Moscow*, could not be soon informed of his Daughter's good Fortune; but soon after the Nuptials were over, the Czar sent one of the Lords of his Bed-Chamber to him with suitable wearing Apparel, Servants, Coaches and Horses, and every Thing necessary to convey him and his whole Family to *Moscow*. When the Lord came to his Seat, he found *Streschnew* in the Fields, where he himself, with others, were at Plough; and after he had saluted him in the Name of the Czar, and *Czarina* his Daughter, he acquainted him it was their Desire he should come to *Moscow*. This Compliment very much surprized honest *Streschnew*, who thought the Lord only jested with him; his Answer, therefore, was: My Lord, I do not know you, however I see you are one of our Great Czar's Court; I am but a poor Nobleman, and think it no Shame to maintain myself and Family in the Manner you see, therefore I beg you would not hinder me from taking the Advantage of the fair Weather. But the Lord delivering him a Letter from his Daughter the *Czarina*, which he desired him to read, and to go home, and accept of the Presents he had left for him there, he was, at length, convinced it was no Jest: Upon which he set out for *Moscow*, where he was created a *Boyar*, and the Family continues in great Esteem to this Day.

THE

THE Czarina *Eudocia* was as virtuous and gracious, as she was fair, and, by her prudent Conduct, she gained the Love of the whole Nation. In the first Year she had a Daughter, and afterwards successively three more. The Czar, who took it very much to Heart, that she had not bore him a Son, had some Thoughts of being divorced from her; but his Mother prevailed upon the Senate to endeavour to divert him from such a Resolution; and they succeeded so well, that he altered his Mind; the Czarina bringing forth Prince *Alexis*, the very next Year after, secured the Czar's Affections to her, which continued till they were parted by Death.

A SHORT Time after the Birth of the Czarewitz *Alexis*, two Ambassadors arrived at *Moscow* from the States-General of the United Provinces; the one M. *Albert Conrad*, Burgo-Master of *Amsterdam*; and the other M. *John Veldriel*, Magistrate of *Doccum*. The Merchants of *Holland* had for some Years found the Way to trade to *Archangel*, as well as the *English*; their Traffick consisted chiefly in exporting Tallow, Saltpetre, Corn, and some Sort of Skins from thence; but the jealous *English* did what they could to obstruct their Commerce; however, they had settled some Factors there; notwithstanding which, they found great Difficulties to bring any Corn from thence, on Account of the great Duties which the *Swedes*, who were Masters of the *Baltick-Sea*, obliged them to pay; and there being a great Scarcity, at this Time, in the United Provinces, the States-General, at the Request of several Merchants, were come to

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

STRESCHNEW, the Father of the Czar's Consort *Eudocia*, was a poor Nobleman, who living privately upon his small Estate, about two hundred Wersts from the City of *Moscow*, could not be soon informed of his Daughter's good Fortune; but soon after the Nuptials were over, the Czar sent one of the Lords of his Bed-Chamber to him with suitable wearing Apparel, Servants, Coaches and Horses, and every Thing necessary to convey him and his whole Family to *Moscow*. When the Lord came to his Seat, he found *Streschnew* in the Fields, where he himself, with others, were at Plough; and after he had saluted him in the Name of the Czar, and *Czarina* his Daughter, he acquainted him it was their Desire he should come to *Moscow*. This Compliment very much surprized honest *Streschnew*, who thought the Lord only jested with him; his Answer, therefore, was: My Lord, I do not know you, however I see you are one of our Great Czar's Court; I am but a poor Nobleman, and think it no Shame to maintain myself and Family in the Manner you see, therefore I beg you would not hinder me from taking the Advantage of the fair Weather. But the Lord delivering him a Letter from his Daughter the *Czarina*, which he desired him to read, and to go home, and accept of the Presents he had left for him there, he was, at length, convinced it was no Jest: Upon which he set out for *Moscow*, where he was created a *Boyar*, and the Family continues in great Esteem to this Day.

THE

THE Czarina *Eudocia* was as virtuous and gracious, as she was fair, and, by her prudent Conduct, she gained the Love of the whole Nation. In the first Year she had a Daughter, and afterwards successively three more. The Czar, who took it very much to Heart, that she had not bore him a Son, had some Thoughts of being divorced from her; but his Mother prevailed upon the Senate to endeavour to divert him from such a Resolution; and they succeeded so well, that he altered his Mind; the Czarina bringing forth Prince *Alexis*, the very next Year after, secured the Czar's Affections to her, which continued till they were parted by Death.

A SHORT Time after the Birth of the Czarewitz *Alexis*, two Ambassadors arrived at *Moscow* from the States-General of the United Provinces; the one M. *Albert Conrad*, Burgo-Master of *Amsterdam*; and the othe M. *John Veldriel*, Magistrate of *Doccum*. The Merchants of *Holland* had for some Years found the Way to trade to *Archangel*, as well as the *English*; their Traffick consisted chiefly in exporting Tallow, Saltpetre, Corn, and some Sort of Skins from thence; but the jealous *English* did what they could to obstruct their Commerce; however, they had settled some Factors there; notwithstanding which, they found great Difficulties to bring any Corn from thence, on Account of the great Duties which the *Swedes*, who were Masters of the *Baltick-Sea*, obliged them to pay; and there being a great Scarcity, at this Time, in the United Provinces, the States-General, at the Request of several Merchants, were come to

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

a Resolution to send a solemn Embassy to the Czar, to endeavour to gain some new Advantages with respect to this Article.

THESE Ambassadors went out of the *Texel* on the 11th of *June* 1630, arrived at *Archangel* on the 20th of *August*, and departed from thence, for their Journey to *Moscow*, on the 8th of *September*. On the 10th of *November* they arrived at *Rossokini*, about a League Distance from *Moscow* upon the *Yarus*: There the Czar sent to compliment them, by the Boyar *John Theodorowitz Thiamadanoff*, who had been Governor of *Vergoturja* in *Siberia*, and by the Secretary *John Gregoriwitz Perensoff*, accompanied by some hundred of Knezes and Boyars on Horseback, magnificently apparel'd. They made their publick Entry into *Moscow* in two Sledges of the Czar's, and had all the same Honours done them as to Ambassadors of Crown'd Heads. On the 24th of the same Month they had their Audience of the Czar. In the grand Procession to which they were preceded by near six hundred Persons, who carried the Presents designed for the Czar, the Patriarch, and the Czarewitz, which consisted of Arms, Jewels, and rich Stuffs: Their Gentlemen were mounted on white * *Argamaks*, and marched two and two before those who publickly carried the credential Letters. The Ambassadors were in a Sledge of the Czar's lined with crimson Satin, and the two *Pristafs*, or Introductors, were each in a Sledge beside them. They were conducted in this Manner to

* The Persian Horses in the Czar's Stables so called.

to *Kremlin*, or the Czar's Palace, through all the Garifon under Arms, drawn up in Ranks for that Purpose. They were received at the Entrance of the Hall of Audience, by the Knez *John Michaelowitz Boratinskoy*, and by the *Diack*, or Secretary, *Mikitoſ Speridonow*. When they entered, the Commandant of the Caſtle proclaimed with a loud Voice, that they were the Ambaſſadors from the Moſt High and Mighty Lords the States-General, and from the Great Prince of *Orange*. The Czar was upon his Throne, with his Crown on his Head, enriched with large Diamonds and Pearls; the Sceptre in his Hand, and cloathed with a Robe finely embroidered with Gold: On his right Hand was the Patriarch, his Father, in the Habit of an Eccleſiaſtick, having on his Head a Globe of Gold ſurmounted with a Croſs; at his left Hand was a gilt Pyramid, upon which was a Crown to repreſent the Czarewitz; at the Feet of the Czar were four *Stolnicks*, or Pages of the Table, in white Robes and white Bonnets, with Chains of Gold about their Necks, and a Croſs hanging on their Breasts, having each a golden Hatchet on their Shoulders. All round the Hall were ſeated the Knezes, Miniſters, Boyars, and fifteen Biſhops in their pontifical Robes.

WHEN the Ambaſſadors came near the Throne, the Chancellor declared to them, that his Maſteſty allowed them the Honour of kiſſing his Hand: They delivered their Credentials, and made a long Speech, in which, among other Things, they congratulated his Czarish Maſteſty, in the Name of their High

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Mightinesses, and the Prince of *Orange*, upon the Birth of the *Czarewitz*.

THIS Embassy gave the Czar Occasion to send one, in his Turn, to their High Mightinesses, and the sooner, because the Truce which he had made with the King of *Poland* being near at an End, he foresaw that he should have need of the Arms, and other Ammunition, which their High Mightinesses had made him an Offer of, by their Ambassadors, to obtain what they were sent to demand, with respect to the Contract of *Corn*. The Czar named, for this Charge, *Gregory Andrewitz Olaibiew*, Gentleman of his Bed-Chamber, and Secretary *Gregory Lanowitz*, who arrived at the *Hague* on the 28th of *October* 1631.

THE King of *Poland* had not religiously observed the Truce of fourteen Years, concluded at *Diwelina*; for Prince *Wladislaus* had not only maintained the Title of Czar, which by the Treaty he was to have relinquished, but the *Polish* Troops continually made Incursions into the *Russian* Provinces which are on the Borders of *Poland*, where from Time to Time they had seized on several Places which they found commodious for them. Whatever Complaints were made by the Czar, or his Weyvodes, to the King, or the Diet of *Poland*, they could never obtain the least Satisfaction. This unjust Procedure made the Czar resolve to declare War with *Poland*, without waiting for the End of the Truce, and the rather as he had received Ambassadors from *Sweden*, and the Grand Seignior, who seemed likewise highly exasperated

perated against *Poland*. The Czar had moreover Reason to be dissatisfied with the *Poles* on Account of Religion, since they were continually sending *Roman Catholick* Priests into his Dominions, who, according to their Custom, took the Authority upon them to damn all those who were not of their Sect, how good Christians soever in all other Respects, and using all the Methods they could think of to establish Popery in *Russia*.

BEFORE the Czar's Ambassadors arrived in *Holland*, he had sent an Officer, named *Lefly*, with Orders to purchase Arms and Ammunition, and to raise Troops; and the Ambassadors, when they came, demanded Succours of Men and Money; but the Republick, drained by a War of sixty Years against *Spain*, were not in a Condition to comply with their Requests, and part with any Money; but they granted all that was in their Power, the Liberty of purchasing, and carrying away what Arms and Ammunition they would, without paying the usual Duties, on such Accounts, accruing to the Government.

How just soever the War was, which the Czar declared against *Poland*, it was not successful. An Army of an hundred thousand Men besieged *Smolensko*, but they were constrained to raise the Siege, *Wladislaus*, who had succeeded his Father *Sigismund* III. coming to the Relief of that important Place. This was not all, the Year following he re-enter'd *Russia*, laid Siege to *Bielba*, and employed his *Tartars* to make Incursions on all Sides. The *Russian* General, *Michael Borisfowitz*

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

sowitz Szebin, and his Camp Marefchal *Ismael Goffen*, were accused of not behaving well before *Smolensko*, and lost their Heads; however, this Piece of Justice did not re-establish the Affairs of the Czar, who was advised, by his Counsellors, to make Peace with *Wladislaus*: But this was not found so easy to be done, as could have been desired; proud of the Advantages he had gained, he was for giving Laws, and would not consent to renounce the Title of Czar of *Russia*, but on Condition, that the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz*, should yield to him, for ever, the two Provinces of *Smolensko* and *Czernibow*, with their Dependencies.

THE Czar, a little before this, in the Year 1633, had lost the Patriarch *Theodore*, or *Philaret Nikititz Romanow*, his Father, and principal Counsellor. He had always so great a Respect for this venerable Prelate, that, besides the Rank he gave him next the Throne, his Name was always inserted with the Czar's in all publick Acts, which ran in the Names of the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz*, and of his Majesty's Father, the most holy Patriarch. As he had joined the Mitre to the Sword, having embraced an Ecclesiastical Life, after having been a General in the Army, the affable and moderate Behaviour so becoming the Ministers of the Altar, had so tempered and corrected the Fire of the Warrior, that his Manners appeared amiable to all that came near him. He had been an Eye-Witness to all the Revolutions that had happened from the Time of the Death of *John Basilowitz*, commonly called the Tyrant, whose
Wife

Wife was his Aunt. He had profited by all the Errors committed by the Czars *Theodore*, *Boris*, *Demetrius*, *Zufki* and *Wladislaus*; and from their Conduct had drawn such Lessons for the Instruction of his Son, as effectually made him appear without any of the Faults of his Predecessors, saving only, that he had somewhat too high an Idea of his own Power, which made him neglect to cultivate those Alliances with his Neighbours, which might have enabled him to have executed great Designs, and especially in the Situation that Affairs were, at that Time, between *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Poland*.

THE Peace between the Czar and the King of *Poland*, had not been concluded above two Months, before there arrived at *Moscow*, *Philip Crusius*, and *Otton Brugman*, Ambassadors from *Frederick* Duke of *Holstein-Sleswick*. He had built the City of *Frederickstadt*, upon the *Eyder*, where he was willing to establish the Trade of Silks, the most important, perhaps, of any in *Europe*. He judged it proper to seek it at its Source, which was in *Persia*, to which End it was necessary for him to maintain a Correspondence between his little Court, and that of the *Sophy*; his Views were to carry on this Commerce either by *Narva*, or *Archangel*; but that could not be done without Leave of the Czar to bring his Merchandizes through his Dominions, which was the Occasion of this Embassy, that arrived at *Moscow*, soon after another from *Sweden* on the same Subject. The Czar granted to the Duke of *Holstein* what he had refused to several other Princes, perhaps because

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

cause he was pretty well satisfied that the Enterprize would come to nothing. While these Ambassadors were at *Moscow*, the Czarina was brought to Bed of a Daughter, who was baptized by the Name of *Sophia*.

THE Peace which the Czar concluded with *Wladislaus*, King of *Poland*, restored his Affairs to that Tranquillity which was so agreeable to his Temper, so that having nothing to fear from without, he applied himself entirely to regulate all Disorders in the State, and look into the Concerns of his own Family, and above all Things to provide for the Education of the *Czarewitz*, who was to succeed him in the Throne. He appointed, for his Governor, *Boris Iwanowitz Morosou*, whom we shall find acting a great Part under the Reign of his Pupil.

THE Czar, *Michael Theodorowitz*, was so much respected by all his Neighbours, for his Equity, his Prudence, and his Piety, that there were seen at his Court all the rest of his Reign, Ambassadors from all the Princes about him, as well in *Asia* as *Europe*, who courted the Friendship of so great a Monarch. Even the *Cossacks*, who were Allies of *Poland*, were oftentimes, during the Reign of this Prince, forced to have Recourse to Arms, to deliver themselves from the Tyranny of the *Polish* Nobility, and to preserve the Privileges that they had acquired by the Services which they had done to *Poland*, as well against the *Turks* as *Tartars*. These People several Times proposed to the Czar to put themselves under his Protection, and assist him to take Vengeance on the *Poles* for the
the

the Mischiefs they had occasioned in *Russia*. But the Czar, a religious Observer of Treaties, and preferring the Advantages of Peace and Tranquillity, to the Tumult of War, contented himself with maintaining the *Cossacks* in their good Intentions for *Russia*, without coming to a Rupture with *Poland*.

DEATH, at length, put an End to this Prince's peaceful Reign, on the 12th of *July* 1645, and which may be accounted the true Glory of a Prince, to the universal Grief of his whole People, who deplored his Loss like that of a Father. *Michael Theodorowitz* left but two Children, the Czarewitz *Alexis Michaelowitz*, and the Princess *Irene*, who was betrothed to a Count of *Holstein*, *Christiern Wolmar*; but who died without being married, in the Year 1656.

The End of the Third Book.



THE



THE
HISTORY
OF
RUSSIA,
To the End of the REIGN of the
Empress CATHARINE.

BOOK IV.

The CONTENTS.
*The Reigns of Alexis Michaelowitz, and
Theodore.*

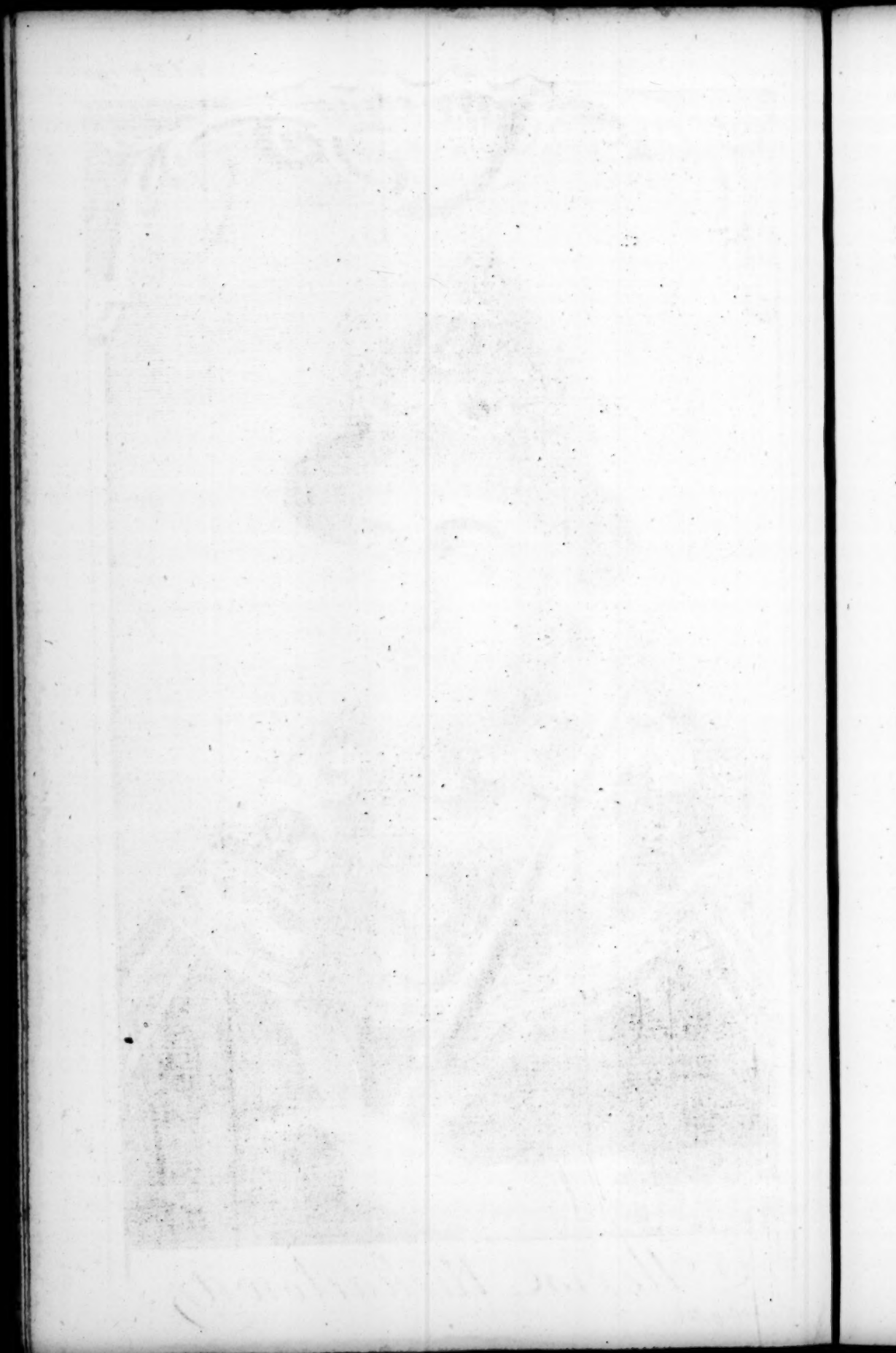


THE very next Day after the Death of the Czar, the Knezes and Boyars set the Crown upon the Head of his Son *Alexis Michaelowitz*, without waiting for the tedious Ceremonies that were commonly made use of at the Coronation of the Czars; the Knez *Boris Iwanowitz Morosou*, his Governor, not thinking it proper to give Time to unquiet Spirits to form Designs, and enter into Cabals against the Prince,



Alexis Michaelowitch.

C. Mosley Sc^t



Prince, on Account of his Youth, he being then but in the sixteenth Year of his Age.

AFTER the Coronation of the young Czar, the Knez *Morofou*, to whom *Michael Theodorowitz* had particularly recommended the Care of his Son, changed his Office of Governor into that of Confident and Prime Minister, and took upon him the same Authority in Affairs of State, as he had had over the Prince in the Life-time of his Father. The Czarina, Mother of the young Czar, died eight Days after his Coronation; and as this Prince had a true Regard for his Mother, he shewed his Affection for her, by the Favours he bestowed on all her Family; but it not being for the Interest of *Morofou* to have any Spies upon his Actions about the Court, he took Care that considerable Places should be given to all these People; but they were such as kept them at a Distance from *Moscow*. On the other Hand, he brought to Court, and placed about the Person of the Prince, his own Relations, Friends, Creatures, and, in short, such Persons whose Fortune might depend upon his.

PRINCES cannot see, nor do all Things themselves, wherefore a faithful Minister, who has the Interests of the State, which are those of his Prince, at heart, is an inestimable Treasure; a Minister who serves the State as he ought, must be more careful of that, than of his own Interest; for any Man, if he pleases, may neglect his own Interests, but he must not do so with Regard to his Country; we are to serve that on its own Account, and without any particular Self-Love.

Love. It would have been happy for the young Czar, if these had been the Principles of *Morofou*. He certainly loved his Prince tenderly, but it was too much with Regard to his own Interest ; from whence all the Faults he committed. For he no sooner took the Helm in his Hand, but his Ambition, charmed with the Prospect before him, suggested to him all Manner of Ways to maintain himself in so brave a Post, and to anchor so well, that all the Storms, which Envy must inevitably raise against him, might not be able to overset him.

To succeed herein, he employed two Means the most efficacious ; the first was to keep the Czar, as much as possible, from concerning himself in Affairs, by continually engaging him in Parties of Pleasure ; the next was to provide a Wife for him, who, being obliged to the Minister for this great Fortune, might use all her Power in guiding the Will of the Czar to his Purposes. He cast his Eyes on the Daughters of the Boyar *Ilia Danilowitz Miloslauski*, who was very much attached to him, but whose Fortune being but very moderate, he could make no great Figure. The Daughters of this Boyar were extremely handsome, especially the eldest. *Morofou* resolved to marry her himself, which his Master should not make Choice of, and thus he would not only become Brother-in-Law to the Czar, who for that Reason would be the more engaged in his Preservation, but by the Means of his Wife should be able to insinuate into the Czarina, and by her into the Czar, what he had a Mind to.

This

This Project succeeded, the Daughters of *Miloslauski* having been invited to Court, the Czar no sooner cast his Eye on the eldest, but he was charmed, and without debating long upon the Matter, he told *Miloslauski* the same Day, that he would honour him with his Alliance, and marry his Daughter. This Compliment was accompanied by such Presents as were capable of putting the Father, the Daughters, and all the Family in a Condition of appearing at Court in a Manner agreeable to the Father-in-Law, and Allies of their Sovereign. The Czar and the young Lady were affianced, according to the Custom in *Russia*, on the Sunday before *Septuagesima*, in the Year 1647, and eight Days after, the Nuptial Ceremony was performed with all the Magnificence usual on the like Occasions. From that Time *Morosou* and *Miloslauski* associating themselves with *Leponti Stepanowitz Plesseou*, first Judge of the * *Smenskoi Duor*, formed a Kind of Triumvirate, and for a while governed the whole *Russian* Empire.

DURING some of the last Years of the Reign of the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz*, a new Impostor had begun to shew himself in *Poland*. His Name was *Timoska Ancudina*, who was the Son of a Linen-Draper of the City of † *Wologda*. *Olearius* gives the following Account of this Man.

* The Name of the principal Court of Judicature in *Moscow*.

† This is one of the strongest Towns in *Russia*, situated upon the *Dwina*, on the Road from *Archangel* to *Moscow*, a Place of great Trade.

A particular
Account of
that Impostor.

DEMKO ANKUDINA, the Father of *Timoska*, having observed somewhat of more than ordinary Wit in him, had brought him up to Writing and Reading, which having attained, he was looked upon as a very excellent Person among those who have no farther Acquaintance with Learning. The Excellency of his Voice, and his Skill in singing Hymns at Church, recommended him to the Archbishop of the Place, who took him into his Service; wherein *Ankudina* behaved so well, that the Archbishop having a Kindness for him, married him to a Grandchild of his. This Alliance, which might have been very advantageous to him, proved the first Occasion of his Ruin; for he presently began, in his Letters, to assume the Quality of Son-in-Law to the *Weyvode* of *Wologda* and *Vellicopermia*. Having, after the Archbishop's Death, squandered away his Wife's Fortune, he came, with his Family, to *Moscow*, where, upon the Recommendation of a Friend of the Archbishop's, he found an Employment in the *Novazetvert*, that is, the Office where such as keep common Tipling-Houses are obliged to take the Wine, strong Waters, and Hydromel, which they sell by Retail, and where they give an Account of what they have spent. *Timoska* was made Receiver there, but became so unfaithful, that the first Accompt he made, he could not bring in what was due to the Czar by two hundred Crowns; and as great Exactness is expected in these Accompts in *Muscovy*, he put his Invention upon the Rack to make up the Sum he was deficient in. To this End he
went

went to one of his Fellow-Officers, named *Basili Gregorowitz Spilki*, who had christened a Child of his, and done him several Kindnesses, when Occasion required, and told him, that one of the chief Merchants of *Wologda*, one to whom he was very much obliged, being come to the City, he had invited him to Dinner, and would be glad to let him see his Wife, intreating him to lend him his Wife's Pearls and Rings, that he might present her in a Condition suitable to his Employment. The other comply'd without any Difficulty, nay, without any Thing to shew from *Timoska* of his having received them, though they were worth above a thousand Crowns. *Timoska*, instead of pawning the Jewels to make up his Accompts, sold them outright, made Use of the Money, and confidently averred to his Friend, that he had never lent him any. *Spilki* clapt him in Prison, but having no Evidence to convict him, he could not hinder his being set at Liberty: *Timoska* had some Difference with his Wife, who often reproached him with his Perfidiousness, and other Vices too shocking to be named; so that fearing, on the one Side, to be called to Account for what he was in Arrear to the Czar; and, on the other, that his Wife might happily be the first that should accuse him, bethought him one Day to send his Son to a Friend of his, to shut up his Wife in a Stove, and to set the House on Fire, in which his Wife was burnt.

HAVING done thus, he went into *Poland*, but so secretly, that it was thought at *Moscow* the same Fire had consumed him, with

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

the rest of his Family. It was about the Year 1643, that *Timoska* went away; but hearing in 1645, that the Czar, or Great Duke, was to send an Ambassador to the King of *Poland*, and that his being at the Court of *Warsaw* was known in *Muscovy*, he went in the Year 1646 to *Cbmielniski*, General of the *Cossacks*, and begged his Protection against the Persecutions which he suffered, upon no other Account than this, that the Czar knew him to be a near Kinsman to the Prince *Theodore Basilowitz Zuski*.

HE had Wit enough to carry on the Imposture, and had got such an Influence over *Cbmielniski*, that he began to grow considerable, when a *Muscovian Poslanick*, named *Jacob Kossou*, who had been sent to this *Cossack* General, knew him, and advised him to return to *Moscow*, and endeavour to make up the Sum which was due from him to the Czar, which was not so large, but, that having paid it, through the Intercession of Friends he might get his Pardon; for it was not yet known, that he pretended to be the Son of the Czar *Theodore Basilowitz Zuski*. But this Course he thought not safe, and, fearing he might be secured, he went, in the Year 1648, to *Constantinople*, where he abjured the Christian Religion, and was circumcised. He staid not long there, but fearing to be punished for some Crime he had committed there also, he went into *Italy*, and so to *Rome*, where he became a *Roman Catholick*. Thence he went, in the Year 1650, to *Vienna*, and from thence into *Transilvania*, to Prince *Ragotski*, who gave him Letters of Recommendation

dation to *Christina*, Queen of Sweden. This Princess received him kindly, and giving Credit to what he related, allowed him an honourable Subsistence. The *Muscovite* Merchants, who were then at *Stockholm*, soon acquainted the Czar with the Imposture that was carrying on by this Man, who now stuck not to give out every where, that he was the Son of *Theodore Basilowitz Zuski*. The Czar immediately sent to *Stockholm* the aforesaid *Koslou*, who had seen him with *Chmielniski*, in the *Ukraine*, to desire the Queen to deliver up the Impostor; but *Timoska*, who knew that Enquiry would be made for him, was already got away. His Man, or rather his Companion, whose Name was *Kostka*, or *Constantine*, having staid behind him on some Business, was taken, and sent chained to *Moscow*, where *Timoska's* Mother and Kindred were put to the Rack, and some of them executed. A short Time after, *Timoska* himself was discovered at *Revel* in *Livonia*, where the Queen ordered him to be arrested; but having found Means to escape out of Prison, he went, by the Way of *Holland*, to *Brussels*, and there saw the Arch-Duke *Leopold*. From thence he went to *Wittenberg*, and *Leipsick*, where he made Profession of the *Lutheran* Religion, and writ himself his Confession of Faith in *Latin*. Thence he went to *Neustadt*, in the Duchy of *Holstein*, where *Peter Miklaf*, who had brought Letters from the Czar to the Duke of *Holstein*, got him secured. He was carried thence to *Gottorp*, where he was well guarded, till the Czar had sent express Order for the bringing his Person to *Russia*.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

The Czar's Letters to the Duke of *Holstein* upon this Occasion, are inserted at the End of this Volume.

ONE of the Deputies sent on this Business, was *Spilki*, the same whom *Timoska* had cheated of his Wife's Pearls and Rings; he desir'd he might see the Prisoner, and have Leave to speak to him in the Presence of some Officers of the Court. But *Timoska* behaved himself as if he knew him not, and would not speak the *Muscovite*, but the *Polish* Language, purposely to gravel the other, who could not speak it well. *Spilki* asked him, whether his Name was not *Timoska Ankudina*, and whether he had not robbed the Czar's Treasury, and committed several other enormous Crimes? *Timoska* made him Answer, that it might be *Timoska Ankudina* had robbed the Czar's Treasury, or converted his Money to his own Use, but that he was not concerned in it; that his Name was *Johannes Sinensis*, and in the *Polish* Language *Zuiski*, cunningly avoiding to hint at what he said before, to wit, that he was Son of the Great Duke, *John Basilowitz Zuiski*. But when *Spilki* asked him, whether he remembered not his Life past; the other derided him, gave him injurious Language, and added, that he could not acknowledge him in the Quality of a *Poslanick*, since he was but a poor Shop-keeper, and Seller of Pins, alluding to his Name, *Spilki*, which signifies a Pin-Maker.

TIMOSKA would needs one Day intreat the Duke of *Holstein* to appoint his Chancellor, and some others of his Council, to receive from his own Mouth the State of his Affairs.

They asked him what House and Family he was of, and whether he was of Kin to the Czar; why the Czar persecuted him, and wherein he could any Way prejudice him? He answered, that it was known his Name was *Jobannes Sinensis*, and in the *Polish* Language *Zuiski*; that at his Baptism he had been named *Timotheus*; that he was the Son of *Basile Domitian Zuiski*, and that he had been so named from a City of *Muscovy*, call'd *Suia*: That he was originally a *Muscovite*, but born and brought up in *Poland*, in the Province of *Novogarka Severskbio*, and that he was hereditary Lord of *Hukragina Severska*, upon the Frontiers of *Muscovy*; that the Czar was not his Kinsman, inasmuch as the Czar's Father had been but a Gentleman, whereas his was a Prince born, and that was the Reason why the Czar persecuted him; that the Cham of *Tartary*, who was then engaged in a War against the King of *Poland*, would have employed him in a War against the Czar, but he had a greater Affection for the Country of his Predecessors, than to trouble her Quiet; that it was in his Power to send above an hundred thousand Men into *Muscovy*, but that God, of his Goodness, had diverted his Thoughts from doing any such Thing. He had wrote somewhat to the same Purpose to the Patriarch; for the *Poslanick*, who came from *Sweden*, having entered into a Familiarity with him, had advised him to write to the Patriarch, as the most likely Person to procure his Pardon, he resolved to do it, and delivered his Letter to the *Poslanick*, in which he wrote to the Patriarch, that

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

he was indeed a *Muscovite*, and, at his Baptism, had been named *Timothy*, whereof the Word *Timoska* is the Diminutive. That he had had a Desire to enter *Muscovy* with an Army of three hundred thousand Men, but that he had been diverted from that pernicious Design by the Guardian Angel of *Muscovy*. That hereupon he came to himself, and was resolved to return into his Country; whereas had he been minded to continue his wicked Life, it had been easy for him to get out of the Prison at *Neustadt*, but that it was his Intention to return into *Muscovy* voluntarily, with those whom the Czar had appointed to conduct him. The *Poslanick*, who doubted not, but that upon this Letter he would have made such a Confession as might have convinced all who should hear it, opened it, and read it in his Presence; but he had to do with a Man, whom a small Matter would not force to betray himself. *Timoska* endeavoured to persuade the Duke of *Holstein*, that the *Poslanick* was a Cheat, and that the Letter was counterfeited, that he had never wrote it, and to make good what he said, he wrote another Letter, in a Stile and Character so very different from the other, that the *Poslanick*, mad to see himself so abused, flung it in his Face; whereupon *Timoska* took it up, and tore it to Pieces.

HOWEVER, the Distraction of his Conscience was but too apparent in the Inconsistency of his Depositions, and the Declarations he had made, both by Word of Mouth and Writing. For one while, he said, he was the Son of the Czar *Basilowitz Zuski*; and
another,

another, that his Father's Name was *Basile Domitian*, though it was known, that at that Time there were but three Lords of the House of *Zuski*, and not any of them whose Name was *Domitian*. Sometimes he would be thought a *Polander*, and would confidently maintain, that he could make it as clear as the Sun at Noon, that he was no *Muscovite*, and that there was not any Thing in his Person, Language, or Manner of Life, which might persuade the World that he was. Indeed his Beard was quite after another Fashion than the *Russians* ordinarily wore theirs. He had the *Latin, Italian, German, and Turkish* Languages so well, as to be understood in any of them, and he had such an Art in counterfeiting all Sorts of Hands, that it would have been difficult to have convicted him by that which he wrote in his first Employment.

TIMOSKA perceiving, that all his Evasions would not serve his Turn, fell into Despair, and would have killed himself. For, being on his Way to *Travemunde*, to be shipp'd off, not far from *Neustadt*, he cast himself headlong from the Waggon, and shuffled himself under the Wheels, in Hopes they would have passed over his Body; but the Ground being soft and sandy, his Fall did him no Hurt, and the Waggon was immediately stopped; so that he was put up in his Place again, and so fastened, that he had no Chance of making another Escape. He seemed to be in very good Humour all the Way, yet sought all the Means he could imagine to compass his own Death; but he was so narrowly

TIMOSKA ex-
deavours to
make arway
with himself.

watched,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

watched, that at last being out of all Hope to effect it, the Joy he had expressed before was much abated. Coming to *Novogorod*, he fell into so deep a Melancholy, that he was become absolutely disconsolate; which yet hindered not, but that amidst the greatest Tortures, he expressed an admirable Constancy, if that resolute Obstinacy, in which he persisted, may be so called.

Put to the Torture.

As soon as he came to *Moscow*, he was put to the Torture, in the Presence of divers Persons of Quality; but he impudently told them, that, of all the Boyars, he would not vouchsafe to speak to any but the Knez *Nikita Iwanowitz Romanow*, and him only, as knowing him by Fame, and on Account of his Goodness and Courage, he should be glad to have some Discourse withal. While two Boyars were gone to find *Nikita*, *Timoska* desired somewhat to drink; upon which some *Quas* was presented to him in a wooden Dish, but he would have *Hydromel*, and that in a Silver Cup; but, after they had so far comply'd with his Humour, he only put it to his Lips, and would not drink. Seeing *Nikita* and the other two Boyars come in, he gave them a civil Salute, but still affirmed, that he was Son of *Theodore Basilowitz Zuski*, tho' it was plainly proved, that he was the Son of *Demko Ankudina*, the Linen-Draper of *Wologda*, and that the Czar *Zuski* had had no Children, and but only two Brothers, the Knez *Demetrius Basilowitz*, and *John Basilowitz Zuski*, who both died without Issue Male: For of these three Brothers, who were sent Prisoners into *Poland*, to the Election

tion of *Wladislaus*, in the Year 1610, with the rest of the Czar's Kindred, the two eldest died there, and the third was released, and sent back into *Russia*, where he died some few Years before this Examination of *Timofka*. It is true, there was another Lord of the same Family, but he had left only one Son, named *Michael Basilowitz Zuski Scapin*, who died without Issue, when the *Swedes* took the City of *Novogorod*, in the Year 1616.

WHILE *Timofka* endured the Torture, they brought his Mother to him, who exhorted him to acknowledge his Crime. He seemed, at first, to be moved at her Presence, but persisted in affirming he knew her not, no more than he did one *John Pescou*, with whom he had left his Son, when he quitted *Russia*. This Man represented to him how much he was to blame, for behaving himself so in the Condition he was in, and told him, that he must at last pull off the Vizard, which he had made use of so many Years to cheat the World, and disturb his Country, conjuring him to own his Son, and rely no longer on Elusions and Impostures, which would only aggravate his Misery, and bring a greater Weight of God's Vengeance upon him. He was so moved hereat, that he would not speak one Word afterwards, though there were divers Persons brought before him, who had known him while he was employed in the *Novazetvert*, or Tavern-Office.

HE was searched, and found to be circumcised: The next Day they put him again to the Torture, but he would not speak at all;
fo

Executed.

so they immediately carried him to the great Market-Place, where his Sentence was pronounced, and presently put in Execution. They cut off, with an Ax, first, his right Arm, below the Elbow, then the left Leg, below the Knee, and afterwards the left Arm and right Leg, and last of all his Head. The Members were set upon Stakes, and the Trunk left upon the Ground, which the Dogs devoured in the Night, and the next Morning the Executioner's Servants dragged the Members to the Place where all the City Dirt was thrown.

His Man *Kostka* was pardoned, because he had confessed the Truth; but, in Regard to his having been unfaithful to his Prince, he was sentenced to lose three Fingers of his right Hand; but this Punishment the Patriarch got to be mitigated, and forasmuch as the Religion of the *Muscovites* oblige them to make the Sign of the Cross with the right Hand, he obtained the Favour of having the Sentence executed in the left, and he was then sent into *Siberia*. The same Day that *Timoska* was put to Death, an Envoy, who was lately come from *Poland*, being to have his publick Audience of the Czar, was conducted thro' the Market-Place just at the Time of the Execution, that he might be an Eye-Witness of it, and give an Account, in *Poland*, of the Catastrophe of that Impostor, who had been looked upon there as the Son of the Czar *Theodore Basilowitz Zuski*. But this did not hinder the *Polanders* from afterwards producing another Impostor, as we shall see. But to resume the Thread of our History.

THE

THE Triumvirate of *Morofou*, and his Colleagues, was supported with so much Imprudence and Haughtiness, that the People, accustomed to the mild and wise Government of the late Czar *Michael Theodorowitz*, could not tell how to bear the Insolence of these Favourites. *Plesseou*, in his Office, sold Justice, and not satisfied with the Presents which he received with both Hands, he would reduce the Parties to the utmost Misery by his studied Delays; and as to those who were accused of any Crimes, he had always false Witnesses ready to serve any Purposes, particularly to bring in Charges against those who were rich enough to redeem themselves out of his Persecutions; imprisoning and oppressing them, till they purchased their Liberties with the Ruin of their Estates. One of the Instruments of his Tyranny, was *Peter Tichonouitz Trochaniotou*, his Brother-in-Law, who was one of those whom in *Russia* they call *Ocolnits*, out of which Number are chosen the *Boyars*, and he had the Management of the *Puskarsje Pre-cause*, that is to say, was Overseer of the Armourers, Cannoniers, and all the Mechanics belonging to the Arsenal, who were very much oppressed by him; for, instead of paying them monthly, as they were wont to do in *Russia*, where all who were in the Czar's Service were so punctually paid, that if they came not the first Day of the Month for their Money, it was sent home to them; he, on the contrary, kept them several Months without it, forced them to compound, and to give Acquittances for the whole Sum, tho' they received but some Part of it.

The Oppressions of MOROSOU, and his Associates.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

BESIDES these Things, Trading was obstructed, Monopolies granted, and no Employment could be had, but by dearly purchasing the good Pleasure of the Favourite *Morofou*. One got a Patent, prohibiting the farther Use of the ordinary *Ells*, purposely to oblige the People to buy Iron ones with the Czar's Mark upon them; but instead of felling them at eight or ten-pence a Piece, as they were only worth, they could not be had under a Crown; by which Means a vast Sum of Money was raised, because there was a Necessity for them to be had in all Parts of the Kingdom. Another contrived the Raising the *Poude* (that is forty Pounds) of Salt, to thirty Pence, which before cost but twenty: But instead of making an Advantage of this, they found, at the Year's End, that the Dearness of the Salt had so hindered the Sale of it, that the Czar's Revenue was not only very much diminished, but Abundance of Fish was lost for want of sufficient salting; so that had it not been their Design rather to oppress the People, than to promote the Czar's Service, they would soon have put down that new Imposition. The Inhabitants of *Moscow*, who had lived very quietly under the late Czar's Reign, could not but discover their Resentment at these Concussions in the State.

THEY had their Assemblies about the Churches, at the Hours when their Devotions brought them thither, and resolved, at last, to petition the Czar. And as no one single Person would, or durst undertake to deliver the Petition to him, they agreed to do it in a
Body,

Body, as he came out of the Palace to go to his Devotion, or on some Party of Pleasure. Their main Spleen was against *Leponti Stepanowits Plesseou*, and their Desire that his Place might be filled by some Person of Honour, from whom they might expect more Justice. They had their Petition ready, and sought two or three Times an Opportunity of giving it to their Prince; but the Boyars, who attended him, took it from them, and making a Report of it, as they had been instructed by *Morosou*, the Petition was not answered, nor the People relieved. This happened so often, that the People at last resolved to take some other Course, and make their Complaints by Word of Mouth, on the first Opportunity that should offer itself.

ON the 6th of July 1648, they took their Advantage of a Procession, which the Czar made to a Monastery in the City named *Sterenskoi*. The People were got together in the Market-Place, according to Custom, to see him pass by; but at his Return they broke through those who attended him, and, laying hold of his Bridle, stopp'd him, and intreated him to hear the Complaints they had to make to him, concerning the Injustices and Violences committed by *Plesseou*, desiring there might be put in his Place some Person of Integrity, who should better supply so important a Charge. The Czar, though a little startled at their Procedure, still kept his Countenance, and seemed not a little troubled at the Grievances of his good Subjects, promised, that he would examine how the Matter stood, and that they should receive Satisfaction.

A great Tumult of the People in Moscow.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

faction. The People desired no more, and were going away well satisfied with that Answer, when the Boyars Friends of *Plesseou* would needs give the People abusive Language, thrust some off their Horses, and struck others with their Whips; at which being greatly incensed, they so pelted the Boyars with the Stones, that they were forced to make all the Speed they could to the Palace, whither the People pursued them so warmly, that it was much ado for the Guard to stop them while the others got into the Czar's Chamber. This Resistance of the *Strelitzes*, rather the more inflamed than abated the Fury of the People, who threatened to force the Czar's Lodgings, and take away all they found there, if *Plesseou* was not immediately put into their Hands.

MOROSOU came out into a Balcony, and endeavoured to appease the People, exhorting them, in the Name of his Czarish Majesty, to go all to their Homes, and make no farther Tumult: But they told him, that they had as much to say to him as to the other. Accordingly, some went immediately to his Palace, which was forced, ransacked, and demolished in a Moment, having thrown one of his Servants out of the Window, who had attempted to make some Opposition.

THEIR Animosity was such, that they spared not even the Images of their Saints, for which the *Russians* were always wont to have a great Veneration: But they shewed some Respect to *Morosou's* Wife, taking away only her Jewels and Pearls, which they threw
into

into the Street, and frightening her, by telling her, that if they had not looked upon her, as Sister-in-law to the Czar, they would have cut her to Pieces.

FROM the House of *Morosou* they went to those of *Plesseou*, *Trochanitou*, the Chancellor, and of all who had any Relation to, or Dependence on the Favourite, where they found such Riches, that Pearls were sold by Handfuls, and so cheap, that a Man might have bought a Hatful for thirty Crowns; and the finest Sables, and gold and silver Stuffs, were sold almost for nothing.

THE Chancellor of *Russia*, who had farmed the Imposition upon the Salt, was one of the Victims to this popular Fury. He lay, at that Time, sick in Bed, having received a dangerous Hurt by a Fall from his Horse; but hearing that *Morosou's* House had been ransacked, and not doubting but that they would come next to his, he hid himself under a Heap of Wood, which was piled up to serve the Stoves; and to take off all Suspicion, he caused himself to be covered with some Flitches of Bacon; so that he had certainly saved his Life, had he not been betrayed by one of his Servants, who taking Advantage of his Master's Misfortunes, laid hold on a good round Sum of Money, and made off to *Nisnovogorod*; but before he went away he discovered to the People the Place where the Chancellor, his Master, lay concealed. The enraged Multitude took him out by the Heels, and dragg'd him down Stairs into the Court, where they cudgelled him to Death. The Body was thrown upon

The Chancellor of RUSSIA murdered by the People.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

the Dunghill, and the House plundered of every Thing that was in it.

WHILE these Disorders were committed in the City, they had Time to barricado themselves in the Palace, against the Insolencies of the People, who continued in Arms all Night between the 6th and 7th of *July*, and in such a Manner, as shewed they only waited for Day-light to begin again. Whereupon Orders were sent to the *German* Officers and Soldiers to meet at their several Rendezvouses, in the City, and from thence to come to the Czar's Relief in the Castle. They marched with Drums beating and Colours flying, and the *Muscovites*, instead of opposing, gave them Way, and told them, that they had no Quarrel against them, and knew them to be Persons of Honour, who approved not of the Peculations of the Government.

THE CZAR, after this, sent out the Knez *Nikita Iwanowitz Romanow*, whom he knew the People much respected, to endeavour to disperse their Assembly. He came to them, Cap in Hand, and told them, that he conceived they ought to be satisfy'd with the Assurance, which the Czar had given them the Day before, that he would remedy the Disorders of which they complained: That his Majesty had commanded him to tell them as much, and to advise them to go every Man to his Home, that he might the better perform what he had promised them. This Message was well received, and the People made Answer, that they were not dissatisfy'd with the Czar, but those who, under his Name, abused his Authority, and that they

would not stir till they had delivered up to them *Boris Iwanowitz Morosou*, *Leponti Stephanouitz Plesseou*, and *Peter Tichonouitz Trachanistou*, that they might revenge on their Heads the Mischief they had done the whole Kingdom. *Romanow* gave them Thanks for the kind Answer they had made to his Proposition, and told them he would acquaint the Czar with the Zeal and Affection which they expressed towards him; that he doubted not but Order would be taken for the Execution of those three Lords, but that he could safely take his Oath, that *Morosou* and *Trachanistou* had made their Escapes; and for the third, he should be immediately put to Death. Accordingly *Romanow* was no sooner returned to the Czar, but Word was sent to the People, that *Plesseou* was coming to be sacrificed; that the other two should come to the same End, as soon as they were found, and that they might send for the Executioner to do his Office. He was soon found, being at the Castle Gate with his Servants, whence he came about a Quarter of an Hour after, leading *Plesseou* to the Market Place, to cut off his Head. But the People spared him the Trouble, falling upon him with Cudgels so outrageously, that they dispatched him in a Moment. They dragged the Body through the Dirt, following it with all the most bitter Execrations that could be thought of; till, at last, a Monk, whom the Deceased had ordered to be cudgelled, cut off his Head.

PLESSEOU put
to Death.

Morosou had indeed made his Escape; and meeting with some of the People who were searching after him, had the good For-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

tune to avoid them, till, by private Ways, he got into the Castle again. And that it might not be thought that the Czar had consented to the Escape of the others, some were sent after *Trachanistou* to apprehend him, which was done near the *Troitsky* Monastery, about twelve Leagues from *Moscow*.

TRACHANIS-
TOU put to
Death.

ON the 8th he was brought from the *Smenskoi Duor*, that is, the Place where his Master had sat as Judge; whereupon the Czar commanded his Head to be cut off. This Execution wrought so much upon the People, that after they had been informed, that *Morosou* had been seen in the Country, and none knew what was become of him, they forbore any farther to press the Czar to deliver up a Man, who, they thought, was not in his Power; and about Eleven o'Clock in the Morning every Man went to his own Home.

A great Fire
at Moscow.

IN the Afternoon several Houses in the *Metroski* and *Twerski* Quarters were set on Fire; whither the People all ran, with a Design rather to steal than quench the Flames, which in a very short Time had consumed the whole Quarter of the City called *Czargorod*, reducing all within the *White-Wall* to Ashes as far as the River *Neglina*; and then, getting over that into the Czar's Taverns and Houses of strong Waters, it grew so violent, that it was feared it would have buried the Palace itself in Ashes. There was no Body to put a Stop to it; for those whose Business it was, were got so drunk, that, lying along in the Streets, the Fire within them, together with the Smoak of that which was then in its Way, in all Appearance, to burn down the whole

whole City, choaked them as they lay. At length a Monk dragging along an heavy Burthen called to some to help him to cast it into the Fire, saying, it was the abominable Carcass of *Plesseou*, and that nothing else would quench it; and, indeed, the Fire soon after abating, much was attributed to this pretended Miracle.

SOME Days after this terrible Accident, the Czar treated the *Strelitzes* with strong Waters and Hydromel; and his Father-in-law, *Ilia Danilowitz Miloslauski*, invited several Citizens to dine with him, and spent many Days together in Entertainments. The Patriarch also enjoined the Priests and Monks to endeavour to compose the unquiet Spirits of the People, and to exhort them to that Respect and Obedience to the higher Powers which their Religion and Consciences ought to oblige them to. All these Means had their desired Effect, especially when they found the Czar had filled the Places of those who had been executed, with honest and upright Men, and such as were deemed capable of the Employments they were charged withal: But *Morosou* was not yet out of Danger; the Czar was resolved to endeavour himself to bring him out of it: He therefore took the Occasion of a Procession to speak to the People, having *Nikita Iwanowitz Romanow* by his Side; and told them, that he was extremely troubled to hear of the Injuries and Violences done by *Plesseou* and *Trachanistou*, under his Name, but contrary to his Intention; that he had put into their Places, Persons of Integrity, and such as being acceptable to the People, would admi-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

nister Justice equally, and without Corruption; and that they might not fail therein, he would have an Eye upon them; that he repealed the Edict about the Imposition laid on Salt, and that he would immediately suppress all Monopolies; that they should enjoy all their Privileges, which, if Occasion were, he would augment. Whereupon the People having smitten their Forehead, and given his Majesty Thanks, the Czar resumed his Discourse, and said, That it was true indeed, he had promised to deliver up to them the Person of *Boris Iwanowitz Morosou*, and acknowledged, that he could not absolutely justify him, but that he could not also resolve to condemn him; that he hoped, the People would not deny the first Request he should make to them, which was, that they would pardon *Morosou*, only for that Time, as to what he might have displeased them in; that he would be answerable for him, and durst assure them, that *Morosou* should so behave himself for the future, as that they should have Occasion to speak well of him; that if they would not have him be any longer of his Council, he would dismiss him; but that he desired them to look upon that Lord as one who had been a Father to their Prince, and one who having married the Czarina's Sister, must needs be extremely dear to him, and consequently, that it would be very hard for him to consent to his Death. The Tears which accompany'd this Conclusion of the Czar's Speech, shewed plainly the Affection he had for that Favourite, and so moved the People, that they all cry'd out, *God grant his*
Ma-

MOROSOU
 pardoned.

Majesty a long and happy Life. God's and the Czar's Will be done. The Czar conceived an extraordinary Joy hereat, thanked the People, and highly commended the Zeal and Affection that they expressed for him.

SOME few Days after, *Morofou* appeared in publick, among those who attended the Czar, on a Pilgrimage he was making to the *Troit-sky* Monastery. He went uncovered from the Castle to the City Gate, saluting the People on both Sides with great Submission; and from that Time he laid hold on all Occasions to gratify and assist those who apply'd to him on any Business they had at Court.

THESE Sort of Events, where the People exert their Power, are sometimes necessary to re-establish that Justice and good Order which insolent Favourites, and covetous and ambitious Courtiers, have trod under Foot: And in this we find, that even the *Russians*, how much they are thought Slaves on most Occasions, can use desperate Means to recover their Freedom, when the Oppression of bad Ministers grows insupportable to them.

It was not long after this Tumult was quieted before another broke out in another Part of the Kingdom, upon the following Occasion: It had been for some Time, that a War seemed almost inevitable between *Russia* and *Sweden*, on Account of the Disorders committed on the Frontiers of the two States, by the Subjects of both Crowns, who each left their own Habitations, and passed over to the other Kingdom to avoid paying their Debts. The *Russians* made great Complaints; but when his Czarish Majesty, in the Year 1649,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

sent an Envoy, *Boris Iwanowitz Puskin*, into *Sweden*, to *Queen Christina*, and the Affair was examined into, it was found, that there were many more *Swedes* in *Russia* than *Russians* in *Sweden*: Whereupon it was agreed, that this Transmigration should be forbidden on both Sides for the future; but as the Czar, by this Means, had acquired a great Number of Subjects, he was to pay to the Queen of *Sweden* one hundred and ninety thousand Roubles, Part in Money, and Part in Rye, and the first Payment was to be made in the Spring of the Year 1650. Accordingly the Queen of *Sweden's* Commissary, coming into *Russia* at the Time agreed on, received the Money; and an Order was sent to *Theodore Amilianou*, a Merchant of *Pleskow*, to provide as much Rye as amounted to ninety thousand Crowns.

THIS avaritious Man taking this Opportunity to make an Advantage to himself, caused all the Rye, wherever it was, to be seized, and would not permit any private Person to purchase one single Bushel without his Leave, which they were sure to pay dear enough for. The Inhabitants of *Pleskow* were so impatient under this Oppression, that they not only complained of the Covetousness of the *Swedes*, but charged *Puskin* with Prevarication in his Employment, and Perfidy to his Prince: And presuming that this Negotiation was concluded, contrary to the Czar's Intentions, they endeavoured to engage the City of *Novogorod* in their Quarrel, and went so far, that some of the chief Merchants having declared for them, the *Weyvade* had much ado
to

*A Tumult at
PLESKOW.*

to prevent an Insurrection of the whole City. Both these, and the others resolved, that they would stop the Money, when it was to be transported into *Sweden*, and that they would no longer endure the Contract made for the Rye, because it would in all Likelihood starve the Country. With this Intention they sent three Deputies to *Moscow*, viz. a Merchant, a *Cossack*, and a *Strelitz*, with Orders to know whether this Treaty was made, and put in Execution, with the Czar's Consent.

IN the mean Time, without waiting the Return of their Deputies, they ransacked *Amilianou's* House, and tortured his Wife, to make her confess where her Husband, who had made his Escape, had laid up his Money. The Weyvode came in Hopes to prevent the Disorder, but was forced out of the City, and the neighbouring Nobility were invited to come in, and join with them against Monopolies and Patentees. The three Deputies were no sooner returned to *Novogorod*, but the Weyvode caused them to be put in Irons, and in that Condition sent them to *Moscow*, whither, at the same Time, came the Weyvode of *Pleskow*, and the Merchant *Amilianow*. Intelligence was brought, that the People of *Pleskow* had robb'd and abused a *Swedish* Merchant, whereupon the Czar sent back the Weyvode, and with him a Boyar, to endeavour to prevent any farther Disorders. Those of *Pleskow*, who would not at first receive them, at length opened their Gates; but it was only to put the Weyvode in Prison, and affront the Boyar, who had the Imprudence,

at

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

at so unseasonable a Time, to treat them with so much Severity, that the People fell upon him with Cudgels, and pursued him to a Monastery, where they beat him so, that he was left for dead.

HOWEVER, the Czar executed the Treaty made with *Sweden*, but paid Money instead of Rye, sending along with the *Swedish* Commissary a good Convoy of *Strelitzes*, who were to bring him to the Frontiers of *Sweden*. He gave Order, at the same Time, to *John Nikitowitz Gavensky*, to assemble the Nobility of the neighbouring Provinces, who, being supported by a good Body of Troops, besieged *Pleskow*, and took it: The Inhabitants being obliged to make their Peace, by delivering up the Authors of the Tumult, who were put to Death, or sent into *Siberia*.

THE Reign of *Alexis Michaelowitz* was troubled with several Tumults and Revolts of this Sort, which, however, did not prevent his doing great Things, and maintaining two important Wars, one with *Poland*, and the other with *Sweden*.

THE Kingdom of *Poland* had been terribly harrassed, during the last Years of the Reign of *Wladislaus*, by the Revolt of the *Cossacks* under the Command of the famous *Chmielniski*; but it may be said, that they drew all their Misfortunes upon themselves, by their Manner of treating the Chief of the *Cossacks*, and the rest of that warlike Nation. When *Wladislaus* died, they had penetrated a great Way into *Poland*, where they committed unheard of Cruelties and Devastations, and were so powerful, that it was thought, that
who-

whoever had the Support of the *Cossacks* might be chose Successor to *Wladislaus*. The Czar *Alexis* had then a fine Army on foot, which he offered the *Polanders* to employ for their Service, if they would give the Crown to him; but they not listening to his Proposition, he used Menaces, which had likewise no Effect; for *France*, having interested herself to place a Prince upon the Throne, who should be devoted to her, employed her Money so properly to engage the *Cossacks* to withdraw during the Time of the Election, that she got the Prince *John Casimir*, Brother of *Wladislaus*, to be chosen, on Condition that he should marry the Princess of *Gonzague*, his Brother's Widow.

THE new King would not meddle in the Difference between the *Poles* and the *Cossacks*, but thought the latter so much in the right, that when the Nobility pressed him to put himself at the Head of an Army to chastize the Rebels, as they called them, he answer'd them, that it was not well done to burn the Mills of *Cbmielniski*, or to abuse his Wife and Children. At length, the *Cossacks* abandoned before *Zbaras*, by the *Tartars*, their Allies, who offered to make Peace with *John Casimir*, were forced also to make their Peace; but as a great Part of them could not confide in the *Poles*, they sought Protection under the *Turks*, and some under the Czar.

ALTHOUGH the Czar *Alexis* had not been irritated by the Contempt with which the *Polanders* treated the advantageous Offers he made them to obtain the Crown, he would not have wanted a Subject for his declaring War

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

War with them. *Smolensko*, *Kiow*, *Czernibow*, which had been adjudged to them in the last Treaty of Peace, were Losses too considerable for the *Russians* to quietly put up with; they had not gained them, but by taking Advantage of the sorrowful Condition to which they themselves had reduced the Empire, by palming so many Impostors upon her; therefore had not the Czar the same Right, in his Turn, to profit by the deplorable State in which he now found these mortal Enemies of his Country? He did it with Success, marching a numerous Army of *Russians* and *Cossacks* towards *Smolensko*, which he sat down before.

THIS Siege lasted long, which is not surprising, when it is considered, that this is one of the strongest Places on the Frontiers, and that the *Polanders* had furnished it with a large Garison, and every Thing necessary to make a vigorous Resistance, foreseeing the Rupture that was to happen between them and his Czarish Majesty, which this Monarch, however, did not resolve on without the Advice of his whole Empire represented in Senate. After one Year compleat, the Town surrendered, and this Conquest opened a Door for the *Russian* Army into the very Heart of *Lithuania*, where they besieged *Vilna*, which held out not very long. The *Russians* lived at large in this Country, and caused such Misfortunes, as were long felt in the Great Duchy.

WHILE this Army found nothing to stop its Course almost to the Frontiers of *Prussia*, another Body more numerous, on Account of
fresh

fresh Succours from the *Cossacks*, went on with as little Opposition to the Banks of the *Borysthenes*, where all the Province of *Czerni-bow*, and the important City of *Kiow*, returned to the Obedience of their ancient Sovereign.

THE Misfortunes that *Poland* laboured under, were very much increased by the King of *Sweden*, *Charles Gustavus*, falling upon her on a sudden. *John Casimir* had, with very little Prudence, endeavoured to prevail upon *Christina*, Queen of *Sweden*, to protest against her Abdication in Favour of *Charles Gustavus*, her Cousin, and solicited the Archbishop of *Upsal*, and the States of the Kingdom, to take this Step in her Absence. *Charles*, justly irritated at so irregular a Conduct, entered *Poland*, which he almost entirely subdued in less than three Months. His *Polish* Majesty, having some Apprehensions of this Blow, had made a long Truce with the *Russians*, to whom he left all their Conquests which were not without the ancient Limits of *Russia*, upon Condition that a certain Sum should be paid him at different Times.

THUS the Czar, *Alexis Michaelowitz*, having the Honour to have blotted out the Shame, which the Loss of three fine Provinces had brought upon his Country, thought he might be at Leisure to apply himself to the peaceable Acts of Government; but the Jealousy that almost all the Nations of *Europe* had conceived of the Progress of the King of *Sweden's* Arms in *Poland*, obliged him to come again into the Field to stop the Rapidity of that Prince's Conquests. He had
Reason

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Reason to complain of the *Swedes*, who, in attacking their common Enemy, not satisfy'd with so many Provinces, had, by a Treaty made between *Magnus de la Gardie* and *Radziwil* appropriated to themselves the Great Duchy of *Lithuania*, which the Czar might look upon as his Conquest. This was sufficient Cause for him to carry his Arms into *Carelia*, *Ingria* and *Livonia*: The Troops which the Czar sent into the two first Provinces made no other Progress there than ravaging the open Country; but were beaten in several Places. The Weight of the War was in *Livonia*, where the *Russians* took *Dunebourg* and *Kokenhausen* by Assault, from whence they advanced before *Riga*, which they cannonaded for seven whole Months, without being able to make one Assault, altho' they were assisted by the *Polanders*: *Magnus de la Gardie* and *Helvesd*, who were in the Place, defending it with so much Bravery, and in many Sallies doing so much Damage to the Besiegers, that they were at length obliged to raise the Siege; after which a Truce was made, which was some Time after changed into a Peace, that was concluded at *Kardis*.

Another DE-
METRIUS.

TOWARDS the End of the Reign of *Wladislaus*, King of *Poland*, a new *Demetrius* had appeared in that Kingdom. Mere Chance, as it was said, had discovered him, and he was ignorant himself of his own Birth: But it is more likely, that *Wladislaus*, an ambitious Prince, who could not digest the Loss of the *Russian* Crown, had raised him up, and instructed him how to behave, that he might serve for a Pretext for his declaring War with
the

the Czar *Alexis*, if the *Cossacks* had not found so much Employment for him, that he had no Time to put his Project in Execution, which was, as the Protector of this *Demetrius*, to endeavour to place him upon the Throne; and if he succeeded, to put the Crown afterwards upon his own Head.

THIS *Demetrius* was a *Cossack*, and brought up among that People: He was well made, wanted not Wit, and seemed to be about 25 Years of Age. It is said, that going into the Baths, in the little Town of *Samburg*, in *Black Russia*, some Marks of an extraordinary Kind were observed upon his Back, that *Dmielouski*, the Treasurer of the Crown, being told of it, he sent for the young Man to come to him, asked him several Questions, and afterwards examined these strange Characters; but not being able to make any thing of them, he sent for a *Russian* Pope [or Priest] who read plainly, *Demetrius, the Son of Demetrius*. As learned Antiquaries every Day explain their obscure Inscriptions according to their own Fancies, so these Characters were made to signify, that this young Man was the Son of *Griska Utropoja*, the first Impostor that took upon him the Name of *Demetrius*. It was said, that his Mother, the Daughter of the Palatine of *Sendomir*, had been delivered of him in Prison, and that the Wife of a *Cossack*, who was in her Service, being brought to Bed, at the same Time, had taken the Son of that Princess, and given hers in his stead; that a *Russian* Priest having baptized the Son of the Princess, and seeing that he was likely to continue unknown, and pass only for the
Son

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Son of a poor Peasant, had imprinted those Characters that were between his Shoulders with a certain indelible Liquor. This is the Romance that was founded upon the Characters which, without Doubt, were put upon the Back of the *Cossack* for the present Purpose; and to render this Event the more miraculous, and make it believed, that Providence had a greater Hand in the Discovery of this young Man, it was given out, that his supposed Father and Mother were both dead, nobody knew where or when, so that some of the Domesticks, with whom the Princess had intrusted the Secret at her Death, had sought for them in vain.

It is easy to detect the Imposture of this whole History, if we recollect that of the second *Demetrius*, massacred by the *Tartars* at *Coluga*, and the Manner by which the Daughter of the Palatine of *Sendomir* was destroyed, by Order of the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz*. Be that as it may, this Impostor appeared at the Court of *Poland*, where he was treated as the Son of the Czar till the Death of *Wladislaus*, and where he had contracted a strict Friendship with the famous * *Galga*, the *Tartarian* Prince, Prisoner of *Wladislaus*, to whom the King generously gave his Liberty, that he might not lose the Opportunity of ascending the *Tartarian* Throne, to which he was the next Heir.

At the Death of *Wladislaus*, the Face of Affairs was entirely changed, by the Election of *John Casimir*, especially with respect to this
De-

* The Title of the next Heir to the Throne, like Dauphins in France, or Prince of Wales in England.

Demetrius, who fearing he should be delivered up to the Czar, with whom the King seemed desirous to live in Peace, he retired to *Revel*, and from thence to *Sweden*; but not thinking himself in Safety there, he went into *Holstein*, where he was put under an Arrest.

WE have already seen, that the Duke of *Holstein* had sent an Embassy to *Russia*, and that one of the Ambassadors was *Brugman* of *Hambourg*, who, in a second Voyage, was charged with Letters of Credence from the Duke, in order to settle a Trade of Silks with *Persia*; but he had abused the Confidence of his Master, by borrowing large Sums of Money in *Russia*, of which he could give no Account. The Czar expected that the Duke should discharge the Debts of his Ambassador; the Thing was reasonable, but the Duke had not yet done it, when a *Russian* Factor, who was then in *Holstein*, at the Time that this new *Demetrius* appeared, gave the Duke to understand, that his Czarish Majesty would remit this large Debt if he would deliver the Impostor into his Hands; which, upon those Conditions, was agreed to. The Impostor was transported accordingly to *Moscow*, where he was confronted by an old Woman, who declared herself his Mother. The false *Demetrius* was prosecuted as a Cheat, and a Disturber of the publick Repose, for which he was condemned to have his Head cut off, his Body quartered, and his Quarters exposed on so many Gibbets.

THE Czar *Alexis* used all Methods to settle the Peace of his Dominions, and made all such Regulations as he thought might be for

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

the Happiness of his People. Altho' a Stranger to foreign Languages, yet he caused an Epitome of several Sciences to be translated out of divers Languages into the *Russian* Tongue; which he himself diligently read. He caused the Laws of the several Provinces to be collected together in one Body; but for want of a good Lawyer to digest them into Order, it is but an imperfect and confused Collection.

IN the City of *Moscow* he built two Suburbs, viz: the New and Old *Meschanjskoja*, and also several great Market Towns; such as *Wolday*, and others; all which were peopled by *Lithuanians* and *Poles*: He endeavoured, indeed, to make himself more absolute, and to grasp more Power into his Hands, but with great Circumspection: He was the first who erected a Privy Council of Chancery, where Causes concerning his Person were heard. When he suspected any body, he proceeded very cautiously, as well in administering the Torture, as in Executions: But when any one was found guilty, he caused him to be privately executed, as it happened to many, and no body ever knew what became of them, except some few, who were tortured to Death, and so found in the Streets. This Method, it is said, his Daughter *Sophia* learned from him, in the Executions afterwards order'd by her.

THO' extravagant at first, he at length became a great Œconomist, and very much improv'd his Dominions. Great Desarts he converted into Colonies, peopling them with Prisoners taken from the *Poles* and other Nations. He also intended to have had Fleets in the *Caspian* and *Black-Seas*, for which Purpose he sent
Master-

Master-Builders and Shipwrights from *Holland* and other Places; but Heaven reserved this great Work for his august Son *PETER the Great*, who so truly merited the Name of *Father of his Country*; another ambitious Rebel, at this Time, giving a Check to the Designs of *Alexis*.

WE have already observed, that there were two Sorts of *Cossacks*, the one inhabiting the Islands of the *Borysthenes*, who were named *Zaporoski*, and the other dwelling along the Banks of the *Tanais*, or *Don*, who took the Name of *Donski Cossacks*. These have been always under the Dominion of the Czars, the others in Obedience to *Poland*. Among the *Donski Cossacks* was a Chief named *Stenko Razin*, who excited a horrible Rebellion against the Czar. The Cause of his Discontent was said to be the shameful Death of his Brother, whom the Knez, *George Alexowitz Dolgorucki*, had ordered to be hanged. The *Cossacks* are indeed Subjects; but then their Subjection was voluntary, and they had always Officers of their own, whom they obey'd independently of all others. The Brother of *Stenko Razin* was Chief of the *Cossacks*, who served in the *Russian Army*, in the Campaign of the Year 1665, against *Poland*. The Knez *Dolgorucki* pretended to keep them in the Field as long as he pleased; but they, not used to be forced in their Actions, abandoned the *Russian General*, and went to receive Orders from their own Chief; the Knez *Dolgorucki* took upon him to call this Chief to an Account for the Conduct of his Men, and ordering him to be arrested, caused him to be hanged with a little too much Precipitation. This

The Revolt of
STENKO RA-
ZIN.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

was the Pretext of *Stenko Razin* to arm against his Sovereign, but the principal Motive was to satisfy his own Ambition, since he not only used his Arms against the Czar, but also against the King of *Persia*.

He first began his Depredations upon the River *Volga*, where he took all the small Shipping he could meet with, plundered them, and killed their Men, unless they would join his Company. After this first Act of Hostility, he entered, with an Army of *Cossacks*, into all the Towns seated on the Banks of the River, or near them, where he plundered the Churches and Monasteries, and from thence went directly to *Jaik*, a Town situated on the River of the same Name, which divides the Kingdom of *Astracan* from the Country of the *Calmucks*: Having took this Town and plundered it, he proceeded to the *Caspian Sea*, and from thence returned to the *Volga*, doing great Mischief in interrupting the Fishery, and destroying many Houses and Villages. Thence he marched to the Town of *Terki*, in *Georgia*, and farther to the Frontiers of *Persia*, where he did great Damage both to the Subjects of the Czar and the Schah of *Persia*.

THE Inhabitants of a small Town in *Persia* being informed of his Approach, betook themselves to a neighbouring Fort for Security; whereupon *Stenko* sent them Word, that they had no Reason to fear, and invited them to return, assuring them, that he and his Men were not come to do them any Hurt, but to buy Provisions and other Necessaries for his Troops: Upon which the People came
back

back to their Town with great Confidence, and opened their Shops, where *Stenko* and his Soldiers bought what he needed with ready Money for the present; but, upon a Signal given to his *Cossacks*, they fell upon the Inhabitants, and butchered them without Mercy.

To stop these cruel Proceedings, the Knez *John Simonewitz Prosoroffski*, the Weyvode of *Astracan*, sent some Troops against him. Whereupon *Stenko*, finding himself too weak, and apprehending no good Issue, asked Pardon; which *Prosoroffski* promised him, in the Czar's Name, upon Condition that he would make his Submission, and demean himself, for the future, as a loyal Subject. Whereupon *Stenko*, with his Companions, went to *Astracan*, where they were kindly received; and, in Return, made many rich Presents to the People; they made a splendid Appearance; for as they had rifled many Gentlemens Houses, they had an abundance of rich Apparel, Jewels, and other Ornaments. *Stenko Razin* himself was not to be distinguished from the rest, but by the particular Marks of Respect that were shewn him, being always saluted by the Name of *Batske* [Father]. He was tall, and well proportioned in his Body and Limbs, somewhat pitted with the Small-Pox, but not so as to be unbecoming; he was of a stately Mein and Deportment, but of a cruel Disposition, as we must suppose by the following Story: He had with him, when at *Astracan*, a *Persian* Princess, whom he had taken Prisoner with her Brother. The Brother he presented to the Weyvode of *Astracan*, but the Sister he kept for his Concubine.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Being one Day on board his Yacht, to divert himself on the *Wolga*, and full of Wine and Frolick, he was boasting of the many Presents he had given and received since he had been restored to the Czar's Favour: And, on a sudden, broke out into these extravagant Expressions, speaking to the *Wolga*: *Well*, said he, *thou art a noble River, and out of thee have I had much Gold, Silver, and many Things of Value. Thou art both the Father and Mother of my Fortune and Advancement; but, unthankful Man that I am, I have never offered thee any thing: But now I am resolved to manifest my Gratitude.* Having spoke these Words, he took the Princess in his Arms, and threw her into the *Wolga*, in all her rich Attire, and Ornaments of Pearl, Diamonds, and other precious Stones. What heightened the Barbarity of the Act was, that the Lady was of a most angelick Form, greatly admired for the Endowments of her Mind as well as Person, and had always behaved with the utmost Complacency towards him.

STENKO RAZIN, after some short Stay at *Astracan*, returned with his Associates to their own Homes, near the River *Don*, and carry'd several *Russians* with them, who had been bribed to join with them, by large Sums liberally bestowed by *Stenko*, and Promises, that if they would follow him, they should fare no worse than he did.

THE Governor of *Astracan* understanding that several Persons, in the Service of the Czar, his Master, had withdrawn, and listed themselves among the Rebels, sent one *Wederos*, a Captain of the *Strelitzes*, to *Stenko*,
with



C. Mosley Scul.



with Instructions to demand the *Russians*, and order him to send them back, on Pain of the Czar's Displeasure, which he might not so easily appease as he had done before; but, perhaps, be compelled to make Satisfaction for his former Offences and his present together. The Captain went to obey his Orders, and to declare to *Stenko* the Reason of his coming; the haughty *Cossack* would scarce admit him to an Audience, but when he began to insist hard upon his sending back the Men he had caused to revolt from their Duty, he was so enraged, that he drew his Sword, and threatened his Life if he dared to persist any longer, and with that made towards him; but the Captain, being a discreet Man, when he saw himself in such Danger, used fair Speeches, by which he somewhat pacify'd his Fury, and he only asked him, *how he dared to make such an impudent Demand: Shall I then, said he, betray my Friends who have, out of pure Inclination to me, deserted their nearest Allies and their Fortunes? And shall I be threatened with Loss of Favour to boot? Prithee, go tell thy Master, that I value the Czar himself no more than I do him: And let him know, that I shall be with him before he is aware on't, and reward him for his Presumption.* The Captain was obliged to smother his Thoughts, and went back with the Rebel's Answer to the Governor, who thereupon assembled his Council, and deliberated on what was to be done, perceiving, by *Stenko's* Answer, that he intended to make him another Visit: And so it happened; for within three Days he began to march towards the *Wolga*, where he had eighty

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Stroegs, and other Shipping provided, filled with Ammunition and Men; but did not at first commit any Act of Hostility. The Weyvode of *Astracan* called a Council a second Time, wherein it was agreed, that as long as *Stenko* made no Attempt, nor did any Violence to any Town belonging to the Czar, they should not oppose him till the whole Fleet was got together.

ABOUT fourteen Days after, the whole Fleet arrived, consisting of a great Number of *Stroegs*, with about six thousand *Strelitzes*, well furnished with all Kinds of Provision and Ammunition. *Stenko*, by his Emissaries, had Intelligence of all their Designs; whereupon he so ordered it, that some of his own People, whom he could best confide in, should run away, and join the Governor's Forces, under Pretence of Desertion; when they came to the *Astracan* Fleet, they feigned themselves much discontented with the Hardships put upon them, and the Abuses they had received from *Stenko Razin*: These Renegadoes were met with open Arms by the adverse Party, who were in Hopes, by their Means, of discovering the Councils of their Rebel Master: But as soon as they were under Sail, and almost close upon the Enemy, the Traitors, on a sudden, fell upon the Officers and dispatched them, surrendering the rest, with the whole Fleet, into the Hands of the *Cossacks*. *Stenko*, having so rich a Prey, immediately ordered his Men two Months Pay in Hand, with a Promise, for their farther Encouragement, of enjoying freely whatever they could make by Plunder.

THE Governor was not a little dismay'd at these Tidings, and especially when he heard how much the common People murmured against him, and how laudably *Stenko* was spoken of, not only in *Astracan*, but all the Towns round about, which were under the Dominion of the Czar. The *Strelitzes*, who had not received any Pay for a long Time, and had heard of *Stenko's* Generosity to his Men, began to mutiny, and so generally, that the Governor and Officers durst not oppose them by any rigorous Methods, but were forced to sooth them by fair Words and large Promises.

STENKO RAZIN finding himself grow every Day stronger and stronger, and that now, with the *Russians* under his Command, he had about sixteen thousand Men, he landed a Part of them, and sent some to *Czaritza*, and others to *Czarnojar*, but he himself remained with the Fleet, where he was as highly respected as a sovereign Prince, and had the same Awe over his People. When he was warm with Liquor, few of his Officers durst appear in his Presence; for it was a common Thing with him, at such Times, to behead a Man for a very small Offence, tho' the greatest Minion or Favourite he had. The meaner Sort were in no Danger from him, for they were wont to flatter him, and, upon a Wink, would dispatch their Officers when he had taken any Dislike to them. Thus, by shewing a greater Regard for the common Men than the Officers, he became the more dreadful and formidable; for the sole Command and Direction of the whole Army lay
in

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

in himself. This also gave such Encouragement to the Rabble, that in the Space of five Days, after he had got the *Astracan* Fleet, his Army was raised from sixteen to twenty seven thousand Men, who were a mixt Multitude of Peasants, Slaves, *Tartars* and *Cossacks*, and Men of restless Minds from all Parts, pleased with the Thoughts of the free Enjoyment of Plunder. This vile Rout, spreading themselves over the Country, committed many inhuman Acts, and murdered such of the Gentry who could not escape from them, as many did, by disguising themselves in the Habits of Slaves.

STENKO, being arrived to this Pitch of Grandeur and Authority, was as much puffed up as if he had conquered the whole Empire; it is true, he refused the Title of King or Emperor, saying, that his Purpose was not to rule as a Lord, but to live with his Companions as a Brother, and to pull down that Tyranny and Oppression which they, for many Years, and their Progenitors, for many Ages, had been forced to endure against all Reason and the Law of Nature. Notwithstanding this pretended Moderation, he had the Impudence to dispatch Ambassadors to the Court of *Persia*, to whom he gave Instructions wherein he assumed the most pompous Titles, and stiled himself the *Sophy's Brother*. The Business of this Embassy was to invite the *Sophy* to enter into an Alliance with him, and to supply him with Ammunition of War, and whatever else he might have Occasion for, upon paying their Value. The Ambassadors were ordered to ask these Things at first in gentle Terms, but

but if they met with a Refusal, they were to menace the *Sophy*, and give him to understand, that their Master had two hundred thousand Men ready to invade his Territories, and that he might take an Opportunity to visit him when he least dream'd of it.

As soon as the *Sophy* came to understand, that these Ambassadors were instructed to threaten him, in case he refused to comply with the Demands of the Arch-Rebel their Master, he sent for them, and forthwith commanded their Heads to be chopped off, and their Bodies to be thrown to the Dogs, except of one, whom he preserved alive, that he might go back to acquaint his Master with the Reception they had met with at the *Persian* Court; but this was no more than a Reprieve for the poor surviving Ambassador, who when he came to report the Success of their Embassy to *Stenko Razin*, he fell into such a Rage, that he ordered the Executioner to cut him to Pieces.

STENKO, after this, endeavoured all that he was able to increase his Fleet and Army, for which Purpose he sent several of his Emisfaries to debauch the *Russian* Soldiers, and entice them to desert the Czar's Service, in many Towns upon the *Wolga*, judging those the fittest for his Turn, as they were best acquainted with the military Affairs of *Russia*, and therefore could be the most useful in attacking any Place he should have a Design upon. In this he succeeded to his Wishes, and having mustered his Troops, he sent a Body of the *Strelitzes* to *Camishinska*, who pretending they were Imperial Troops, sent
by

by the Czar for the Defence of the Town, in case it should be attacked, they were readily admitted, and so much confided in, that they soon found an Opportunity to dispatch the Governor, and almost all the Officers of the Garison, having before seduced the rest, and brought them into their Party; when this was done, a Signal was given, by firing a Gun, to *Stenko*, who came up, and surprized the Town, wherein he placed a Garison of *Cossacks*, and removed the *Russian Strelitzes* into the Navy,

TIDINGS of this coming to *Astracan*, occasioned no small Murmurings among the People, none knowing who was Friend, or who was Enemy; and the Weyvode *Prozoroffski* considering, that the common People, who delight in Novelty, and are generally soon tired of the present Government, might form some Design of joining the Enemy, called together the Council of *Astracan*, to consult what was best to be done in so dangerous a Conjunction; what Means they should take to quiet the Minds of the People, and defend themselves from the approaching Enemy: It was concluded, that there was no better Way to remedy the former, than by conducting themselves warily in the latter, and that by stopping the growing Power of the Rebels, they should soon be able to pacify the common People at home. Upon this Resolution several Gentlemen offered their Service to go as private Men, in that sudden and urgent Expedition, not daring any more to put Confidence in the *Strelitzes*.

ON

ON the 10th of *April* 1670, the Boyar *Petrofski* dispatched eight hundred Horse under the Command of Colonel *Levonti Bogdanof*, whereof four hundred were *Russians*, the rest *Nogais*, who were to furnish the City of *Czaritza* with Ammunition and necessary Provisions, and to reinforce the Garison; but an Express came to *Astracan* on the 28th, from Colonel *Bogdanof*, with News, that the *Cossacks* had already taken *Czaritza*, and killed twelve hundred *Muscovite Strelitzes*, who were but newly come thither before the Siege. This Account the Colonel had from a *Cossack* whom he had taken Prisoner, and put to the Torture; upon which the Colonel marched on to *Czarnojar*.

By this Time the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* had full Intelligence of all that had been done in this second Revolt of the *Cossacks*, and what were the Designs of *Stenko*, together with the barbarous Murders he had already committed, and the continual Ravages he was making; whereupon he gave Orders for levying new Forces, and for as many *Stroegs* as could be equipt on a sudden: The Deputies in the Towns upon the *Wolga* did their utmost to compleat a Fleet of forty Sail: Upon each *Stroeg* was only one great Gun, but other Ammunition as much as was necessary for so many Men as the *Stroegs* were capable to carry. Aboard this Fleet were two thousand six hundred *Strelitzes*, and five hundred Volunteers under the Conduct of *Simeon Iwanowitz Elbof*, a Knez, who was appointed Commander in Chief of the Expedition. The Fleet left *Astracan* on the 25th of *May*,
when

when the Citizens and common People began to murmur against the Governor and Officers more than ever; they even reviled him as he passed through the Streets, and he dared not do any Thing to check them, for Fear of greater Commotions, till he learn'd the Success of *Simeon Iwanowitz*; the City being now in a weak Condition, since the sending away the Forces with the Knez *Iwanowitz Elbof*, the Mob grew more and more insolent; but on the 4th of *June*, by a Gentleman who had made his Escape, they got Intelligence concerning the Affairs of *Czarnojar*, and that on the same Day that the Knez *Elbof* had made his Appearance the Town was taken, and that the Governor and all the Officers were massacred, and their Bodies thrown into the River; and, what was still more deplorable, that the private Soldiers, under the Knez *Elbof*, had murdered all their Officers in the Fleet, declared for the *Cossacks*, and had surrendered all the Shipping into the Hands of *Stenko Razin*, although immediately before their coming to *Czarnojar* they had unanimously sworn to live and die with their Leaders. The Report of these Things, although the Governor of *Astracan* endeavoured to smother it as much as possible, got Wind, and gave the Rabble Occasion to murmur more than they had done before; they went so far as publickly to reproach their Superiors, so that they durst not look out of their Doors or Windows, much less walk the Streets, or assemble together to consult how they might remedy these Disorders in the Town; for the People would get together

ther before the Houses of the Magistrates, and cry out with bitter Railings, *Now, now the Times are altered, it will be our Turn to lord it next: Ye Villains come out, and shew yourselves to the World.*

STENKO RAZIN, having Intelligence of all this, came towards the City, and sending in some of his *Cossacks*, it was agreed to deliver up the Place to him, and he was received in it accordingly. The Knez *Prozoroffski* being at Church, was forced thence in the Midst of Divine Service, and hurried to the Top of a high square Steeple, which stands in the Middle of the Castle of *Astracan*, as a Beacon to direct those who navigate on the *Caspian Sea*, or travel over the vast and little frequented Roads of the *Steep*. From this Steeple he was cast headlong. It is said, that *Stenko*, a little before whispered something in his Ear, at which he shook his Head, which was, doubtless, something to tempt him to take Part with the Traitor; but the faithful Knez refusing to comply, was what brought him to this tragical End. *Stenko* stopp'd not here; the Brother of the Governor, and many Noblemen, and others, who would not come in to him, he put to the Sword, as also many *Dutch* and other Officers, and some Sailors, who, tho' they ran to the *Caspian Sea*, were fetched back again to be slaughtered. The Churches, Cloisters, and Houses of the richest Citizens were plundered; the Writings of the Chancery burnt; the Czar's Treasury of the Kingdom of *Astracan* carry'd away; many foreign Merchants, as *Persians*, *Indians*, *Turks*, *Armenians*, being in the Town at the same Time,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

were put to Death with the rest: Both the Sons of the Governor *Prozoroffski* he caused to be hung up by the Legs upon the Walls of the Town, and to be taken down again, putting one of them, after much Torture, to Death, and causing the other to be beaten half dead, and so carry'd to the Metropolitan. His Lady and Daughters he delivered to the Soldiers, his Companions, to take them for Wives, or use them as they pleased.

THE taking *Astracan* was upon the 28th of July, 1670, after which *Stenko* marched to *Czaritza*, and from thence to *Czaratof*, which were also delivered to him, and the Governors of them put to Death, together with many Noblemen; and the Treasure of both Places taken away.

THE like happened to the Town of *Tzamatof*; from whence *Stenko* went to *Simbierske*, which he besieged, took by Storm, and burnt to Ashes, after he had lost a great Part of his *Cossacks* before the Castle of that Place. The Governor of this Town was *John Bochdaenwitz Micoslawski*, who defended it with such extraordinary Courage, that *Stenko*, hitherto Conqueror of all the Places upon the *Volga*, was stopp'd here from proceeding any farther, having otherwise intended to have marched to the royal City of *Casan*, which was not a great way farther than *Simbierske*. He was not only driven back from the Walls of this Town, but so dangerously wounded himself, that he was forced to return to *Astracan*; yet were not his Emissaries quiet, but continually endeavouring to stir up the People to Rebellion. About the Town of *Oestiga* some
of

of these Emissaries were taken and hanged ; but that did not deter others from doing the same Thing in other Places. They every where promised Liberty in the Name of their Master, and a Redemption from the Yoke, as they call'd it, of the Boyars or Nobles, who, they said, were the Oppressors of the Country. In *Moscow* itself, Men began to speak openly in his Praise, as if he sought the publick Good, and the Liberty of the People: A certain old Man being asked what should be done if *Stenko* approached that City, made answer, that the People should go out and meet him with Bread and Salt, which, among the *Russians*, are Tokens of Love and Friendship; but this coming to the Ear of the Czar, he was order'd to be hanged, as several other Well-wishers to the Rebels were, for an Example to the rest: And, about the same time, one of *Stenko's* principal Agents, who had gone about the Country endeavouring to seduce the People from their Obedience, was brought into the City, where he met with the due Reward of his Treason, having one of his Arms and one of his Legs cut off, and his Body afterwards hang'd on a Gibbet.

STENKO tried all imaginable Ways to draw the People into his Party; among other Devices, he prepared two Ships, one of which was finely adorned, and lined in the Inside with Crimson Velvet; in this, he gave out, was the Czarewitz *Alexis Alexiowitz* the Czar's eldest Son, who had departed this Life, on the 17th of *January* 1670, in the Palace of *Moscow*, in the Presence of his Father, and

R

was

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

was buried the next Day in the Metropolitan Church of *St. Michael*. Yet *Stenko* boldly averr'd, that this Prince was still alive, and with him: And the better to colour this Falshood, he kept in the Ship a Youth of about sixteen Years of Age, descended from one of the *Circassian* Princes, whom *Stenko* in his former Expedition had taken Prisoner, and whom the Czar afterwards pardon'd, because he had been compelled to act the Part he did. *Stenko* gave out, that this Lord Czarewitz had made his Escape from the Boyars and great Men, who had violent Designs upon him, and had sought Refuge from him; who was come by the Czar's Order to put to Death the Boyars and Senators, who were too near his Person, as Traytors, and Enemies to their Country.

IN the other Ship, which was lin'd with black Velvet, *Stenko* pretended was the late Patriarch *Mikow*, who, in the Year 1666, after his Condemnation, by the Patriarchs of *Alexandria* and *Antioch*, had been deposed by the Czar, and sent to the Monastery of *Biela-Osero*.

By these Arts *Stenko* had so far advanced his Designs, that the whole Tract of Land about the *Wolga*, and all the Country as far as the Towns of *Accatour* and *Arfa* were engaged in his Rebellion; and the Number of Rebels were augmented to two hundred thousand. The greatest Part of *Czeremisse* and *Morduate Tartars*, and all the Peasants in those Parts, whose fertile Lands belonged to *Russian* Lords, rose up against their Governors, and hanged them or cut their Throats.

In

In short, the Fury of the People carried them even into the Province of *Moscow*.

IN the mean while the Czar had given Orders to raise Troops in every Part ; but could not bring an Army into the Field, strong enough to make Head against the Rebels, till the Month of *September*. He gave the Command of this Army to the Knez *George Alexowitz Dolgorucki*, whose first Exploit was against a flying Camp of the Enemy, consisting of fifteen thousand Men, whom he overthrew, altho' they fought with great Bravery, and return'd four Times to the Charge.

AFTER this Conquest, General *Dolgorucki* settled his Quarters and Tribunal at *Arsamas*, where he executed so severe a Judgment upon the Rebels, that the Avenues to it seemed to resemble the dreadful Entrance of the Poets *Tartarus*; round about it were Gallowses, each of which were loaded with forty or fifty Men. In one Place lay Heaps of headless Carcases, almost cover'd in their own Blood, and in others were Wretches impaled alive, who, some of them, did not expire till the third Day with most lamentable Cries, and in bitter Agonies. Within the Space of three Months, above eleven thousand more were put to Death by the common Executioners, after being condemned in a legal Way by hearing Witnesses.

DOLGORUCKI remaining in this Place himself, sent his Army out by Parties, in quest of the Rebels, who brought them in one after another. It was happy for *Russia*, and a great Mercy of God, that the Rebels were dis-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

perfed in feveral Places; for had fo great a Number as two hundred thoufand kept together in one Body, it would have been very difficult for the Czar's Forces to have mafter'd them.

THE Czar, in this War, faw the great Advantage his Subjects might reap from Foreigners; for the Behaviour of the *Germans* was fuch, that from them the *Ruffians* might have learnt the Military Art. Among the Prifoners who were brought to the Knez *Dolgorucki* was a Nephew of *Stenko Razin*, and a Nun in Man's Habit, put over her Monaftical Drefs. This Nun had commanded feven thoufand Men, and acted with much Valour in the War; when taken Prifoner, there appeared not the leaft Alteration in her, nor any Fear of Death upon the Sentence of being burnt alive being pronounced againft her; for among the *Ruffians* the deserting a Monaftery, was in thofe Times, thought a Crime of the higheft Nature. A little before ſhe died, ſhe wifhed that many more had behaved themfelves as couragiously as ſhe had done, and then, ſhe ſaid, the Knez *George* would have found his beft Safety in his Heels: Being come to the Place of Execution, ſhe ſigned herfelf after the *Ruffian* Manner, with the Crofs on her Forehead and Breaft, and then laid herfelf quietly down upon the Pile and was burnt to Aſhes.

THERE was alfo brought to Judgment one of *Stenko Razin's* principal Counfellors and Confederates, who had his Arms and Legs cut off, after which he was beheaded, and his Body hung upon a Gibbet. The
Prifoners

Prisoners were generally put to the Torture, and being examined, what they design'd in this Rebellion; they confessed, that they were to have gone to *Moscow*, and to have destroy'd most of the Boyars, and other great Men; that their Word was *Not'scay*, that is to say, *Unexpected*, whereby they would intimate, that the Czarewitz *Alexis Alexiowitz* was come *unexpectedly* to them, as it were from Heaven.

WHEN the Rebellion was pretty well quelled in those Parts, the Czar sent the Knez *Constantine Zarbatoff* to disperse the Rebels about *Tamboff*, a Town in the Province of *Resan*, about fifty Wersts to the North East of *Sergog*, situated on the River *Don*, which by the Assistance of God was soon effected; so that all the disquieted and rebellious Countries were reduced to their former Obedience, after the Destruction of about an hundred thousand Men, killed in the Field, and put to Death by the Hangman. It was a melancholy Necessity the Czar was under to take away the Lives of so many Subjects; but there are Occasions sometimes for such an extreme Severity, and when a Sovereign is forced to sacrifice some Members to save the Body of the State.

STENKO RAZIN, alarmed at the Loss of his Friends on every Side, knew not where he should seek for Safety himself, every one became suspected by him, and he feared, that some of his own People might follow the Example of the Inhabitants of *Lysko*, who had deliver'd up the Chiefs of the Rebels in that Town, in order to obtain Favour, and give him up in the same Manner to make

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

their Peace with the Czar: Therefore he betook himself to the Wilderness of *Steep*, wandering up and down, till at length, that happened to him which he apprehended, and from one of whom he thought himself in least Danger; this was *Cornelius Jacoloff*, a Commander of the *Cossacks*, who had remained faithful to the Czar, and who was Godfather to *Stenko*, and always so highly respected by him, that he could not imagine he had any Reason to distrust him; but he did not consider, that by revolting from the Obedience of his lawful Sovereign, he had lost all Title to the Favour of good Men.

CORNELIUS JACOLOFF first stopp'd *Stenko* at *Czaritza*, from whence he convey'd him to *Moscow*, giving him Hopes, that he should see the Czar himself, and plead his own Cause, not doubting but he had many Things to say which would be of great Importance to his Czarish Majesty to know. His Brother *Frolka* was taken at the same Time, and fell into an extreme Melancholy, throwing the Blame of all that had been done upon *Stenko*; but this comforted him by telling him, that when they arrived at *Moscow*, they should have great Honours done them, and be met by all the City.

BEING come within a Werst of *Moscow*, they found the Triumphal Car, which was prepared for their publick Entry; this was a Waggon, in the hinder Part of which was erected a Gibbet, where he was fasten'd by a Chain about his Neck and his two Hands. His Brother *Frolka* was made to walk on Foot, chained to the Side of the Waggon. In this

this Manner they were conducted, thro' thousands of Spectators on whom *Stenko* never once look'd, but kept his Eyes on the Ground. They were brought to the *Smenskoi Duor*, and some Days after put to the Question, when *Stenko* was condemned to the Punishment inflicted on all those who are found guilty of *Lese Majesty*, which is to have their Arms, Legs, and Heads cut off, and their Bodies thrown to the Dogs.

STENKO suffer'd without a Groan, after his Sentence had been publicly read to him at the Place of Execution, and which I have, for the Satisfaction of the Reader, and to give an Idea of the Procedure of the Sovereign Courts of *Russia*, placed at the End of this Volume. *STENKO put to Death.*

HIS Brother *Frolka* was also brought to the Scaffold, but obtained his Czarish Majesty's Pardon, on a Promise to discover where his Brother had hid his Treasure under Ground.

THE Death of this notorious Rebel was immediately followed by the Surrender of *Astracan*, for *Sjourteous*, surnamed the *Devil's Whisker*, whom the Traitor *Stenko* had left to govern that City, was poisoned by his own Soldiers, in hopes thereby to get their Pardon from the Czar; but as there are always some Men, whom no Crimes, nor the just Punishment of them can deter, one of the Guards of *Sjourteous* put himself at the Head of those who continued in the Revolt; but the *Russian* Commanders soon hem'd them in on all Sides, and prevented their Escape.

their Peace with the Czar: Therefore he betook himself to the Wilderness of *Steep*, wandering up and down, till at length, that happened to him which he apprehended, and from one of whom he thought himself in least Danger; this was *Cornelius Jacoloff*, a Commander of the *Cossacks*, who had remained faithful to the Czar, and who was Godfather to *Stenko*, and always so highly respected by him, that he could not imagine he had any Reason to distrust him; but he did not consider, that by revolting from the Obedience of his lawful Sovereign, he had lost all Title to the Favour of good Men.

CORNELIUS JACOLOFF first stopp'd *Stenko* at *Czaritza*, from whence he convey'd him to *Moscow*, giving him Hopes, that he should see the Czar himself, and plead his own Cause, not doubting but he had many Things to say which would be of great Importance to his Czarish Majesty to know. His Brother *Frolka* was taken at the same Time, and fell into an extreme Melancholy, throwing the Blame of all that had been done upon *Stenko*; but this comforted him by telling him, that when they arrived at *Moscow*, they should have great Honours done them, and be met by all the City.

BEING come within a Werst of *Moscow*, they found the Triumphal Car, which was prepared for their publick Entry; this was a Waggon, in the hinder Part of which was erected a Gibbet, where he was fasten'd by a Chain about his Neck and his two Hands. His Brother *Frolka* was made to walk on Foot, chained to the Side of the Waggon. In
this

this Manner they were conducted, thro' thousands of Spectators on whom *Stenko* never once look'd, but kept his Eyes on the Ground. They were brought to the *Smenskoi Duor*, and some Days after put to the Question, when *Stenko* was condemned to the Punishment inflicted on all those who are found guilty of *Lese Majesty*, which is to have their Arms, Legs, and Heads cut off, and their Bodies thrown to the Dogs.

STENKO suffer'd without a Groan, after his Sentence had been publicly read to him at the Place of Execution, and which I have, for the Satisfaction of the Reader, and to give an Idea of the Procedure of the Sovereign Courts of *Russia*, placed at the End of this Volume.

HIS Brother *Frolka* was also brought to the Scaffold, but obtained his Czarish Majesty's Pardon, on a Promise to discover where his Brother had hid his Treasure under Ground.

THE Death of this notorious Rebel was immediately followed by the Surrender of *Astracan*, for *Sjourteous*, surnamed the *Devil's Whisker*, whom the Traitor *Stenko* had left to govern that City, was poisoned by his own Soldiers, in hopes thereby to get their Pardon from the Czar; but as there are always some Men, whom no Crimes, nor the just Punishment of them can deter, one of the Guards of *Sjourteous* put himself at the Head of those who continued in the Revolt; but the *Russian* Commanders soon hem'd them in on all Sides, and prevented their Escape.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

THUS an End was put to this terrible Revolt, which might have had worse Consequences if *Stenko Razin* had joined Prudence to the Strength he did not want, or if he had had more Conduct and less Cruelty; nevertheless it cost the Lives of many thousand Subjects, and the Provinces to which it extended for a long Time felt the ill Effects of it, whatever Care the great Czar took to relieve his unhappy People, as much as the Necessity of the State would permit him.

*A Revolt of
the ZAPORO-
SKI COSSACKS
against Po-
LAND.*

WHILST RUSSIA was agitated by this Rebellion, *Poland* was no less disturbed. The *Zaporoski Cossacks* caused there, under the Conduct of *Dorosensko* their Chief, as much Mischief as the Party of *Stenko* had done upon the Banks of the *Wolga*. The weak *Michael Wiesnowieski* was just elected in the room of *John Cassimir*, who from Cardinal had been made King, and was now from King, become again Ecclesiastick, and made Abbot of *St. Germain*s in *Paris*, and some other rich Abbeyes.

*An Alliance
made between
the CZAR and
POLAND.
A. D. 1672.*

KING MICHAEL, at his first coming to the Throne, sent an Embassy to *Moscow*, and renewed the ancient Treaties with the Czar *Alexis*. At the same Time the *Porte*, solicited by the *Tartars*, who were in Alliance with *Dorosensko*, and yet more by the sorrowful Condition in which they saw the Kingdom of *Poland*, rent by the unhappy Divisions that reigned among her Nobles, took up Arms to make their Advantage of them. The Czar not doubting but, that if the *Turks* attacked *Poland*, they would find an easy Conquest, in the Condition she was, and that, elated by
their

their Success, they would turn their Arms against *Russia*, sent a Minister to *Constantinople*, to notify to the Divan this renewing of his Alliance, and to declare, that he could not avoid breaking with the Porte if they attacked *Poland*.

IN the mean Time the *Tartars* and the *Cossacks* of *Dorofensko* continued their Irruptions, and made themselves Masters of a great Part of the *Ukraine*; the *Turks* pretended, The TURKS seek an Occasion to quarrel with POLAND. that the *Polanders* had no Reason to complain; because, said they, this Province is entirely free, and its Inhabitants, the *Zaporoski Cossacks*, have always been under the Protection of the High *Porte*.

It was said, that the Grand Seignior would not have taken up Arms but at the Solicitation of *France*, who had many Subjects of Complaint against the Court of *Poland*, and who, besides, sought how, by Degrees, to find Employment for the Emperor, who she imagined would be obliged to enter into this Quarrel, through the Interest he had in opposing every where the Progress of the *Turks*. All *Europe*, except *France*, were on the Side of *Poland*: It is true, the *United Provinces*, *France* and *England* were, at that Time, engag'd in a War among themselves. The Czar promised *Poland* a powerful Assistance of twenty thousand Men, which he sent under the Command of old *Gowaski*, whilst another Body of *Donski* and *Zaporoski Cossacks* made an Irruption into *Crimea*, which caused a Diversion very favourable to *Poland*, but could not prevent the taking of the important Fortrefs of *Caminiec*; nevertheless as
the

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

*A Peace be-
twixt the
TURKS and
POLES.*

the *Calmucks* had Orders to march, to continue the Invasion, that may be said to have been the Occasion of the Peace, such as it was, that was made between the King of *Poland* and the *Sultan*; for *Selim Girey*, the Cham of *Tartary*, being obliged to quit *Poland*, to come to the Succour of the *Crim*, cover'd his Departure under the honourable Pretext of making himself Mediator of this Treaty, which was concluded in a very short Time, as it usually happens between two Powers, when one of them is intirely subdued. *Caminiec* and *Podolia* was to remain with the *Turks*; the *Ukraine* with the *Cossacks*, and besides these, Satisfaction was to be made to the Cham of *Tartary*, which was done by paying him eleven thousand Crowns, and agreeing to pay a Pension of the same Value: A Tribute was also to be sent every Year, of two and twenty thousand Ducats, to the *Porte*. Nothing was stipulated in favour of the *Russians*. The *Turks* and *Tartars* took and kill'd, in this short War, above three hundred thousand *Poles*.

*The CZAR'S
Haughtiness
to the GRAND
SEIGNIOR.*

WE have seen before, that the Divisions among the *Cossacks* had obliged them to seek Protection, one Part from *Russia*, and the other from the *Grand Seignior*; when, by the last Treaty, *Poland* had yielded up the *Ukraine*, the *Sultan* expected, that the *Czar* should evacuate all the Towns he possessed there, and to this Purpose sent an *Aga* to him: The *Czar* told him, that *he was not capable of so much Baseness as to submit to a Mahometan Dog, and, that if the Grand Seignior*

nior threatened him with his Cymeter, he hoped he should find his Sabre not uselefs.

NOTWITHSTANDING this haughty Answer, the Divan dissatisfied with the Peace made with Poland, having obliged the Sultan to take up Arms again, and having, for a long Time, debated whether they should make War with the Czar or Poland, determined for the last, not doubting but if they conquer'd that Kingdom, the Conquest of Russia would not be difficult. Nevertheless the Sultan sent back an Ambassador, who was at the Porte, with Orders to notify to his Master the Czar Alexis, that if he any ways assisted Poland, his Highness would fall upon him with all his Forces in Russia, where he would spare nothing.

The War renewed between Poland and the TURKS.

THESE Menaces produced a Letter yet more haughty than the foregoing Answer, and, at the same time, the Czar sent a solemn Embassy to King Michael Wiefnowieski, to assure him of his most powerful Protection. In short, besides the twenty thousand he had promised, he had caused twenty two thousand Men to advance to the Banks of the Dnieper, to be ready to cross it on the first Orders, without reckoning the Cossacks and Calmucks, who had made a fresh Irruption into the Crim, where they found Employment enough for the Tartars, to prevent their Thoughts of marching to the Succour of the Turks, as they had resolved. The following is the Sultan's Answer to the Czar's Letter.

“ MOST Excellent of Christian Hospo-
dars, &c. After having saluted you kindly,
“ we declare to you, that after having re-
“ ceiv'd

The SULTAN's Answer to a Letter of the CZAR.

“ ceiv’d the Letter which you had wrote to
 “ our most high, most clement, and most
 “ glorious Imperial Majesty, Master of the
 “ Universe; and equal in Power to *Alexander*
 “ *the Great*, (the Almighty God still increase
 “ our Strength), we caused the same to be
 “ translated and read, and we find, that in
 “ the Hopes of succouring your Friends and
 “ Neighbours, you speak to us in Terms,
 “ which are not usual among Kings and
 “ Monarchs, altho’, by the peculiar Provi-
 “ dence of the Almighty, our Imperial House
 “ is raised above all others, and not accu-
 “ stomed to Expressions so hard, so unwor-
 “ thy, and so indecent, yet we shall give
 “ you for Answer, that we cannot but be
 “ greatly astonished, that you, who do not
 “ hold the last Rank among Christian Kings
 “ and Potentates, but who would not have
 “ obtained an Equality with them, if you
 “ had not employed your Cares to procure
 “ from our Majesty Peace for yourself and
 “ Subjects, we cannot but be surpris’d, that
 “ you should dare to make use of such
 “ Terms, which not only offends our Maje-
 “ sty, but might cost you your Dominions.
 “ As to what concerns *Poland*, we have exe-
 “ cuted what we have resolv’d upon, and by
 “ the Help of Providence, which directs all
 “ Things, every Thing on that Side is in
 “ good Condition, so that there is nothing
 “ more to be said about it; but as to your
 “ having a Desire to assist your good Friend
 “ and Neighbour the King of *Poland*, why
 “ did you not do it before the War, by giv-
 “ ing him your friendly Advice? You might
 “ even

“ even have been a diligent and faithful
 “ Mediator between the most high *Ottoman*
 “ *Porte* and him. But at present when you
 “ threaten us, that the Kings your Neigh-
 “ bours will not suffer the Progress of our
 “ Arms of which they are jealous, know that
 “ we ourselves have little Regard to it, being
 “ satisfied that they are not ignorant of the
 “ Justice of our Cause, which has made us
 “ Master of so many Provinces, Towns, and
 “ Countries; and since it has pleased God,
 “ that those should be disappointed who had
 “ any ill Designs, be persuaded also, that, as
 “ soon as we shall be informed how you in-
 “ tend to act towards us, you shall receive
 “ Good for Good, and Evil for Evil.”

THE Czar seeing that the Divan was re-
 solv'd to break the Peace, that was just made
 with the King of *Poland*, did all that he
 was able to keep his Word with his High-
 ness, and arm against him all the Powers of
Europe. To this End, he sent Ambassadors to
 all the Courts of *Christendom*, to form, if pos-
 sible, a powerful League against the Enemy
 of the Christian Name. The Minister he
 sent to Pope *Clement X.* altho' he was a *Ro-*
man Catholick, refused to kiss his Holiness's
 Toe, saying that so mean an Act was beneath
 the Dignity of the Prince he had the Honour
 to represent. He declared to the Pope in
 a Discourse which he delivered in *Latin*:
 “ That the Czar, his Master, had taken
 “ a Resolution to make War against the
 “ *Turks*, to stop their Progress into *Poland*;
 “ that he had nothing more at Heart than
 “ to see all Christian Princes in the same Dis-

“ position,

*The CZAR
 sends to all the
 Princes of
 CHRISTEN-
 DOM to form
 a League a-
 gainst the
 TURKS.*

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

“ position, and that they would unite against
 “ those Tyrants ; that the Czar, his Master,
 “ for that Purpose had sent Ambassadors to
 “ all the Potentates of *Europe* ; and that he
 “ exhorted his Holiness to put himself at the
 “ Head of so powerful a League, that was so
 “ necessary for the Welfare of the Church,
 “ and from whence all Christendom might
 “ expect so great Advantages.”

THIS Ambassador of the Czar *Alexis* was greatly carress'd at *Rome*, the Pope assured him, that this Resolution of his Sovereign was very agreeable to him ; and the Cardinals *Altieri*, *Barberini*, *Orsini*, *Chigi*, and *de Hesse*, paid him the highest Honours. Nevertheless when they were to give the Pope's Answer in Writing, they framed great Difficulties about the Czar's Title, because the Court of *Rome* imagined, that the *Russians* understood by this Word the same as Emperor. They held several Congregations upon this Subject, and it was resolv'd, rather than to give this Potentate the Title of Czar, which was not refused him by any other Nation, that his Holiness's Answer should be sent to his Nuncio in *Poland*, and transmitted by his Auditor to him.

THE other Ambassadors of his Czarish Majesty were equally well received every where, and the King of *Spain*, in particular, gave a most favourable Reception to the Minister at his Court, but all ended in nothing but empty Promises. The Situation of the Affairs in *Europe* at that Time, could not be more contrary than it was to the Views of the Czar, for there was not one Sovereign,
 who

who had not such Work upon his Hands, as prevented his entering into a Project so beneficial to Christendom.

THE Czar had some Reason to be dissatisfied with the King of *Poland*, nay, he had even Cause to distrust him. Altho' he had assisted him against the *Turk*, as soon as he was attacked by him, he had in no manner taken care of his Interests at the Conclusion of his last Treaty of Peace, wherein he had not even mentioned *Russia*. After the Peace was made, the Minister of *Poland* at *Moscow* had only presented a simple Copy of the Treaty to the Czar, and had some Conferences, afterwards, with a *Turkish Chiaoux*, without informing his Czarish Majesty of what passed in them: At length the Jealousy, or rather the natural Antipathy, which is between the two Nations, gave the Czar cause to doubt whether or no King *Michael* was sincere in the Acknowledgment he made of the Services he had done him: For this Reason he charges his Ambassador in *Poland* to demand an *Eclaircissement* from the King, by assuring him, that the *Russian* Army, which was on this Side the *Dnieper*, was ready to cross it as soon as the *Turks* should appear beyond the *Niester*.

THE King of *Poland* answered the *Russian* Ambassador, that he had the deepest Sense of Gratitude for the Services his Czarish Majesty had done him, by the Irruptions he had made in the *Crim*, by his *Calmucks* and *Donski Cossacks*, and for the Arms and Ammunition he had so generously sent to the *Zaporoski Cossacks*. That altho' *Komor Orsanski* had communica-

ted to the Ministers of his Czarish Majesty, the Peace concluded with the *Turks*, and had left with them a Copy of the Articles, nevertheless, since his Majesty desir'd it, he had sent one more authentick, sealed with his Seal, to shew him that the Treaty contained nothing prejudicial to his Czarish Majesty. That, indeed, since the Conclusion of the Peace, there had been some Conferences, but that they were only to obtain the Liberty of the Hostages of the City of *Leopold*. Lastly, that there was no likelihood, that this new Treaty would long subsist, but that the *Sultan* would break through it as soon as possible, upon the Advices he had received, that all the Christian Powers were arming in Favour of *Poland*, of which he had resolved upon the Conquest, thinking nothing more invincible than his Arms, since he had subdued the Fortrefs of *Caminiec* : Altho' neither his Majesty, nor the Republick had given him any Reason to break the Peace. His *Polish* Majesty besought the Czar to give Orders to his Army, which was near *Kiow*, to join that of *Lithuania* and *Poland*, that they might go together into *Podolia*, and oppose with all their Strength the Efforts of the common Enemy.

THE King of *Poland* assembled the Diet, in which, among other Resolutions, was taken that of intrusting the Operations of the War, and the intire Command of the Crown Army to the Grand General *John Sobieski*, so that if the King followed the Army, it was merely for form sake : But whatever Menaces had been made by the *Turks*, they did not find them-

themselves able to appear in the Field so formidably as they would have had it thought they should. The Plague in *Europe*, the Revolt of the Bassa of *Aleppo* in *Asia*, and the Fear they were under of being attacked by the *Persians*, who had got together a very considerable Army, all opposed the Execution of their vast Designs. It was not thus on the Side of *Poland* and *Russia*. The Grand General had assembled an Army of forty thousand Men at *Rubieffou*, in the Palatinate of *Bielz*, where the *Lithuanian* Army of twelve thousand Men, beside some Horse, was to join them. The Czar had a fine Army of an hundred and fifty thousand Men in the *Ukraine*; and *Siesko* Chief of the *Cossacks* had undertaken to find such Employment for the *Tartars*, that they should not have Time to go to the Assistance of *Hussein* Bassa, who was at the Head of the *Ottoman* Troops. In short, the *Cossacks* made so successful an Irruption into the *Crim*, that, after they had slain a great Number, they brought away above twenty thousand Prisoners, Men, Women, and Children; reduced more than forty Villages to Ashes, and spread Terror through the whole Country, encamping just under the Place where the Cham had his Residence, where they remained for four and twenty Hours.

THIS Diverfion did not a little contribute to the glorious Victory obtained by the Grand General *John Sobieski*, over the *Turks* near *Cochim*, where they were intrenched up to their Teeth; a Victory that purchas'd the Crown of *Poland* for the General, at the same Time that it restored the Honour of the Nation,

tion, and obliged the *Porte* to agree to honourable Conditions of Peace, and for which *Poland* was in a great Measure indebted to the Succours that the Czar had lent her with so much Generosity.

MICHAEL
King of Po-
LAND dies

KING MICHAEL WIESNOWIESKI dy'd at *Leopold* on the 10th of *November*, the Eve of the Day on which *John Sobieski* obtained the Victory we have spoken of. The Interregnum continued till the 22d of *May* following, during which time several Candidates appeared for the Crown as usual. There were three Parties; the first, which was composed of *Lithuanians*, and had the famous *Patz*, Chancellor of the Grand Duchy at its Head, proposed the Prince of *Lorrain*; the Senate, a Part of the Nobles, and the *French* Faction supported the Prince of *Neubourg*; the third Party, the most formidable, being the intire Army of the Crown, was devoted to the Grand General *Sobieski*, who publicly excited the Army to demand a *French* Prince for their King, but worked underhand all he could to place the Crown upon his own Head.

THE Czar thought also, that he had some Right to hope for this Crown for his Son; his Ambassador at *Rome* had already endeavour'd to bring the Pope into his Designs on this Account, representing to him the Advantage that all Christendom might expect from the Union of these two States under the same Sovereign, who might alone be able to make Head against the mortal Enemy of the Christian Faith.

THE Affair was of a delicate Nature, the Pope had not altogether rejected the Proposi-
tion,

tion, but had only given the Ambassador to understand, that it was not yet a proper Time to do any thing in it, King *Michael* being still alive. Those who were against *John Sobieski*, proposed in the Diet, that it should be forbid to elect a *Piaſt*, that is to ſay, a natural *Polander*; and thoſe who were inclined to the Czar ſupported this Propoſition.

HIS Czarish Maſteſty offer'd the *Polanders* to unite *Poland*, *Lithuania*, and *Ruſſia*, in the ſame Manner as under the laſt of the Family of *Jagelon*, *Poland* had been united with *Lithuania*; he promiſed faithfully to maintain the *Catholick* Religion; to pay the Debts of the Nation, and to furniſh *Poland* with an Army capable of forcing the *Turks* to abandon all their Conqueſts. All theſe Offers, how advantageous ſoever they were in their preſent Condition, made no Impreſſion, unleſs it was to the Prejudice of the Czar; for the *Polanders*, who could not ſee an hundred and fifty thouſand *Ruſſians* in the *Ukraine*, without conceiving a Jealouſy of ſo mighty a Power in a Neighbour, who had never been a ſincere Friend to that Crown, diſapprov'd of what he propoſed, ſaying, he had no other View in demanding the Crown, but to take Vengeance on the *Poles* for the Ravages they had committed in *Ruſſia*.

THUS, notwithstanding the great and uſeful Services which the Czar had done to *Poland*, in her laſt War with the *Turk*, into which he enter'd of his own Accord, through the Motives of a pious Zeal for the Chriſtian Religion, threaten'd with infinite Ills, if, during the Troubles which diſturbed that King-

dom, and put her out of a Condition to make any Resistance, the Infidels should have entirely subdued her, the *Polanders* entertained a Distrust of his Czarish Majesty, which by degrees extremely exasperated the Minds of both Parties.

JOHN SOBIESKI chosen
King of Poland.

JOHN SOBIESKI was chosen King, who being valiant, enterprising, and assisted by the Reputation he had acquired, great Matters were expected from him to release the Crown from the shameful Tribute, which the *Turk* had imposed upon her, and which he exacted with Haughtiness and Menaces. The new King sent an Ambassador to the Czar, to court his Friendship: *Alexis Michaelowitz* had a particular Interest to manage Matters so, that the *Polanders* might not make Peace without him, otherwise all the Forces of *Turky*, which nothing could hinder from being very considerable at the opening of the Campaign, would have fell upon *Russia*: Therefore his Czarish Majesty sent an Army into the *Ukraine* stronger than the former, under the Command of General *Romadanowski*. He divided it into three Bodies; the first marched towards *Czeberin*, a Town at the South Extremity of the *Ukraine* upon the River *Tes-zium*, which falls into the *Dnieper* at *Kyrlow*, where the famous *Cossack* Rebel *Dorosensko* had his Residence, who having taken up Arms against *Poland*, had drawn the *Turks* into the *Ukraine*, and was the Author of this War; the second Body took the Route of *Kaniow*, one of the principal Towns of the *Cossacks*, upon the *Dnieper*, about thirty Leagues from *Kiow*; and the third, which was commanded

by the *Cossack Hanenko*, advanced towards *Czirkassy*, a Town on the *Dnieper*, about twenty Leagues from *Kiow*; this Body of Troops had a Rencontre, on their Way, with another Body of the *Cossacks* of *Dorosensko*, who fought with great Fury, but were almost all cut to Pieces. The *Russians* attacked *Czeberin*, but *Dorosensko* who did not find himself strong enough to maintain so large a Place, set Fire to it, and retired to the Castle, with Hopes of being soon succour'd by the *Tartars*. The *Russian* General contented himself with keeping him shut up in this Fort, and employed the greatest Part of his Army in reducing all the other little Places of the *Ukraine*, and in destroying all the little Parties of *Tartars* that ran up and down the Country.

THE Czar, in the mean Time, to penetrate into the real Sentiments of the *Poles*, caused a Report to be spread, that the *Grand Seignior* desired nothing more than to make Peace with *Poland*, on Condition, that that Crown would join with him to drive the *Russians* out of the *Ukraine*. The *Polanders*, whose Jealousy had been excited by the Conquests the *Russians* made in that Province, fell into the Snare that was laid for them, and shewed, that they were not against such an Accommodation; the Czar caused Complaint to be made of this to the King, by his Minister, and offer'd, at the same Time, to join his Army to his, that they might act in Concert; but nothing could get over the Diffidence there was between the two Courts, nor conquer the Jealousy of the *Poles*, who

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

cared not to share the Honour of a Victory with their Neighbours.

WHILE Affairs were in this Posture towards the *Dnieper*, the King of *Sweden*, *Charles XI.* who had succeeded his Father, found himself much embarrassed. He had taken, as that Prince had done, the Part of *France*, from whence he drew large Supplies. And to hinder the Elector of *Brandenbourg* from declaring for the *Dutch*, with whom she was at War, he had sent Troops into that Electorate, where they were beaten near *Febr-berlin*, and this Battle was followed by a League made between *Denmark*, *Brandenbourg*, *Holland*, *Lunenbourg*, and *Munster*, who all together took up Arms against *Sweden*. It would have been all over with that Crown, if the Czar, who maintained a strict Correspondence with the *Dutch*, had joined so many Enemies to carry the War into the Heart of *Sweden*, whilst the others attacked her only in the most distant Parts, I mean, her Dominions in *Germany*. Therefore, as well to dissuade the Czar from such a Design, if it should be suggested to him, as to be exactly inform'd of the Affairs of *Russia*, his *Swedish* Majesty sent a solemn Embassy to *Moscow*.

THE Czar, who was not altogether ignorant of the Subject of the Embassy, was willing to give the *Swedish* Ambassadors to understand, that altho' he had actually an hundred and fifty thousand Men in the Field in the *Ukraine*, yet he had Troops enough to act as he would any where else; for this Reason they were to have a most magnificent Reception: And for that Purpose, were lodged for some Weeks
at

at *Nicolsko*, about a League from *Moscow*. The Ambassadors in their Way to that City, were met by twenty-four Regiments of Foot, of a thousand Men each, and eight thousand Horfe, of six different Nations, all armed, well cloathed, and well mounted. This long Proceffion of Troops was followed by feveral Companies of Merchants, richly habited, and by two hundred Pieces of Cannon, of which fome were gilt with Gold, and fome were plated with Silver. All the *Ruffian* Nobility preceded the Ambassadors, upon *Persian*, *Turkish*, and *German* Horfes, finely caparifoned. This Train marched fo slowly, that altho' the Proceffion began long before Noon, it was above five Hours before the Ambassadors arrived at the Palace that was appointed for their Entertainment. As foon as they entered into the Suburbs, they found three *Priests*, who receiv'd them in the Czar's Coach, while feventy Sumpter Horfes were diftributed among their Retinue. The Czar's Master of the Horfe began this fecond Proceffion at the Head of a fine Company of the Nobility, magnificently drefsed and superbly mounted; among whom was the Czar's Brother: But when the Ambassadors were to have their Audience, Count *Oxenftiern* would not confent to make his Speech to his Czarifh Majesty with his Head uncovered, which the *Ruffians* infifted upon, becaufe the *Swedes* had exacted the fame Thing from the *Ruffian* Ambassador at *Stockholm*, in the Year 1662. Therefore an Exprefs was to be difpatched to the King of *Sweden* on this Account, which Count *Oxenftiern* was not difpleafed with, as it

gave him the more Time to make his Enquiries.

DOROSENSKO, shut up in the Castle of *Czeberin*, pressed the Grand Seignior, without ceasing to send an Army into the *Ukraine* to drive the *Russians* thence: The Emperor of the *Turks* desired nothing more than to withdraw his Troops, with Honour, from *Poland*, and by some Means to engage the new King, whose Valour he dreaded, to listen to Peace. Thus the *Ottoman* Army crossing the *Niefter*, on a sudden, at *Sorakka*, threw itself into the *Ukraine*, where it seized on *Kosniek*, *Sciama*, *Jampul*, *Kuzsyn*, and several other little Places. They immediately sent five thousand Men to succour *Dorosensko*, but the *Russians* having intercepted them in their March, put them all to the Sword; this irritated the Rebels to such a Degree, that consulting with the *Turks*, they agreed to pillage all the *Ukraine*, that they might drive away the *Russians* for want of Subsistence. This barbarous Advice was but too well followed, for in less than a Fortnight all this fine Province, which was cover'd with a fruitful Crop, and all Sorts of Fruits, was reduced to a wild Desert, the *Turkish* Army, this Year, consisting of near four hundred thousand Men.

THE King of *Poland* look'd upon this Irruption of the *Ottoman* Army into *Russia* in a quite different Light from the *Grand Seignior*, and imagining, that his Highness would not have taken this Step but with a Design to fall with the greater Force upon *Poland*, after he had beaten the *Russians*, he resolved to march to the Assistance of his Allies. For this Reason,

fon, upon the News of the *Turks* having plunder'd the Country, taken *Ladiszin*, where four thousand *Cossacks* had defended themselves with much Courage, both in the Town and the Fort, and that from thence an hundred thousand *Turks* were gone to lay Siege to the great City of *Human*, he advanced with the Crown Army towards *Jawaroff*, where he made four large Detachments to find Diversion, and give the *Russians* an Opportunity not only to save *Human*, but also to take *Czeberin*, which they still kept besieged, and, at the same Time, to seize on the Rebel *Dorofensko*.

THIS Prince also had a great Number of Ships ready to throw a Bridge over the *Niester*, and carry the Fire into the Enemy's Country: At length *Cowvanski*, at the Head of the *Calmuck Tartars*, marched into the *Crim*; but all this could not save *Human*: The *Turks* caused eight great Mines to be sprung at the same Time, which opened to them a large Passage to begin the Assault, so that of above an hundred thousand Men, very few escaped. *Romadanowski* revenged this Massacre as much as he could upon the *Tartars*, commanded by the *Cham* in Person, who returned to the Succour of the *Crim*: The *Russian* General fell upon his Army, which he entirely defeated. Nevertheless upon the Report of the whole *Turkish* Army being on their March, *Romadanowski* thought proper to retire behind the *Dnieper*. This brought so much Terror to *Moscow*, that the Czar immediately sent a Reinforcement to his Army, of which he gave the Command to the Knez
Dol-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Dolgorucki, resolving to put himself in Person at the Head of it. For this Reason he caused his Son *Theodore Alexowitz* to be acknowledg'd his Successor before his Departure.

THE Crown Army was under the Command of the King, between *Leopold* and *Caminiec*, in order to incommode the Garison of this last Place ; so that the *Turks*, seeing no more Enemies, and their Army diminishing every Day, thro' Sickness and Famine, they retook the Route of the *Danube*.

THUS the Czar lost, all on a sudden, the Fruits of two Campaigns, during which he had subdued the greatest Part of the *Ukraine*. It was at this Time that all the Jealousy of the *Poles* discover'd itself; they sent a Plenipotentiary to *Kudzin*, to treat with the *Russians*, of whom they complain'd, as not having observ'd the Treaty of *Ardeskou*, since they had not restored *Kiow* in the Year 1670. The *Russians*, on their Side, complained of several Writings of the *Polanders*, wherein they had not shewn that Respect for the Czar which was due to him, and propos'd an Equivalent for *Kiow*.

DURING these Disputes, the Crown Army, which had only some rebel *Cossacks* at the Head of it, of the Party of *Dorosensko*, went on from one Conquest to another, till, in less than six Weeks, they had subdued all the *Ukraine* as far as *Kiow*. The *Russians*, jealous, in their Turn, of this new Progress, refused to furnish the *Poles*, that were incamped in the Neighbourhood of this Fortress, with any Provisions, 'till upon Complaint of the King, the Czar expedited Orders to the Weyvode

vode of *Kiow*, not to deny any thing to the Army of the Allies ; but he forgot nothing, that might prevent *Dorofensko* from making his Peace with the King of *Poland*, because the Rendition of *Czeberin* had put him in Possession of all the *Ukraine*.

WHILE these Things happened, the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* died in the Year 1676, at the Age of forty-six; he had had two Wives, one the Daughter of *Ilia Danielowitz Miloslauski*, as we have said before; the other the Daughter of *Cariloff Naraskin*, to whom he was married in the Year 1671, and who survived him, and lived till the Year 1694. By the first he had the Czarewitzes *Simon* and *Alexis*, who both died before him, the Czar *Theodore*, the Czar *John*, and the Princesses *Sophia*, *Catharine*, *Mary*, and *Sediasa*. The Children of the second Venter were the Czar *PETER* the Great, and the Princess *Natalia*.

*The Death of
the Czar A-
LEXIS MI-
CHAELO-
WITZ.*

HE had besides these a natural Son, whom he created a Knez, and whose Mother he married to a Nobleman called *Muschin Puschkin*; but when the Czar married his second Wife, this Lady, having through Jealousy, dropt some injurious Expressions against the new Czarina, both she and her Son were sent to *Astracan*, where they dy'd.

IT may be said, without Exaggeration, that *Alexis Michaelowitz* was one of the greatest Princes of his Time, and one of the best and wisest that *Russia* had known for many Ages. Tho' valiant, he never made War but when he could not avoid it; he was a Father of his People, and endeavour'd always to

to make them happy, and render the Weight of his Authority as light as possible. What did he not do to form them for War, and put them in a Situation to be respected by their Neighbours, as they were all his Life time? What Expences did he spare to succeed in his Designs, by drawing into his Service, with large Pensions, Foreign Officers, capable of instructing them in all Parts of military Discipline? It were to be wish'd, that he had, at the same Time, obliged them to observe some of the Customs, and Manners of these Foreigners, which might have establish'd a good Correspondence between them and the other People of *Europe*; but, besides that the Time was not yet come in which this great and useful Revolution was to be brought about, the great Father of Religion, the Patriarch, whose Credit was not yet at all diminished, opposed to this the ancient Usages, and the Fear of such Communication corrupting their establish'd Faith. In short, the Czar lov'd his People, lov'd Justice and Peace, and endeavour'd all the rest of his Reign, to repair the Ills, that his Favourites and Ministers had caused in his Youth, by abusing the Confidence he had placed in them. He would see every Thing done himself, and as a Proof of his Wisdom and Policy, it is sufficient to observe how he appeared the Revolt of *Stenko Razin*, who without the wise Precautions he took, threaten'd the Destruction of the whole Empire. His Policy likewise appeared in the Treaties he made with *Sweden* and *Poland*, and in the last War which he declared so *ápropos* with the *Turks*,
who,

who, without that, would have added the *Ukraine* to *Podolia*, and all *Poland* to the *Ukraine*; and what would afterwards have become of *Russia*, but to be made a Prey to that insolent Nation and the cruel *Tartars*?

I MIGHT add, as the finishing stroke to this short Sketch of his Picture, that the fine Education and the great Qualities, which were afterwards discovered in his Children, were Indications of his own Abilities. The Greatness of Soul in the Czar *Theodore*, the extensive Knowledge and great Policy of the Princess *Sophia*, and lastly, that Love for Glory, for Arts, for Virtue, and for his People, that were the Characteristicks of *PETER the Great*, were all so many Encomiums upon their Father.

PRINCE THEODORE ALEXOWITZ born in the Year 1657, was eighteen Years of Age when he ascended the Throne. His Father had caused him to be acknowledged his Successor, the Year before his Death, when he had taken the Resolution to put himself at the Head of his Army in the *Ukraine*, as we have mentioned before. This young Prince found his Affairs a little embarrassed. The War in the *Ukraine* had lasted three Years, and succeeded immediately to that which the Czar had been obliged to make with the *Cossacks*, so that his Finances could not be in a mighty good Condition; nevertheless he continued his Father's Design upon the *Ukraine*, and with the more Vigour, as he endeavoured to bring the Enemy to a good Peace.

THEODORE
ALEXOWITZ
comes to the
Crown.

THE GRAND SEIGNIOR having made Peace with the King of *Poland*, who indeed abolish-
ed

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

ed the shameful Tribute mentioned in the last Treaty, but left *Caminiec* in the Hands of the *Turks*, the Armies quitted the Field; that of *Poland*, reduced from fifty seven, to twenty three thousand Men, went into Winter Quarters; and that of the *Sultan* passed the *Niester*, and the *Danube*. By one of the Articles of the Treaty, the *Turks* offer'd the *Polanders* their Assistance to retake the Provinces which the *Russians* had conquered upon them; to say the Truth, the King had not accepted this Offer; but he did not reject it with that Cordiality which would have become a good Ally on the like Occasion.

By another Article of the same Treaty, the *Turks* surrendered to *Poland* all that Part of the *Ukraine*, that lies on the West of the *Dnieper*, reserving to themselves the Southern Part, which was under the Obedience of *Dorofensko*. The *Russian* Army had a fair Field opened to them, in which they found no Enemy to oppose their Enterprizes; so that in a short Time, they brought again to the Subjection of the Czar, not only all the Towns in the *Ukraine*, which the *Turks* had kept to themselves, among which was the strong City of *Czeberin*, but also some other Places yielded to the *Poles*. What was of most Importance in this Conquest, was the taking of the Rebel *Dorofensko*. This *Zaporoski Cossack* dissatisfy'd, as hath been said before, with *Poland*, had devoted himself to the *Turks* and *Tartars*, whom he invited into *Poland*, and especially into the *Ukraine*. Inconstant and a Cheat, he had often endeavoured to make his Peace with *Poland*; but always with an Intent to deceive her, and
altho'

altho' the *Grand Seignior* had sent him the General's Staff, he sought the Protection of the Czar *Alexis*, to whom he sent this Mark of his Dignity, that he might hold it only from him, and afterwards he treated with the King of *Poland*; so true it is, that a Man who is once a Traytor, is always a Traytor, what Party foever he embraces; therefore those who act prudently, altho' they may take their Advantage of the Treason, never place any Confidence in the Author of it.

THIS Expedition drew upon the Czar all the Forces of the *Ottoman Porte*, whose first Exploit was the Siege of *Czeberin*, but the *Russians* receiv'd them with so much Valour, that they lost, before this Town, a Part of their Army, their Baggage, and their Artillery, and retreated in Confusion, without thinking of making another Attempt during this Campaign; but it was to be fear'd, that the *Turk* would return with his best Forces the next Year to revenge this Affront; for this Reason the Czar sent early, in the beginning of the Year 1678, a Minister into *Poland*, to demand, in his Turn, the Succour which he himself had been ready to give his Neighbours, when distress'd: But so far from finding the *Poles* disposed to do the like, they not only excused themselves, on account of the melancholy Situation of the Affairs, which the late Troubles, and the last War, had brought the Kingdom into, as also on account of the new Treaty concluded with the *Porte*, which would be infringed by granting the Succours demanded; but the King sent himself two Ambassadors to *Moscow*, named *Zevorinski* and

and *Sapieha*, to take Advantage of the Necessity the Czar was in, and to exact from him some advantageous Terms. They demanded, "That General *Dorosensko* should be put
 "into their Hands, as a Rebel; that *Kiow*
 "and *Smolensko* should be surrender'd; and
 "that Satisfaction should be made them for
 "not joining them with a Body of thirty
 "thousand Men, as had been agreed by the
 "last Treaty:" Without considering that the Diversions that they had made in the *Ukraine* and in *Crimea*, had been more useful to the Crown Army, than the Junction of fifty thousand Men. At length after some Debates, a Treaty was concluded, in which it was agreed:

I. THAT the Truce should be continued for fifteen Years, comprehending the Years yet to come, and the preceding.

II. THAT the Czar should pay to *Poland*, as an Equivalent for *Kiow* and *Smolensko*, two hundred thousand *Roubles*, half in ready Money, and the other half in the Month of *November*, during the Diet.

III. THAT his Czarish Majesty should evacuate to *Poland* the Towns of *Vielisse* and *Nievel*, situated on the Frontiers of *Lithuania*; and as to the Restitution of some other Places, on which they could not agree, the Affair should be spoke of in the Diet.

IV. THAT all Prisoners on both Sides should be set at Liberty.

V. THAT a Resolution should be taken in the Diet, with respect to the Succours demanded, and the Junction of the Armies against the *Turks* and *Tartars*.

IT

IT was found, at the Opening of the next Campaign, that they had not been deceived, concerning the Efforts that the *Turks* would make.

THEY re-enter'd the *Ukraine* more formidably than the Year before, resolved to carry *Czeberin* cost what it would ; General *Romadanowski*, who commanded the *Russian* Army, advanced courageously to the Succour of the Place, and even obtained some Advantages over the Besiegers, who nevertheless did not raise the Siege, but on the contrary, having made a large Breach in the Walls, they took the Town by Assault, and put above thirty thousand Men to the Sword. The taking this Place confounded the *Russian* Army who retreated, the *Ottomans* pursued them as far as *Bukzin*, falling upon their Rear-Guard, but got no other Advantage over them, than defeating a few small Detachments made to amuse them, while the Body of the Army got to a Place where they were in Safety. Altho' General *Romadanowski* had made this Retreat with much Order, and in the View of a formidable Army, yet his Conduct was not approv'd by the Czar, with whom he was in Disgrace. Nevertheless, it is certain, that this Retreat obliged the *Turks* to make an End of the Campaign, for being in the Enemy's Country without Provisions or Magazines, they found themselves not in a Condition to undertake any thing, and therefore retreated in their Turn, beyond the *Niefter*.

WE have said above, that in the last Treaty, or Convention, concluded at *Moscow*, with the Minister of *Poland*, the Answer to the

T

Demand

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Demand which the Czar made of a powerfu Succour againſt the *Turks*, was referred to the Diet. This Diet was called together at *Grodno*, in the Beginning of the Year 1679, where it was put to the Queſtion, whether the Peace newly concluded with the *Porte*, ſhould be maintained, as it was not very honourable for *Poland*, or whether it ſhould be broke, and the Army of the Crown joined to that of the Czar, that they might attack the *Ottomans* together. The Emperor's Party, the Pope's Nuncio, and a Part of the Diet were for the laſt: But the *Polanders* were for acting as cunningly as they could with the *Ruffians*, and, therefore, as the Czar had asked for Succours, they, imagining he could not do without them, were willing to make him purchaſe them with the Reſtitution of thoſe Places, which the *Poles* had yielded to the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* by the Treaty of *Ardeſkou*. For this Purpoſe the King *John Sobieſki* ſent a Mi- niſter to *Moscow*, to make the Propoſition; but the Czar had too much Knowledge in Affairs to be taken in ſo: He knew what he had to expect from the jealous *Polanders*, and therefore answered the *Polish* Ambaſſador, that he was reſolved to pay no Subſidy to *Poland*, and that he required nothing but the Junction of Forces, that they might act in common againſt the common Enemy, to con- ſtrain him at length to agree to an honourable Peace with both States.

THE *TURKS* found no Advantage in a War with *Ruſſia*, ſince all the Conqueſts they could make in the *Ukraine*, were not worth a Quarter of the Expences they were at in bringing

bringing their Army into that Province; for this Reason, the Divan judged, that it would be for the Interest of the *Porte* to make Peace with the Czar; and the Sultan gave Orders to the Cham of *Tartary* to offer his Mediation to his Czarish Majesty. The Design of the *Porte*, which had just renewed the Truce, for twenty Years, with the Emperor of the *Romans*, was to get rid of all her Enemies, that she might afterwards fall, with the greater Force, upon *Poland*, and take from her all the *Podolia*. *Spendowski*, the Ambassador of the Crown at the *Porte*, had penetrated into this and given Advice of it to the King, who demanded Succours from all the Princes of Christendom, and particularly from the Czar. When this Prince found himself sought after, he imitated the Policy of the *Polanders*, and offered to join them with a numerous Army, upon Condition that they would renounce all their Pretensions in *Russia*. These did not reject the Proposition, but desired the Czar to send a Minister to *Poland* with full Powers to regulate the Affair, and settle the Time and Place of the Junction of the Forces.

THIS Minister made Propositions, that were very agreeable, but they were still accompany'd by Conditions so hard, that it was not difficult to discover, that he did not desire they should be accepted, so that the *Polanders* saw, that the *Russians* fought only to amuse them, or that they had already made their Peace with the *Turks*, and were not willing to break it without finding considerable Advantages thereby; and, indeed, those who made this Judgment were not deceived, for the

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Czar declared, that he would prefer a tolerable Peace with the *Turks*, to the Conditions which were to accompany the new Treaty of Alliance with the *Polanders*. In short, the Czar made his Peace with the *Porte*, who abandoned the *Cossacks*, that had put themselves under her Protection, and remained Guarantee of the last Treaty made between the Czar and the Cham of *Tartary*, who had engaged himself to put a Stop to his Subjects making any Inroads into the Provinces of *Russia*.

THE Czar *Theodore* from his first coming to the Throne, had been too much employed in military Affairs to execute all the fine Projects he had formed, for the Good of his People, and the Embellishment of the City of *Moscow*; but many Things he did in both. Faithfully attached to the wise Maxims of his Father, he protected, as he had done, Foreign Officers whom he drew into his Country from all Parts, and gave great Encouragement to all useful Arts.

HE paved the Streets of *Moscow*, raised many Stone Buildings there, and took great Pains to have other Cities repaired: For the Publick Buildings, that were of Wood or Brick he caused to be pulled down, and new Stone ones to be built in their Room. He lent Money out of the Treasury to be repaid in ten Years, and furnished Materials to private People, who were not in a Capacity to build such Houses in the City as he required. He was a great Lover of Horses, which proved very advantageous to the Empire: For he sent for good Stone-Horses and Mares from
Prussia,

Prussia, and set up several Studs, in convenient Places, whence in a short Time, there was a Breed raised, sufficient, in some Measure, to supply the Occasions of the Court, as well as of the Army. Among other Regulations, he also introduced a new Policy, for the better Government of the City of *Moscow*, and commanded the Streets of that City to be shut up at Night, and a Watch to be kept there.

THE Czar *Theodore*, at a certain Time, convened all the Nobility, and commanded them to bring their Patents and Charters of Privileges to Court, in order to have them confirmed: And when he had the Papers together, he threw the whole Heap into the Fire, and declared, that, for the future, their Liberties and Prerogatives should be grounded only on Merit, and not upon Birth.

As soon as he was at Peace he thought of marrying, and chose for his Bride *Opimia Routefski*, a Niece of the Boyar *Simon Iwanowitz Sabarofski*; with whom his Nuptials were celebrated with great Pomp in the Month of *August*, 1681; but this young Lady dying in the Beginning of the next Year, his chief Favourite and Privy Counsellor, *Jafykow*, persuaded him, notwithstanding the weak Condition he was in, to marry almost on his Death Bed, another Lady, named *Martha* or *Marvea Matweowna*, the Daughter of a Nobleman called *Mathias Apraxin*, merely to hinder, if he could, the Succession of PETER. The Marriage Ceremony was perform'd in the Month of *May*,

The Czar
THEODORE
dies.

1682, with great Solemnity; but was soon followed by a general Mourning, for Death snatched this excellent Prince from his People at an Age, that prevented his doing those great Things he had designed for his Country, and to the inexpressible Grief of all his Subjects.

THE Czar *Theodore Alexowitz* had no Children, but left, at the Time of his Death, two Brothers, *John* and *Peter*, the first by the same Mother, the latter but his Half-Brother, so that most People imagined *John* would have been appointed his Successor; but *Theodore* having a greater Regard for the Welfare of his Country, than for a bad Custom, which in spite of all Objections prefers the Right of Primogeniture to all other Considerations, and judging his Brother *John* who was but weak in his Understanding, as well as his Sight, unfit to hold the Reins of Government, and provide for the Necessities of a State just emerging from the Barbarism in which it had been plunged by the savage Manners of its antient Sovereigns, declared Prince *Peter* for his Successor, who by his worthy Actions acquired the Surname of *Great*, and by the happy and well-judg'd Alterations he made in the Usages and Manners of the *Russian* Nation, well deserved the Title that was given him of *Father of his Country*.

The End of the Fourth BOOK.

T H E

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
LIBRARY
540 EAST 57TH STREET
CHICAGO, ILL. 60637



*Peter the Great presents Truth, Religion and the Arts
to ancient Russia; Petersburgh is seen at a Distance
and y^e Ancient Modes giving Place to the New.*



THE
HISTORY
OF
R U S S I A,
To the End of the REIGN of the
Empress CATHARINE.

BOOK V.

The CONTENTS.

*The Beginning of the Reign of PETER
the Great.*



S I have already wrote the History of the Life of *Peter I.* in three Volumes, I shall refer to those for a particular Detail of the Circumstances of that great Emperor's Reign, contenting myself, in this Place, to present the Reader with a Recapitulation of what hath been said in that Work, adding what hath come to my Knowledge since that was publish'd.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

PETER THE GREAT came to the Throne, upon the Death of his Brother *Theodore*, in the Year 1682, when not above ten Years of Age; but a Rebellion that was soon after raised, by the turbulent Spirit of the Princess *Sophia*, his Half-Sister, would not allow him the quiet Possession of it, till his elder Brother *John* was proclaimed Czar in Conjunction with him, which was done the Year following.

THE Czars being both very young, the Princess *Sophia*, who was a Woman of a masculine Spirit, and great Policy, got the Administration of the Government into her own Hands; but the Traytor *Couvanski*, President of the * *Strelitzes*, who had been one of the chief Instruments in the Revolution lately brought about, presuming upon the Power he found himself possessed of, was very troublesome, and even had the daring Ambition to aspire at placing the Crown itself on the Head of his own Son. The Princess *Sophia* and her Favourite Prince *Galiczin*, soon found Means to rid themselves of this insolent Man, and punish him for all his Crimes at once, even those which she had consented to herself; but not till he had let loose his *Strelitzes* to plunder and murder all who were not of his Party in *Moscow*, and had driven the Imperial Family to seek Shelter in the *Troitsky* Monastery, about sixty *Russ* Miles from the City, from whence the Princess sent an Invitation to all the Boyars to an intended Feast, and particularly to *Couvanski*,

* These were establish'd Forces, or Guards, like the Janissaries among the Turks, of which 20,000 were used to be quarter'd in *Moscow*.

who

who yet continued his Cruelties at *Moscow*, which she artfully seemed to approve ; but contrived to have him way-laid in the Road to the *Troitsky Monastery* by two hundred Horsemen, who, according to their Instructions, carried him and his Son into an House, and cut off both their Heads at the same Instant.

THE STRELITZES, when they first heard an Account of this, began to mutiny, and vowed Revenge against the Government, that had deprived them of their Chief. The Court, seeing the Danger with which the State was threaten'd, raised their other Forces, who bore an implacable Hatred to the *Strelitzes*, than whom they were much better disciplined, and were commanded by *German* Officers, against whom, or any regular Force, the *Strelitzes* were little able to stand; so that their Hearts sinking, and finding themselves without a Leader, they made Offers of Peace, which being accepted, the Czars immediately returned to *Moscow*, accompanied by the Nobility and *German* Officers: And the *Strelitzes* meeting them, prostrated themselves at their Feet, and begged for Mercy; the Czars thereupon making a Sign that they forgave them, the penitent Soldiers poured forth Tears of Joy, to see their Sovereigns returned to their Capital in so mild a Disposition.

THIS Commotion being quieted, the Princess *Sophia* thought of making new Regulations in the State, and of giving Laws to her Sovereigns, and the very same Day created her Favourite Prince *Galliczin* Grand Chancellor,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

cellor, and *Wrenimienk*, which answers to the Post of First Minister.

GALLICZIN was one of the ablest Statesmen, and most polite Man in *Russia*, which he nobly resolv'd should make a Figure with the rest of *Europe*; for this Reason, in the Disposition of the principal Offices in the State he regarded Merit more than the mere Pretensions of high Birth, and the Interests of particular great Families, which drew upon him the Hatred of many, but that did not hinder him from exerting his Authority. He advis'd, at this Time, a Treaty with *Sweden*, and soon after the Conclusion of the Peace with that Crown, came to an Accommodation with the *Poles*, who gave up their Pretensions to the *Ukraine*, the Duchy of *Smolensko*, and other Territories conquer'd by the *Russians*; the Czars, on their Part, being to make War on the *Precops*, and prevent their Incurfions into *Poland*.

THE TURKS preparing to enter *Crimea*, Prince *Galliczin* nam'd several Lords as proper to command in the Expedition against them; but the Boyars, who were his Enemies, under Pretence of doing him Honour, insisted that no one was so fit for that Command as himself, which he was oblig'd to accept of, tho' much against his Inclination, being a much greater Statesman than Soldier, and knowing that tho' he had many Difficulties to encounter, and but a raw and undisciplin'd Army to lead against the Enemy, if any ill Success should happen, it would be all imputed to him, notwithstanding he us'd the utmost Precaution.

THE

THE RUSSIANS having joined the *Hettman* of the *Cossacks* in the *Ukraine*, they took the Field together on the first of *May* 1687, with an Army of three hundred thousand Foot, and an hundred thousand Horse; but having no Success, the Army was disbanded, and Prince *Galliczin*, to excuse himself, threw all the Blame of the Miscarriage upon *John Samuelerrich*, Hettman of the *Cossacks*, who was therefore deposed, and sent into *Siberia*: *Mazeppa*, who had formerly been a Page to *John Casimir*, King of *Poland*, being chosen Hettman in his Room.

PRINCE GALLICZIN, at his Return to *Moscow*, notwithstanding he had done so little, was received by the Princess with all the Marks of Favour he could wish, and took upon him the Management of Affairs with as much Authority as ever. This great Favourite, and the Princess Regent, not a little alarmed at the surprising Genius they discover'd in the young Czar *PETER*, took all the Ways that were possible to stifle in him those Seeds of Virtue which afterwards grew up and flourished with so much Glory to himself and his Country. The Princess had before this deprived him of his Governor *Menefius*, a *Scotchman*, well qualified for that Employment, because he was not to be brought over to her Interest; and now they engaged him in such Company, and such Diversions as they imagined would give him little Relish of any thing that might make him capable of thwarting their Designs, or of being willing to take upon himself the Trouble of Government: And as for his

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

his Brother *John*, he had neither Capacity nor Constitution to undertake any thing to disturb them.

PETER mar-
ries.

IN the mean Time, the Friends of the Czar *Peter*, apprehending their Designs, used their Endeavours to counter-plot them, and having got Prince *Galliczin* out of the Way on a second Expedition to the *Crim*, they found Means to prevail upon *Peter* to marry in his Absence, being now in the 18th Year of his Age. The young Lady he made Choice of was named *Ottokesa Federowna*, Daughter of the Boyar *Feoder Abrahamowitz*, which bold Stroke greatly encreased the Party of the Czar PETER, all the young Men, whose Fathers followed the Princess, declaring for him.

A Conspiracy
against his
Life.

By this Marriage, Prince *Galliczin*, at his Return, found all his Measures broken ; but being supported by the Princess's Authority, they made a bold Attempt against the Life of *Peter*, the Princess foreseeing, that this Brother, if not timely prevented, would one Day not only be the Ruin of all her ambitious Designs, but perhaps oblige her to return to the Convent, from whence she had withdrawn herself, contrary to the usual Custom of those who have once taken Refuge there. Princess *Sophia* and *Galliczin*, in order to accomplish their Ends, brought *Mazeppa*, the new Hettman of the *Cossacks*, into the City of *Moscow*, with five hundred of his principal Officers, in order to assist them, tho' under Pretence of doing him Honour, and presenting him to do Homage to the Czars. They had moreover pitched upon *Theodore*
The-

Thekelavitan to be the principal Instrument in the bloody Enterprize.

THIS Man had been raised, by the Princess, to the Dignity of President of the *Strelitzes*, in the room of *Courvanski*, and had promised a punctual Obedience to all her Commands. At the Time when the Plot was ripe for Execution, the Czar *Peter* was at one of his Country Houses, called *Obrogensko*, upon the River *Yarus*, about a League from *Moscow*; thither he went at the Head of six hundred of his *Strelitzes*, all Men, as he thought, to be relied on; but whilst he was giving his Orders, two of the Number, shocked at the Thoughts of staining their Hands in the Blood of their Sovereign, stole off privately, and gave the Czar Notice of the Plot against him, by which early Intelligence, he found Means to get off, and secure himself in the *Troitsky* Monastery. *Thekelavitan* was punished with Death, and the Princess *Sophia* not only lost her Authority, but was confined all the rest of her Days. Her Death did not happen till fifteen Years after, during which Time, several Commotions were raised in her Favour.

ALTHO' the Name of the elder Brother *John*, was mentioned with *Peter's* in the Beginning of all publick Acts, yet the latter seemed to have all the Authority of the Government in himself; but did not give many Presages at this Time, of being the great Prince he was afterwards found to be; taking Delight in many idle and cruel Diversions, and being very much governed by his young Favourite *Boris Galliczin*, a near Relation of
Prince

Prince *Galliczin*, but Master of none of his good Qualities or Talents, being a Debauchee himself, and introducing none but such to the Czar's Favour. However the *Naraskins*, the Czar *Peter*'s Relations by his Mother, at length found Means to remove the Favourite, and put themselves in his Place; but these being fond of the antient Customs of their Country, were for destroying several wise Regulations made by the great Prince *Galliczin*; they again forbid all Foreigners coming into *Muscovy*, who had been encouraged by Prince *Galliczin*, and were reducing Things apace to their antient State of Ignorance and Tyranny, if these Misfortunes had not been prevented by *Peter*'s casting his Eye on a new Favourite, one M. *Le Fort*, to whom was owing the first Foundation of the *Russian* Grandeur, and from whom *Peter* imbibed such Notions of Virtue, and Propriety, as made him afterwards one of the greatest Princes that ever reigned, either in that Country, or any other.

THE Manner of this *Le Fort*'s coming into *Russia*, I have given an Account of, in the first Volume of my Life of *Peter*, from M. *de la Motraye*, who seems to have been the best informed upon that Subject. *Peter*, who from his Childhood had always a strong Inclination to all military Affairs, discoursing one Day with M. *Le Fort*, on the Customs of foreign Countries, and particularly of *Denmark*, from whence he last came, asked him some Questions concerning the King of *Denmark*'s Guards, and what he thought of his own, bidding him speak his Mind freely. *Le Fort* took this Occasion to inform him of the Dis-

cipline and Manner of cloathing Troops in other Countries, with which *Peter* was so well pleased, that he ordered his Army should be disciplined and cloathed according to his Directions, and entered himself into it, even in the meanest Post, that of a Drummer, strictly forbidding his Captain to remember he was Czar; he served with all due Submission, lived upon his Pay, and lay in the Tent of a Drummer, till promoted to the Degree of a Serjeant, which was not till he deserved it, in the Judgment of his Officers, whom he would punish if they judg'd too favourably of him.

PETER enters into the Army as a Drummer.

Made a Serjeant.

WHEN *PETER* found himself furnish'd with Soldiers better disciplined, he resolved to lessen the Strength of the *Strelitzes*, who were too much attached to the Princess *Sophia*; and now to the utter Extinction of all the Hopes of that Sister and her Party, the Czarina was deliver'd of a Son, who was named *Alexis Petrowitz*.

The CZAREWITZ born.

THE CZAR highly pleased with the Foreigners whom *M. Le Fort* had procured for his Guards, consulted the same Gentleman about introducing others into *Russia*, of different Professions, that he might cultivate Arts and Sciences among his People: In order to which *Le Fort* advised his Czarish Majesty to make some new Regulations in his Finances, which answered so well, that it put it in his Power to encourage Foreigners to leave their own Country, and settle in *Russia*, where soon appeared a great Number, especially *Germans*, *Scots*, and *French*, both experienced Soldiers, and Men skilful in other Sciences.

PETER regulates his Revenues, and encourages Foreigners.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

LE FORT, altho' he advised the Czar to give this Encouragement to Foreigners, did not forget to recommend such of the Natives of *Russia* to Preferment whom he himself, or some of those Foreigners had taken Pains to qualify for the most profitable Employments. Among others *Alexander Menzikoff*, just then taken into Favour by the Czar, was indebted to him for being qualified for the great Posts he afterwards enjoy'd.

IN the Year 1691, *Peter* put away his Wife, having some Suspicion, as was pretended, of Disloyalty in her, and caused her to be closely confined all the rest of her Life. The Year following an Embassy was sent, by the two Czars, to *China*, in order to settle a Trade with that Nation. About the same Time *Peter* presented the *Russians* with a Scene that was intirely new to them. Having discoursed with his Favouite M. *Le Fort* concerning Shipping, that ingenious Gentleman gave him so high an Idea of the Advantages that the Maritime Powers of *Europe* reaped from their Naval Affairs, that from that Instant, he resolved to turn his Views that Way; and immediately gave Orders to some *Hollanders* who were at *Moscow*, to build several small Vessels, and afterwards four Frigates of four Guns each, with which he often diverted himself upon the *Perislanfsky* Lake, and caused now and then Mock-Fights to be performed thereon, in which he acted as a Sea Captain, and from thenceforward took that Title upon him.

THE Year following [1695] the *Russians* having declared War with the *Turks* and *Tartars*,

*The first Rise
of Ship-build-
ing in Rus-
sia.*

tars, Peter commanded several Galleys, and other Vessels to be built and equip'd on the River *Veronis*, which, with some open Boats of the *Donsky Cossacks*, he employed in the Siege of *Azoph*. The same Year beheld the first Campaign of the two most formidable Monarchs of Europe, Peter I. Czar of Muscovy, and Mustapha II. Emperor of the Turks. The Czar, in this Expedition, entered himself as an Ensign only, but had an Army of eighty or ninety thousand well disciplined Men divided into two Bodies, one to attack the Town of *Azoph*, and the other to support the *Donsky Cossacks*, and make Head against the *Tartars* if they should attempt to throw any Succours into the Town; but this the *Turks* were able to do by Water, and, making frequent Sallies, held out a resolute Defence for above two Months, during which Time the Czar Peter was every where, saw all Things done himself, and made his Remarks upon what happened.

PETER's first Campaign.

Becomes an Ensign.

THE *Russians* had constantly the better when they skirmished with the Enemy, and began to play their Battery with good Success, when the Progress they had made was all rendered fruitless by the Treachery of an Engineer, who being ill used by the Boyar he served under, nailed up the Cannon upon the Batteries he was intrusted with, and deserted in the Night-Time to the Enemy, which forced the *Muscovites* to leave the Place for that Year, and turn the Siege into a Blockade. Soon after Peter's Return to *Moscow*, the Czar John died, which was in the Month of February, 1696.

Goes a second
Time against
AZOPH.

Takes and sinks
several TUR-
KISH Vessels.

AZOPH sur-
rendered.

PETER re-
solves to build
a Fleet.

PETER, now sole Monarch of *Russia*, having employed several *Venetians* and others to build more Ships at *Veronis*, and finding them in a good Condition to fall down the River *Don*, went a second Time against *Azoph*, and acted with great Boldness and Vigour aboard his own Fleet. When the *Turks* came before the Bar, he laid an Ambuscade behind a small Island, and then, making a Shew of retiring, fell upon them, and took and sunk several of their Vessels, beating them back over the Bar. His Czarish Majesty having largely recruited his Army, which was under the Command of General *Gordon*, a *Scotchman*, the Siege was carry'd on with such Resolution, that the Enemy finding themselves disappointed of the Relief they expected and every way distressed, were obliged to surrender the Place.

THE Czar finding by Experience the great Advantage of a maritime Force, resolved to establish a Navy, that should not only secure his Conquests, but enable him to meet and oppose the *Turks* in the *Black-Sea*; for this Purpose, he sent for Workmen from *Holland* and *Italy*, to build Ships and Gallies, and used such extraordinary Methods to defray the Expence of it, that the *Russians*, who were naturally great Enemies to all Innovations, expressed much Uneasiness, and this gave an Opportunity to the discontented Party among the Boyars, to form a Conspiracy, wherein it was agreed to assassinate the Czar, to release the Princess *Sophia* out of Prison, and put the Crown upon her Head; after which the Conspirators were to restore the *Strelitzes*, who had been removed from their Posts, on the

Account of *Couvanski's* Rebellion ; and lastly, they were to massacre all Foreigners, and the Czar's new Favourites, who, they imagined, put him upon these Things which were so disagreeable to them : But this Plot was discover'd by two Captains of the *Strelitzes*, who discoursing together, were touch'd with Remorse, and immediately ran to the Czar at his Favourite *Le Fort's* House, and laid the whole Matter open to him, upon which the Conspirators were all seized and punished according to their Demerits. After which his Czarish Majesty prepared for his Travels, resolving to visit several Foreign Countries for the Improvement of his own.

IN order to which, he appointed M. *Le Fort*, now made a Lieutenant General, and Admiral of his Fleet, together with Count *Gallowin* Governor of *Siberia*, and M. *Wostri-festyn* Privy Counsellor and Secretary of State, his Ambassadors Extraordinary to the *States-General* of *Holland*, and went himself *incognito* in their Train, that he might have the better Opportunity of making his Observations, without being embarrassed with the Ceremonies he was to expect if he made himself known.

HE left the Administration of the Government, during his Absence, to three Bo-
yars, his Uncle *Naraskin*, Prince *Galliczin*, and *Peter Procorofsky*, to whom likewise he intrusted the Care of the Czarowitz *Alexis* his Son. Which done, he set out with the Grand Embassy for *Riga*, in the Month of
May 1697. The Governor of this City paid
great Respect to the Embassy, but refusing
to shew the Fortifications to *Menzikoff* and

PETER sets
out on his
Travels.

Comes to Ri-
ga.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

General *Le Fort*, with whom the Czar intended to have satisfied his own Curiosity, he was so much incensed, that he said to his Favourites, *He hoped he should see the Day, when he should be able to refuse the same Thing to the King of Sweden himself.* And this was afterwards, in a Manifesto he published, given as one Reason, tho' certainly not a very good one, for declaring War with the *Swedes*.

Next to KÖ-
NINGSBERG.

THE CZAR came next to *Königsberg*, in the King of *Prussia's* Dominions, then Elector of *Brandenbourg*, where he had all the Honours shewed him he could desire, and having discovered himself to the Elector, his Yachts were ordered to attend him, and nothing was deny'd him that he was willing to see or to have. It was in his Way hither, that he had Advice of the Elector of *Saxony's* being chosen King of *Poland* in the Room of *John Sobiesky*, deceased, and that the Cardinal Primate had protested against the said Election, in Favour of the Prince of *Conti*, who lay before *Dantzick*, with a Squadron of *French* Men of War. The Czar, as soon as he receiv'd this Advice, sent Orders to his Ambassadors then in *Poland*, to maintain the Right of Election, and to assure King *Augustus*, that he had 60,000 Men in Readiness to serve him. He likewise sent Orders to his Troops in the *Ukraine*, and about *Smolensko*, to advance towards the Frontiers of *Lithuania*, to keep that great Duchy in his Interest. The favourable Interposition of so powerful a Prince as the Czar, it is thought, had a great Influence on the *Poles* at this Time, but was a Step, that the Court of *France* could never forgive.

THE

THE CZAR taking leave of *Koningsberg*, ^{To DANT-}
 came next to *Dantzick*, in which City, and ^{ZICK.}
 most other Maritime Places, his Czarish Ma-
 jesty had very handsome Presents made to
 him under the Shew of doing it to the Am-
 bassadors, who were complimented with the
 highest Marks of Respect, but his Majesty
 would not suffer any Ceremony to be paid
 to himself. He went round the Towns pri-
 vately to view them, attended by the Go-
 vernor, or some few of the most considerable
 Persons, but without a Guard, or other At-
 tendance. He had so great Desire to be in
Holland, that he tarry'd not long at any of
 the Sea Ports in the *Baltick*, and but a few
 Days at *Hambourg*. On his approaching the
 Frontiers of the *United Provinces*, the *States-*
General appointed Deputies to receive the ^{Comes to}
Embassy with very considerable Presents, and ^{HOLLAND.}
 the greatest Marks of Honour that could be
 shewn on the like Occasion. Before the Am-
 bassadors arrived at *Amsterdam*, his Czarish
 Majesty left them, and enter'd that City *in-*
cognito, accompanied only by a few Merchants
 whom he had known at *Moscow*, and who,
 having private Notice of his coming, went
 out to meet him. The Magistrates also ha-
 ving some Intimation of it, deputed some
 considerable Persons to wait on him, with
 Offers of all Things necessary and suitable to
 his Dignity; and had also prepared a magni-
 ficent House for his Reception, but he was
 not to be persuaded to accept of it, chusing a
 little House on the *East-India* Company's
 Wharf or Ship-Yard, where he enter'd him-
 self as a common Carpenter, and was en-

rolled in the List of Workmen, by the Name of *Peter Michaelhoff*. Here he lived several Months with two or three of his Favourites, whom he took to be Partners with him in learning the Art of Ship-Building, but was observed to be more industrious, and work with greater Assiduity than any of his Companions, who, as M. *Fontenelle* observes, had not, indeed, any Motives comparable to his, which were to increase the Wealth and Glory of his Country. He work'd for the greatest Part of the Day with the Carpenter's Broad Axe, among the *Dutchmen*, wearing the same Sort of Habit that they did, for the better Disguise; and at other Times would divert himself with sailing and rowing upon the Water.

THE CZAR himself continued at the *Hague* for some Time after the Ambassadors were departed, that he might have a particular Interview with King *William*, on the Design which he had formed of coming to *London*. During the Time of his Czarish Majesty's Stay in *Holland*, he received the agreeable News of his Army's having obtained a Victory over the *Turks* and *Tartars*: Which was preceded by another Advantage gained at Sea, over the *Tartars*, who, thinking to surprize *Azoph*, had sent a large Number of Half-Galleys, with other Vessels full of Troops, to execute their Design on that Place. About the same Time that he received this News, he had an Account of the Death of *Charles XI.* King of *Sweden*, and of the Accession of his Son *Charles XII.* to the Throne of his Ancestors.

IN

IN the Middle of *January*, his Czarish Majesty embarked at *Helvoetsluys* for *London*. While his Majesty was in *Holland*, he had seen several *English* built Ships, whose Beauty and Proportion pleased him much better than the *Dutch* Ships, and understanding likewise that the *English* worked by Plan and Rule, while the People of *Holland* knew very little of the Theory of Ship-Building, he resolved to come over hither, that he might improve his Knowledge herein, to the utmost Perfection.

A handsome House was provided for his Czarish Majesty at the Bottom of *York-Buildings* near the Water-Side, which not being so agreeable to his Humour or the Design of his coming over, as one below Bridge, a very neat one was fitted up for him belonging to Mr. *Evelyn*, with a Back-Door into the King's Yard at *Deptford*, where he would often take up the Carpenters Tools and work with them; he frequently conversed with the Builders, who shewed him their Draughts, and the Method of laying down by Proportion any Ship or Vessel of what Body soever they required, with which his Majesty was wonderfully pleased, and thought he had mispent all the Time he had employed on that Account in *Holland*, saying he should never have learned his Trade if he had not come into *England*.

He had several Interviews with King *William*, and her late Majesty, then Princess *Anne* of *Denmark*, and several of the *English* Nobility, but was more pleased with the Conversation of the then Marquess of *Carmarthen*, than any other, with whom he delighted to talk of maritime Affairs, and who would row and

fail with him on the Water, and gave him all the Knowledge he could in the Affairs of the Shipping. In return of which, when he had settled a free Importation of *Tobacco* with some of our Merchants here, it was on Condition, that my Lord *Carmarthen* should have five Shillings for every Hogshead of *Tobacco* so imported.

THE King to divert his Majesty sent Admiral *Mitchel* along with him to *Portsmouth*, to put the Fleet out to Sea, which lay at *Spit-head*, where he was entertained with a Mock Engagement, which he had also seen in *Holland*, but not so much to his Satisfaction as this, which gave him so great Pleasure, that he declared he thought an *English* Admiral a happier Man than a Czar of *Muscovy*.

DURING his Stay in *England*, he went to see the Univerfity of *Oxford*, was once to visit the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, at his Palace at *Lambeth*, and went many Times to see our Cathedrals and Churches, to observe the Order of our established Religion, and had also the Curiofity to view our Quakers, and other Diffenting Meetings in the Time of their Service. He went to view the *Tower of London*, where he feemed much pleased with the Armoury, and the Manner of Coining Money. He was fhewn the two Houfes of Parliament when fitting, and was prevailed upon twice or thrice to go to the Play, tho' this was a Diversion he had not much Taffe for. His Czarish Majesty used to drefs after the *English* Fashion, fometimes like a Gentleman, and fometimes like a Sailor, going abroad with little Attendance, and when the Mob began to

to gaze at him, he would always quit the Place.

WHEN his Czarish Majesty left *England*, King *William* gave him Leave to take any of his Subjects into his Service, that he should have Occasion for, and made him a Present of a fine Yacht, called the *Royal Transport*. In short, his Majesty approved so well of all he had seen in *England*, especially relating to our Shipping, that he resolved to have nothing but *English* built Ships in his Country, and thereupon took several *English* Ship-Builders and Artificers to be employed in the Navy he was about to establish, among the rest Captain *John Perry*, recommended to him as a Person capable of serving him in several of his Designs, particularly in that of making a Communication between the Rivers *Wolga* and *Don*, the Distance of which Communication is about one hundred and forty *Russ* Miles, by way of two other small Rivers, the one called the *Lafla*, which falls into the *Don*, the other the *Camishinka*, which falls into the *Wolga*; upon these two small Rivers Sluices were to be placed to make them navigable, and a Canal of near four *Russ* Miles, to be cut through the dry Land, where the two small Rivers come nearest to one another. This was a fine Undertaking of the Czar, by Means of which a Trade was to have been open'd with *Persia*, by the *Caspian* and *Black-Seas*, besides the great Advantage it would be to the *Russians*, in case of a War with the *Turks*.

HIS CZARISH Majesty, after having been more than four Months in *England*, went
back

The CZAR
leaves ENG-
LAND.

back again to *Holland*, and from thence to the Court of *Vienna*, where the next Day after his Arrival, he had a private Audience of the Emperor *Leopold* at the Palace *de la Favourita*. Upon the 29th of *July* the Grand Embassy had their publick Audience, to which they were conducted in a very magnificent Manner, and were treated very splendidly at the Emperor's Expence. Whilst his Czarish Majesty was thus on his Travels, conciliating to himself the Affections of the greatest Powers of *Europe*, making Observations, and learning Arts for the Advancement of the Prosperity and Glory of his own Country, Intelligence coming frequently to *Moscow*, that he was extreamly pleased with what he met with in Foreign Countries, and intended to make great Alterations in his own Affairs as soon as he came home, the discontented Party, who were in the Princess *Sophia's* Interest, took a Handle from thence to infuse strong Jealousies into the Minds of the People, which were greatly fomented by the Priests, that his Majesty would subvert their holy Religion, and by bringing Foreigners among them, design'd to oppress his natural Subjects; upon which a Conspiracy was form'd to declare the Throne vacant, and place his Sister thereon in his Stead.

Another Con-
spiracy.

WHEN the Czar first had an Account of this Rebellion, he was preparing to set out from the Court of *Vienna* to *Venice*, which State, as well as *Rome*, he had intended to visit, if this News had not made him alter his Resolution, and sent him directly to *Moscow*, where he arrived with Expedition and Secrecy,

cy, to the Confusion of his Enemies, a great Number of whom he ordered to be executed in an exemplary Manner. The very Name of *Strelitzes* he commanded to be abolished and changed into that of *Soldatee*; a great Number of them were put to Death, and several banished into *Siberia*, and other remote Parts of the Kingdom. PETER settles his Army.

HIS CZARISH Majesty next turned his Thoughts on reforming his People and Government; he began with establishing his Guards, which were those Regiments that were settled in the Room of the *Strelitzes*, and put his whole Army on a new Footing, directing a new Manner of disciplining them agreeable to what he had seen abroad. After which he went down to *Veronis* to view the Ships that were building in his Absence, and to hasten the Equipment of the Fleet, that he designed for the *Black-Sea*. As soon as he came thither, he made the *English* his chief Master-Builders, and ordered that for the future no Ship should be built but after the *English* Models. Immediately upon his Arrival, he put a fifty Gun Ship upon the Stocks from a Draught he had made himself, and when he had proceeded a little Way on it, he left it to be carried on by two young *Russian* Gentlemen who had travelled with him, and learnt the Art of Ship-Building in his Company; ordering them to take Advice from the *English* Ship-Builders when they had Occasion; he also left Orders with his Admirals to get the Ships and Gallies, that were already built, rigged and in readiness to be carried down to *Azoph*, His Navy.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Azoph, whither he intended to go with them the next Spring.

Buries his Fa-
vourite LE
FORT.

HIS CZARISH Majesty had scarce Time to settle the Affairs of his Navy at *Veronis*, before he was hastened to *Moscow* by a Misfortune which might be accounted so to his whole Country, that was the Death of his Favourite *Le Fort*: A Man who had highly deserved all the Honours that he had or could confer upon him. The Czar was sensibly touch'd with the Loss, and order'd the most magnificent Pomp to attend his Funeral Obsequies, at which he assisted himself, crying with a loud Voice, *That he had lost his Father*. This worthy Minister left at his Death, which was but in the 46th Year of his Age, near a Million of *Roubles*, all acquired without Oppression or Corruption. He married into a very rich Family, the Head of which he had saved, as he had several others, from the Rage of his Master. He was *disinterested, humane, just, sober, generous, and brave*. Never was Servant more beloved by his Prince, or more deserving it. And what is not very common with Favourites, he gained his Master's Esteem by his Merit only.

Declares War
with the King
of SWEDEN.

THIS melancholy Office over, his Majesty chose a new Set of Lords to be of his Council; and instituted the Order of *St. Andrew*, Prince *Menzikoff*, being the first on whom he conferr'd it. About the same Time [*Anno 1699.*] by the Mediation of King *William* the Third, his Czarish Majesty prolonged his Truce with the *Turks* for twenty-five Years, and the next Day after the Ratification of it declared War with *Charles XII.* the young King

King of *Sweden*, as his Allies the King of *Poland* and *Denmark* had done before.

THE CZAR's true Motive for entering into this War, was the Hopes of recovering *Ingria*, formerly taken from the *Russians* by *Gustavus Adolphus*, by the Possession of which Province, he should be enabled to have a Port on the East Side of the *Baltick-Sea*, to complete his great Design of opening new Ways between that and the *Euxine* and *Caspian* Seas, and from thence to the Northern Ocean, which was to be done by cutting Canals to unite the Rivers *Volga*, *Tanais*, and *Dwina*.

WHILE his Army and Fleet were preparing for the ensuing War, he began his intended Reformation in the Church and State. He abolished the Office of Patriarch, who had assumed a most unreasonable Power and State, and made himself sole Head and Governor of the Church. He afterwards reformed the Government of the Provinces, and the Abuses in his Revenues. He altered the Commencement of the Year from the First of *September*, to the First of *January*. He set up several Schools; but one Method he took to preserve Arts and Sciences among his People, was indeed a little cruel, which was confining the Professors of them in his Country, by denying them Passports to return to their own.

THE CZAR's Forces being in Readiness, in the Year 1700, he appeared before *Narva* with an Army of an hundred thousand Men, hoping that if he could take this Town, he should open a Passage to the *Baltick*. It was on the First of *October* that he sat down before it, a Season very rigorous in those cold Climates.

Becomes a
Lieutenant.

mates. The Command of his Army was given to the Duke *de Croy*, a *German*, and he took no higher a Post than that of Lieutenant himself. In this Army he had only a Body of thirty thousand Men, who were the *Soldatees*, formed out of the old *Strelitzes* and *Germans* that were worth any thing; the rest were a rude Number drawn from the Wilds and Forests, who had never seen a Battle or regular Siege.

The famous
Battle of
NARVA.

THE King of *Sweden*, enraged at the Treatment he met with from three powerful Monarchs falling upon him at once, having first reduced the King of *Denmark* to sue for Peace, which was concluded by the Treaty of *Trøvedal*, crossed the Sea with two hundred Transports, and landed at *Pernaw* in the Gulph of *Riga*; after he had relieved that Town, besieged by the King of *Poland*, who quitted it upon *Charles's* Approach, he marched directly to *Narva*, with four thousand Foot, and four thousand Horse, and with this small Number, beat the *Czar's* Army of above an hundred thousand Men. Twenty thousand *Muscovites* were kill'd on the Spot, and the rest with their Generals *de Croy*, *Dolborouky*, *Gallowin*, and *Fredorowitz*, surrendred themselves to the young Heroe then but eighteen Years of Age, and laid their Arms at his Feet.

PETER himself was gone at this Time, to hasten the March of forty thousand Recruits from *Pleskow*; but thought it would be to little Purpose with such raw and undisciplin'd Men to engage the Victor just fleshed with the Conquest of an hundred thousand, so retired

tired to the Place from whence he came, and from thence went back to *Moscow*, which was most terribly alarmed at the News of this Battle; but the Czar was so far from being dispirited, that he would often say, "I expected to be beaten by the *Swedes*, and may again, but they in Time will teach us to beat them." Which proved true.

AFTER the Battle of *Narva*, his Czarish Majesty sent Answers to two Letters he had receiv'd, one from the King of *England*, and the other from the *States-General*, to let them know he would accept of the Mediation they had therein offer'd him to come to an Accommodation with *Sweden*, and that he should impatiently expect their Ambassadors for that Purpose; but in the mean while, he lost no Time in making Provisions for the War, and while his Preparations were making ready, he pursued with great Vigilance the Reformation of his People. He began first with ordering the *Muscovites* to be shaved, which was not done without Difficulty, the *Russians* having always had a great Veneration for long Beards. He next obliged them to alter their Drefs, which was ridiculous and cumbersome, and forced them to comply with the Fashions of the *Poles* in their Habits, pretty much like those of *France* and *England*. Considering the frequent and dreadful Examples that were made of executing Women for the Murder of their Husbands, out of Pity to his People, he resolved to remove, as much as was possible, the Occasion of it, which he took to be their coming together without any Liking or Affection for

one

The Czar reforms the Customs and Manners of his People.

one another, Matches being made, and young People joined in Wedlock by the mere Authority of their Parents, without any Regard to their own Inclinations. The Czar therefore order'd, that no young Couple should marry, for the future, without their own good Liking and Consent; and that all Persons should be admitted to visit one another at least six Weeks before Marriage; which Order was very agreeable to the younger Sort, and made them conceive a much better Opinion than they had before of Foreigners, from whom his Majesty had learn'd these Customs.

*An Interview
between the
Czar and
King AUGUS-
TUS at BIR-
SEN.*

THE CZAR'S next Regulation was to retrench the Equipages of the Boyars and other great Men, and a Draught being made of several thousand unnecessary and super-numerary Attendants, they were all sent to the Army; to which his Majesty was going himself with all Expedition; and in order the better to concert Measures against the ensuing Campaign, an Interview was agreed upon between him and his Ally *Augustus*, King of *Poland*, which was held at *Birsen* a small Town in *Lithuania*, wherein it was agreed, that King *Augustus* should furnish the Czar with fifty thousand *German* Troops, which he was to hire of the Princes of the Empire, and the Czar was to pay them; who, on his Side, agreed to send a like Number of *Muscovites* into *Poland*, to be trained up in military Discipline, and in two Years Time was to supply King *Augustus* with three Millions of Rix-Dollars.

THE King of *Sweden* informed of these Things, hastened into *Livonia*, where he gave

a signal Overthrow to the Duke of *Courland*, who commanded the *Saxon* Army, in the Room of King *Augustus*, then ill in Bed: He afterwards took *Mittaw* the capital City of *Courland*, and all the rest of the Towns in that Duchy yielded to him at Discretion. At *Birsen*, where the Czar and the King of *Poland* had met to contrive his Ruin, he first formed the Scheme of dethroning *Augustus*: And found but too many of his own Subjects ready to lend him their Assistance; for, as *M. de Voltaire* observes, the chief Subjects of this Country, proud of their Freedom, may be said to be Tyrants over their King, whom they choose more to increase their own Authority than with an Intent to be govern'd by him. The King of *Poland* was drove to such Straits, that he found he must either lose his Crown, or preserve it by a Battle, for which he prepared, and his *Saxon* Troops being all arrived from the Frontiers of his Electorate, and the Nobility of the Palatinate of *Cracow* coming in a Body to offer him their Services, he met the King of *Sweden*, on the 19th of *July*, 1702, in a large Plain near *Clissau*, between *Warsaw* and *Cracow*, with twenty thousand Men, *Charles* having not above half that Number. Upon the first Discharge by the *Saxons*, the Duke of *Holstein*, who commanded the *Swedish* Horse, received a Cannon Ball in the Reins, and fell by the Side of *Charles XII.* his Brother-in-law.

The Battle of
CLISSAU.

THE King of *Poland* behaved with great Bravery, but Fortune was on *Charles's* Side, who obtained a complete Victory; the Camp, Colours, Artillery and *Augustus's* War Chest,

X

were

were all left to him, and he himself fled before the Conqueror, who pursued him to *Cracow*, and afterwards was resolved to follow him farther without allowing him any Respite, but his Horse fell under him, and broke his Thigh, which confined him to his Bed for six Weeks, and occasioned a Rumour of his Death to be spread all over *Europe*. This Piece of false Intelligence gave fresh Spirits to the Followers of King *Augustus*, who made his Advantage of it, and assembling all the Orders of the Kingdom at *Mariembourg*, and then at *Lublin*, the Diet swore Fealty to him, and promised to maintain fifty thousand Men for his Service; but when *Charles* was recovered of his Wound, he overturned all before him, and called together an Assembly at *Warsaw*, to oppose that of *Lublin*, and continued so firm in his Resolution of dethroning *Augustus*, that he said, *if he stay'd fifty Years he would not leave Poland till he had accomplished it.*

At the same Time, some of the King of *Sweden's* Generals represented to him the Mischiefs the *Russian* Troops were doing to his, who daily engaged with them, and oftentimes greatly to the Disadvantage of the *Swedes*, in *Livonia*, *Esthonia* and *Ingria*. The Field Mareschal General *Czeremetoff* had twice defeated a Body of Men under General *Schlippenbach's* Command, and afterwards pursuing them over the River *Emback* in *Livonia*, put them entirely to the Rout. His Czarish Majesty himself, next marched at the Head of his Army, and took the Fortrefs of *Orescheck*, or *Nottebourg*, which was the Capital of *Inggermania*,

The Czar
beats the
SWEDES in
LIVONIA.

Takes NOTTE-
BOURG.

germania, lying on the Gulph of *Finland*, upon an Island, a little below where the *Neva* runs out of the Lake *Ladoga*. This had been taken from the *Russians* by *Gustavus Adolphus*, in the Year 1614, to which Fortrefs his Czarish Majesty afterwards gave the Name of *Slutelbourg*. His Forces next under the Command of Lieutenant General *Baur*, made themselves Masters of *Mariembourg*, which was, indeed, but meanly defended by a few *Swedish* Troops, and of itself no very strong Place. Among the Prisoners taken in this Town, was *Catherine*, who afterwards became Empress of *Russia*, and whose History will be the Subject of the other Volume of this Work.

ON the twentieth of *September*, 1702, News being brought to *Moscow* of the taking of *Nottebourg*, *Te Deum* was sung three Days after in the principal Church there, and in the Beginning of the Month of *December*, his Czarish Majesty made his triumphal Entry into that City. Not long after his Majesty took the Town of *Nieschantz* in *Ingria*, and observing, that about a *German* Mile lower down, the River *Neva*, dividing itself into several Branches, formed a Number of little Islands, this, from the Conveniency of the Situation, first inspired him with the Thoughts of building a City there, which should give him a Footing in the *Baltick* Sea; he went thither himself to sound the River, and view the Islands. After a Skirmish with some *Swedes*, about the Island of *Retusari*, he got Possession of the Place, and built the Fort there, called *Cronslot* or *Cronstadt*. Being more and more pleased with the Situation of the neighbour-

And NIE-
SCHANTZ.

PETERS-
BURGH built.

ing Country, he pursued his Resolution of building the City of *Petersburgh*, and in the Month of *May*, 1703, where, at that Time, stood only four or five Fishermens Huts, he raised the first House. He issued forth his Orders, that a great Number of Men from all Corners of his vast Empire should repair thither to put his Design in Execution. The Place pitched upon is inaccessible from the Depth of the River *Neva*, and the Country's being a Morass all round it. He was oblig'd to break through Forests, to open Ways, to dry up Moors, to raise Banks, before he could lay the Foundation of this new Town. The whole was a Force put upon Nature, but there were no Difficulties that he could not surmount, no Toils, but he would undergo to raise the Grandeur of his Nation. While this Work was carrying on, it is computed that no less than an hundred thousand Men perished in the Place, for want of Provisions, in a Country desolated by War, and where the usual Supplies by the Lake *Ladoga* were oftentimes retarded by contrary Winds.

THE Plan of the Works was drawn by the Czar's own Hand, who was an excellent Draughtsman: The City beginning by Degrees to be built, his Majesty obliged not only the Nobility, but Merchants and Tradesmen of all sorts, to go and live there, and to trade in such Commodities as they were ordered. This was not at all pleasing to the Persons of Distinction, who, in *Moscow*, had not only very large Buildings within the City, but also Country Seats and Villa's about it: However, as the Place was convenient, and agreeable

greeable both to the Design and Humour of the Czar, he paid no Regard to the Complaints of those, who preferred their own Ease and Luxury, to the Advantage of their Country. Artificers, Mechanicks, and Seamen were invited hither to encourage Shipping, and the Affairs of the Navy; and the Workmen having worked the Time out that was appointed by his Majesty, they were hired to build for the Boyars, and some of them even built Houses for themselves, and settled at *Peterburgh*; to which they were greatly encouraged by every Man's being allowed to pitch upon the Spot that pleased him best. So that in one Year's Time, about thirty thousand Houses were erected.

WHEN CHARLES XII. was told of these Buildings, while he was in *Poland*, he answered, " That the Czar might amuse himself if he pleased, with such Employments, but he should soon take them from him, and, if they were worth it, he would keep them, if not, he would set Fire to them." But he little understood the growing Power, and great Abilities of the Prince he opposed.

KING AUGUSTUS daily driven every where before the *Swedes*, sent an Embassy to *Peter*, to conclude a Treaty of Alliance offensive and defensive with him, which with many other Things he had done was so contrary to the Inclination of the *Poles*, that in the Assembly held at *Warsaw* in the Year 1704, he was declared incapable of wearing the Crown of *Poland*, and it was agreed that the Throne was vacant: Notwithstanding a Letter sent by the Czar to the Cardinal Pri-

AUGUSTUS
II. King of
POLAND de-
posed.

mate, and the Senators of the Republick of *Poland*, declaring all those his Enemies, who persisted in opposing their lawful Sovereign, and that he would punish them as such wherever he found them, and would not forbear till he had rooted them, like Weeds, out of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and great Duchy of *Lithuania*. This Letter had no Effect upon the confederated Nobility, though some of them represented, that it deserved to be maturely considered, because of the fatal Consequences the March of a *Russian* Army into *Poland* might be attended with; but prudent Consideration being inconsistent with their Designs, they resolved to go on, and proceed to a new Election, which would have fallen upon Prince *James Sobieski*, recommended by the King of *Sweden*, if that had not been prevented by his being surpris'd and forcibly carried off with his Brother *Constantine*, as they were hunting not far from *Breslaw* in *Silesia*, by a Party of Horse privately sent by *Augustus*, who afterwards confined both the young Princes at *Leipzig*. Upon which two other Candidates were nam'd for the Throne, Prince *Alexander Sobieski*, and the Prince of *Conti*, the first of whom was favour'd by *Charles XII.* but this generous young Prince, press'd to accept of the Crown which his Father had worn before him, absolutely refused it while his elder Brother lived, and the few Voices that appeared for the Prince *Conti*, besides the Cardinal Primate, made way for another Candidate, which was *Stanislaus Leszcinsky*, the Pa-

latine

latine of *Pofnania*, * who was then a young Lord, endowed with great Virtues and Merit, and who was foon declared King of *Poland*, and Grand Duke of *Lithuania*.

AUGUSTUS when he heard of this Election of *Stanislaus*, affembled the Council at *Sandomir*, and declared him a Rebel and Traytor to his Country; but while he was contending with his Rival by vain Declarations, the King of *Sweden* every where routed his *Saxon* Troops. The Czar *Peter* grew every Day more and more formidable; and, having a well difciplined Army, had made himfelf Master of *Dorpt*, and on the 21ft of *Auguft*, 1704, took *Narva* by Affault, after a regular Siege. The *Swedes*, the fame Year, uneasy to fee the Works of *Petersburgh* and *Cronfлот* go on with fuch Succels, attacked the laft Place, but were repulfed.

NARVA taken by the Czar.

I MUST, in this Place, infer an Incident which came to my Knowledge, fince the Publication of my Life of *Peter*, which fhews what great Care that Prince took in fettling the leaft Affairs relating to his Marine; the Account I receiv'd from a Gentleman who had it from Captain *Colville* himfelf, who was Master of an *English* Veffel the firft of any Nation, that put into the Harbour of *Cronfлот* as foon as it was finifhed. When this Gentlemen arrived within Sight of the Harbour, and made a Signal for a Pilot to come on Board him, a Perfon in a common Sailor's Habit obey'd his Summons, and brought the

* At prefent Duke of Lorrain, and Father to the Queen of France, Confort of Lewis XV.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Vessel safe into the Harbour; but the Captain, observing, as several Gentleman came, as it seemed, to view his Ship out of Curiosity, as the first that came into that Port, that they paid a more than ordinary Respect to the Pilot, he imagined he was some Man of Consequence, and, as it proved, perhaps the Czar himself, for which Reason he likewise used him with somewhat more Ceremony than he should have shewn to a common Pilot, which his Czarish Majesty taking Notice of, ask'd if he knew who he was? The Captain answer'd, that he had not the Honour to know him, but if he would give him Leave to guess, he took him to be the Great Czar of *Muscovy*. Well, said the Czar, you are not mistaken, but that shall not excuse you from paying what is due to me as a Pilot. I desire, Sir, you will give me the usual Fee that is paid upon these Occasions, and let it not be more or less than you would have given to another, because whatever that is, it shall be fixed as the Price to be given to all Pilots for bringing a Ship into this Port for the future. The Captain presenting his Majesty with some Pieces of Money to the Value of about three Half Crowns *English*, assured him he thought that would be a very proper Rate to be taken, and was what he should have offer'd to another. The Czar seemed very well pleased, did the Captain the Honour to stay and dine with him, and shewing the Money to some of his Courtiers, asked, *Which of them had earned so much that Day?*

In the Year 1705, the Czar having review'd his Troops, and put every thing in order,

order, prepared to open the Campaign. The Velt Mareſchal *Czeremetoff* marched before with eighteen or twenty thouſand Men, and his Maſteſty followed at the Head of his Army, entering *Litbuania* by the Palatinate of *Poloczko*. After this followed the Battle of *Gemaurthoff*, in which Action the *Ruffians* loſt five or ſix thouſand Men, the Velt Mareſchal was wounded, but the Victory was dearly purchaſed by the *Swedes*, who loſt General *Lindſchioldt*, Major General *Wrangel*, Colonel *Horn*, two Lieutenant Colonels, many Captains both of Horſe and Foot, a great Number of Subalterns, and near two thouſand private Men.

THE CZAR was at this Time at *Vilna*, with his Army, which he reviewed in the Preſence of the Grandees of *Poland*, who could not ſufficiently admire in how ſhort a Time that Monarch had diſciplined his Troops. The firſt Deſign of the Czar was to march his Army along the *Duna*, and form the Siege of *Riga*; but this Check that he received, and an Account that *Lewwenhaupt*, fearing to be overpowered by Numbers, had put Garifons into *Mittaw* and *Bautſke*, which he had placed in ſuch a Manner, as to be always ſure of a Retreat to *Riga*, made his Czarish Maſteſty change his Reſolution, and the rather, becauſe the King of *Sweden*, and King *Stanislaus* had convoked a General Diet at *Warſaw*, to put the laſt Hand to the grand Deſign of crowning the latter, which made it neceſſary for the common Cauſe, to endeavour to trouble that Aſſembly, whereupon the Czar publiſh'd a Maniſeſto to declare why

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

why he came into the Heart of *Poland* with an hundred thousand Foreign Troops, and to let them know that he would defend his Brother and Ally King *Augustus* to the Utmost of his Power.

His Czarish Majesty had been received a few Days before at *Vilna*, the Capital of *Lithuania*, by the Referendary of the Great Duchy in the Name of King *Augustus*, and all the States; felicitating his Country on having so powerful a Protector, who had generously undertaken to defend them from the Ruin that the *Swedes* would bring upon it without his Assistance.

THE CZAR'S Troops marched divided into three Bodies, that of the Velt Marefchal *Czeremetoff* was between the *Wilia* and the *Duna*, in *Courland*; the Hettman *Mazeppa*, to whom his Czarish Majesty had just given the Order of *St. Andrew*, was with fifty or sixty thousand *Cossacks* entered into *Black Russia*, to join the Party of *Augustus*, and the Velt Marefchal *Ogilvi* led that in which the Czar was in Person into *Lithuania*, and which was as strong as that of the *Cossacks*. While the Czar was here, two unsuccessful Attempts were made by the *Swedes* against *Cronstot*, and his new City of *Petersburgh*; but his Czarish Majesty made himself Master of all *Courland*, the King of *Sweden* not vouchsafing to send one Man to defend it, he was so much employed in the Business of continuing the Diet at *Warsaw*, and in his Design of crowning his King of *Poland*; which the Czar did what he could to prevent; when he came to *Grodno*, he fortify'd the Place, established Magazines, furnishing them

them not only with what he found in the Country, but with Things that he ordered to be transported from the Provinces of *Pleskow*, and *Smolensko*. On Account of the Dispositions, that his Czarish Majesty made for the Preservation of *Lithuania*, a Rumour was spread that he would take that Opportunity of uniting the Great Duchy to his own Dominions, by which Means the opposite Party thought to draw from him the Nobility of *Lithuania* and Upper *Poland*, who held out for King *Augustus*. This Prince had got together an Army of twenty thousand Men in *Saxony*, but it was almost impossible to bring them into *Poland*, all the Passages were so well guarded. However, he was so strongly pressed, by General *Patkul*, who was, at that Time, Ambassador with him from the Czar, and by the Accounts that he received from *Warsaw*, that he could not but be sensible how necessary his Presence was in that Kingdom; therefore he exposed himself to the almost inevitable Danger of being taken by his Enemies that he might join his faithful Ally. He left *Dresden* incognito, went to *Dantzick*, from thence to *Grodno*, and afterwards to the Army of his Czarish Majesty. At *Grodno* a Farce was performed, but such an one, says Monsieur de *Fontenelle*, as was at least instructive, and not unfit to be acted by Kings.

HIS Czarish Majesty, pursuant to the Laws which he had prescribed to himself, would never advance in military Dignities beyond what his Merits might claim: And having requested King *Augustus* to take upon him the Command of his Army, he caused the

*The Czar
made a Colonel
in his own
Army.*

the *Russian* General *Ogilvi* to propose in public the filling up of two vacant Posts of Colonels. *Augustus* said he was not well enough acquainted with the *Russian* Officers to know how to make a proper Choice; therefore desired *Ogilvi* to name two whom he thought worthy those Employments. *Ogilvi* named Prince *Alexander Menzikoff*, and *Peter Alexowitz*, meaning the Czar himself. The King of *Poland* said he knew the Merits of *Menzikoff*, and would forthwith dispatch his Commission; but for the other he was not inform'd of his Services, but after four or five Days Solicitation, he made *Peter Alexowitz* a Colonel.

THE CZAR, after this, left his Troops to his Ally, and went himself to put an End to a Rebellion raised in the Province of *Astracan*, the Chiefs of which was sent to *Moscow*, and there executed; but his Czarish Majesty had no sooner left King *Augustus*, but this Prince began to listen to some of the Grandees of *Lithuania*, who being very uneasy to see their Country ruined by the *Russians*, endeavour'd to raise Suspicions, which much diminished the good Understanding that had been between these two Sovereigns. The first Effect of this appeared in the Order that King *Augustus* sent to arrest *Patkul* in *Saxony*, who was suspected to be working secretly to reconcile the Czar and the King of *Sweden*. On the 12th of *February* 1706, the *Swedish* General *Renchild* with about ten thousand Men, and *Skullembourg* with about twice the Number of *Russians* and *Saxons*, met at a Place called *Fravenstad*, and, in an Engagement that

that did not last a Quarter of an Hour, *Rencbild* gained a compleat Victory over the latter.

THE Loss of the Battle of *Fravenstad* quite discouraged the Party of King *Augustus* in *Poland*, and put *Charles XII.* in a Condition to drive the *Russians* out of *Lithuania*, where the Nobility being weary of maintaining both Friends and Foes, began to declare apace for the new King. The Czar was at *Smolensko*, at the Head of twenty thousand of his best Troops, to which General *Mazeppa* had joined thirty or forty thousand *Cossacks*; for the present Posture of Affairs made the Czar think of the Defence of his own Dominions; besides, had he been ever so willing to assist *Augustus*, he was not to do all alone, and suffer his Army to perish by Hunger and Cold, to say nothing of the Seizure of *Patkul*, whose Release he demanded, without vouchsafing to give Audience to the Bishop of *Cujavia*, who was sent by King *Augustus* to sound him, and learn his Sentiments concerning his leaving him, after having done so much for him. Prince *Menzikoff*, some Time after, wrote him a Letter, in which he told him, that the Czar his Master had not withdrawn his Troops from *Lithuania*, but to re-establish them in a better Air, and to return to his Assistance the next Campaign.

CHARLES XII. having now joined his General *Rencbild*, entered into *Saxony*, where he brought the Hereditary Dominions of *Augustus* into such Danger, and lay'd the Country under such heavy Contributions, that the unfortunate King of *Poland* was forced to treat privately

The Battle of
FRAVEN-
STAD.

King AUGUSTUS forced to renounce the Crown of POLAND.

vately with him, and by a Treaty sign'd by his two Plenipotentiaries in the *Swedish* Camp at *Alt-Ranstadt*, he not only renounced his Crown, but was forced to acknowledge *Status* as lawful King, and promised not to remount the Throne even after the Death of the other. He was also to renounce all his Treaties with *Muscovy*, to restore the Princes *Sobieski* with Honour, and to deliver up *Patkul* as a Traytor to his Country.

WHILE this Treaty was secretly negotiating, Prince *Menzikoff* brought thirty thousand Men to join the Army of *Augustus*, who was in the utmost Confusion for fear the *Muscovites* should discover what he was about; but how great was his Perplexity, when he beheld ten thousand *Swedes*, under the Command of General *Meyerfeldt*, approaching him at *Calish*, near the Palatinate of *Pofnania*? He would have been glad to have declined the Engagement lest he should irritate a Conqueror, but too much incensed already. In this Extremity he sent one he could trust, to the *Swedish* General, to let him partly into the Secret of the Negotiation, and to desire him to withdraw; but this served only to hasten the Battle, which whether won or lost, was to be alike fatal to him.

VICTORY was now on the Side of the *Russians*; the *Swedes* and their Allies being encompassed on all Sides, were obliged to throw down their Arms and beg for Quarter; but when *Augustus* was entering into *Warsaw* in Triumph, *Pfingster*, one of his Plenipotentiaries, presented him with the fatal Treaty of *Alt-Ranstadt*, before mentioned.

WHEN

WHEN his Czarish Majesty heard of this extraordinary Affair, and of *Patkul* his Ambassador and General's being imprisoned, it is easy to imagine what Thoughts he entertained of such Conduct. This Treachery of his Ally thwarted all his Designs, and obliged him to retire to the Frontiers of his own Dominions, that he might secure his Conquests in *Ingria*, and *Livonia*. *Narva* was strongly fortify'd, and his People worked incessantly at *Petersburgh*, but he endeavoured, above all, to bring as many Vessels as possible into the Gulph of *Finland*.

THE *Swedish* Admiral made a new Attempt, with little Damage, on the Fortrefs of *Petersburgh*, and his Czarish Majesty, in Imitation of the Policy of the great *Hannibal*, carry'd the War into their own Country, by besieging *Wybourg*; but the *Swedes* used such Vigilance in succouring the Place, that his Design was rendered impracticable; he therefore retired into Winter Quarters, and called about him his most experienced Generals, to consult with them how to prevent the ill Consequences of what might be expected from what had passed in *Saxony*, and while his Army was recruiting, he took Pains to secure the Interest of those *Polanders*, who had as much Reason as himself to complain of King *Augustus's* having abandoned them.

It was at one Time propos'd in the Czar's Council, to retaliate the King of *Sweden's* Usage of *Patkul*, whom he had put to Death in a cruel Manner, to treat the *Swedish* Officers, who were Prisoners at *Moscow*, in the same Way; but the Czar resolv'd on a more honourable

nourable Revenge, and having gained the Principal of the *Poles* over to his Interest, he was requested by them to take the Republick under his Protection, which he agreeing to, it was resolved to call an Assembly at *Leopold*, at which, in the Month of *February* following, a great Number of the principal Grandees of *Poland* were found. In this Assembly, it was resolved to renew the Confederation of *Sendo-mir*, and the grand Question was, *Whether they had any King or not?* Which passing in the Negative, they talked of declaring the Throne vacant, and it was agreed to write to all Foreign Potentates, to desire them to forbear acknowledging any Person for King of *Poland*, till the Republick had notify'd to them what Prince they had elected. In the same Assembly, the General of the Crown read a Letter from the Czar, wherein he assures them, that he will enter into no Treaty of Peace, but in concert with the Republick: And soon after came himself to *Leopold*, with the *Czarewicz* his Son, then seventeen Years of Age, Prince *Menzikoff*, and some other Ministers. His Majesty was received publickly, with much Ceremony, and the highest Marks of Respect and Confidence. Well satisfy'd with the Assurances he had received, in this Meeting, of their inviolable Attachment to his Interests, he returned to *Zolkiew*, the Quarters of Prince *Menzikoff*, with that Favourite and the *Czar-ewicz Alexis*. And as a Report had been spread, that his Majesty had a Design to propose his Son, in the Diet of *Lublin*, which was summoned to meet soon after, for King of *Poland*, to prevent any Suspicions of that kind,

Kind, he sent the *Czarewicz* to *Moscow*, and to shew his Readiness to execute the Treaty he had concluded with the Republick, he immediately ordered eight hundred thousand Florins to be payed to the *Polish* Troops: That is to say, five hundred thousand to the Army of the Crown, and the rest to that of *Lithuania*.

FROM *Zolkiew* the Czar wrote to several Potentates, complaining of the Cowardice and Treachery, as he called it, of King *Augustus*, of the infamous Treaty of *Alt-Ranstadt*, and of the Violation of the Law of Nations, by the King of *Sweden*,

THE Assembly being met at *Lublin*, after many Debates, the Throne of *Poland* was declared vacant, and a Diet called for a third Election. His Czarish Majesty hereupon wrote a Letter to the Council to exhort them to Unanimity and Dispatch, urging the Necessity of choosing a new King, and to let all the World see, that they looked upon *Stanislaus* as Palatine of *Poznania*, and not their Sovereign. After much canvassing the *Interregnum* was published, and the Primate took upon him the Regency of the Republick: But, in the mean time King *Stanislaus* was acknowledged by most of the Princes and States of *Europe*, and, leaving *Charles XII.* in *Saxony*, he came into *Poland*, with General *Renschild*, at the Head of sixteen *Swedish* Regiments, and was owned as their Sovereign through every Place that he passed.

THE King of *Sweden* having now largely enriched his Military Chest with the Spoils of *Saxony*, and augmented his Army to the Num-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

ber of fifty thousand, besides the Troops of *Lewwenhaupt*, and *Craffau*, fought all Ways to bring the Czar to an Engagement; but *Peter*, seeing how largely he had increased his Forces, although he had before determined to give him Battle, thought it would be dangerous to run that Hazard in a Country without a Head, and divided into Factions; besides, he was just then informed of Propositions made to the King of *Sweden* and *Stanislaus*, by the Minister of the *Porte*, who was sent by the *Sultan* to offer to join them in an offensive Alliance against *Russia*, that they might force his Czarish Majesty to interfere no longer in the Affairs of *Poland*. The Divan saw with Regret, *Azoph* in the Hands of the Czar, and wanted only a Pretext to break with him. Moreover, *Charles* openly declared, that he intended to make *Russia* the Theatre of the War, and did not doubt but he should find many Revolters among a People become uneasy by the Alterations, that were made every Day in the Customs and Manners of their Forefathers. The Czar, upon this Intelligence, thought it would be most adviseable to withdraw, with his Army, to the Frontiers of his own Country, and by this Retreat, *Stanislaus* was left in peaceable Possession of almost all *Poland*.

HIS CZARISH Majesty from thence went to *Moscow*, where his Presence was absolutely necessary, as well to give Orders for the Repairs to be made on Account of a dreadful Fire, that had destroyed at least fifteen hundred Houses, as to punish in an exemplary Manner, those who were concerned in the late Tumult at *Astracan*. He afterwards gave Orders

ders to augment his Troops on the Borders of the *Black Sea*, and on the Frontiers of *Tartary*, that he might destroy all the Hopes of the *Turks*, in threatening to declare War against him. *Peter* had not been at *Moscow* for two Years before, and was therefore received with all possible Demonstrations of Joy and Respect. He held several Councils, in which he gave many necessary Orders relating to Affairs in the different Provinces, and had the Satisfaction to see the last Hand put to the *Royal Dispensary*, which was a superb Building, and one of the greatest Ornaments of the City of *Moscow*. From hence the Drugs and Medicines were furnished for the Army and Fleet. Dr. *Areskine*, a *Scotchman*, chief Physician to the Czar, was the first Director of the House, with an yearly Pension of fifteen hundred Ducats. His Czarish Majesty likewise saw with Pleasure, the Hospital for sick Persons finished, which was a Structure of Wood on the Banks of the River *Jonsa* in the *German Slaboda*: On one Side of which was a Manufactory of Cloth, which was at first put under the Direction of a Draper, who was sent for, by his Majesty, from *Holland*; and on the other Side the River *Moscua*, was a Glass House for making large Looking-Glasses. Thus did the Czar *Peter* provide for the Honour and Welfare of his Subjects at home, even while he was deeply engaged in Wars and Negotiations abroad.

HIS CZARISH Majesty had but just celebrated the first Day of the new Year [1708.] when Advice was brought him from Prince *Menzikoff*, that the King of *Sweden* was in

The Czar goes
to GRODNO.

Motion to re-enter *Lithuania*. *Peter*, whose Scheme was always to keep the Enemy as far out of his own Dominions as possible, made hast to *Grodno* to dispute the Passage of the *Niemen* with the *Swedes*, since they could not be hindred from passing the *Vistula*, from whence *Charles XII.* with his Army marched with much Speed towards *Lithuania*, in spite of all the Obstacles he met in his Way. The Czar was in *Grodno*, when the King of *Sweden*, with about six hundred Men, approached the Town. The *Russians*, taking this Handful of Men to be the Vanguard of the *Swedish* Army, marched out at the North Gate, while *Charles* entered at the South; but the Czar, soon understanding to how small a Number he had quitted the Town, sent a Detachment of two thousand Men to surprize the King; but they were forced to retire, and the most favourable Opportunity, that they had ever had of making their own Conditions with the Enemy, was lost.

THE CZAR gave Orders to the several Bodies of his Troops to rendezvous in the Palatinate of *Minski*, but seeing he had neither Magazines, nor a safe Retreat there, he thought proper to draw off his Forces towards the *Dnieper*, where he might wait for the Enemy behind good Lines, and attack him with Advantage, after he was fatigued with a long March over a desolate Country. The King of *Sweden* inform'd of the Rout the *Russian* Army had taken, resolv'd to intercept it in its March; but the good Management of the Czar obliged him to change his Purpose, and confined him for
some

some Time in the Palatinate of *Wilna*: During which Time his Czarish Majesty sent General *Baur* to lay the *Polish Livonia* waste, from whence he went into *Swedish Livonia*, where he ravaged and pillaged every Place, formed a large Magazine, and posted his Men along the *Duna*, of which he remain'd Master, notwithstanding the Neighbourhood of *Lewwenhaupt*. General *Goltz* had Orders to go with fifteen thousand Men to *Volbinia* to join twelve thousand *Cossacks*, that they might take the *Swedes* in Flank in their Motions, which Measures and others were attended with such good Success, that the *Swedes* were obliged to canton their Army, and encamp till the Month of *May* for want of Forage and other Necessaries; besides which, altho' no Battle was fought, their Numbers were very much diminished; whilst the Czar, with his greatly augmented, crossed the *Dnieper*. His Majesty soon after intending to go to *Petersburg* to hasten the Equipment of his Fleet, which was designed to be very considerable, but falling ill at the Instant he was setting out, he was carried to *Smolensko*, leaving the Care of his Army to the Generals *Czeremetoff*, *Menzikoff*, *Galliczin*, *Allard*, *Repnin*, and *Pflug*, who were at *Mobilow*.

SINCE the Possession of *Narva*, and his Building *Petersburgh*, his Czarish Majesty had raised his Marine to that Power, that his Fleet at this Time made a Descent in *Finland*, without the *Swedish* Admiral daring to enter upon Action with her, and a great Number of Barks laden with Provisions for *Stockholm* were taken and carried to *Petersburgh*. During his

Czarish Majesty's Illness, was fought the Battle of *Holowzin*, which was said to be the most glorious Action *Charles XII.* had been engaged in, and that wherein he shewed the greatest Skill, and was exposed to the most Danger. He forced the *Russians* to repass the *Dnieper*, and staid himself some Time about *Mobilow*, as well to refresh his Army, as to consult what Measures were to be taken in an Enemy's Country, unknown to him, into which he was just upon entering, with a Design to pursue the *Muscovites*, even to their Capital; but the Czar being recovered, arrived in his Army two Days after this Action, and quitted it no more till he had intirely defeated the King of *Sweden*, who now finding his Army much weakened, sent Orders to General *Leuwenhaupt* in *Courland*, to come and join him with all the Troops he could get together, which not coming up so soon as he expected, and being weary of the Place where he was, every Thing being extreamly scarce, he resolv'd to pass the *Dnieper*, and, it may be said, ran headlong upon his own Ruin. It was here the Czar waited for him, not ill pleased to find his Enemy on that Side the River, in a Country where he was neither to hope for Succours, nor a safe Retreat. Soon after this, happened the Rencounter of *Czarnapata*, in which the King of *Sweden* lost a great Number of Men, and Prince *Galliczin* behaved so well, that his Czarish Majesty honoured him with the Honour of St. *Andrew*. A few Days after, the *Cossacks* and *Russian Calmucks*, supported by seven thousand Dragoons, fell upon the Baggage of the Left Wing of the
Swedes

Swedes ; two *Aides de Camp* were killed fighting near the King's Person, and he himself had a Horse shot under him; and while one of his Equeries was presenting him with another, both the Equery and Horse were shot upon the Spot. Notwithstanding these and many other Difficulties, *Charles XII.* advanced almost as far as *Smolensko*, lying in the great Road to *Moscow*; but not finding so many Adherents, and so much Provision as in *Poland*, he saw it was impracticable to march directly to the Capital of the Czar's Dominions, as it may be supposed he thought no great Difficulty, when he made this haughty Answer to a *Polish* Gentleman, by whom the Czar had sent some Overtures of Peace; *That he would treat with his Brother Peter at Moscow.* Disappointed in this Hope, he turned on a sudden, towards the *Ukraine*, thinking he should be able to support his Troops by the Assistance of *Mazeppa*, Hettman of the *Cossacks*, who had entered into a private Treaty with him, and design'd to revolt from the Czar, who not knowing of this, but being informed, that the King of *Sweden* had left a Body of his Forces under the Command of General *Crassau* with *Stanislaus* in *Poland*, to reduce the whole Kingdom to his Obedience; and had ordered, as is before said, *Leuwenhaupt* to leave *Livonia* and *Courland*, and join his own Army, his Czarish Majesty thought it absolutely necessary to prevent this Conjunction, if possible; therefore when *Leuwenhaupt* had passed the *Dnieper*, he went with Prince *Menzikoff* and General *Goltz* to meet him, and came to an Action with him, on

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

the 7th of *October*, in which fifteen hundred *Russians* were killed, and very few *Swedes*. The latter, in all Appearance, would have gained a complete Victory, had it not been for the Presence of the Czar, who, when he saw his Troops begin to fall back, ran to the *Cossacks* and *Calmucks*, posted in the Rear of the Army, and ordered them to fire on all those who should offer to run away, and not to spare even his own Person, if he should be so cowardly: By this Means he stopt his Army, which was already in great Confusion, and General *Leuwenhaupt*, seeing the *Russians* began to rally, thought fit to continue his March to join the King according to his Orders; but this the Czar was to prevent, if possible, which occasioned the noted Battle of *Lezno*, wherein his Czarish Majesty shewed great Courage and Conduct, appearing in the Places of greatest Danger, and animating his Men by his Presence, and the Example of his own Bravery; so that he put *Leuwenhaupt* to flight, and the King of *Sweden* had nothing left but to join the Traitor *Mazeppa*, who was ready to deliver up *Batturin*, his Capital, to him, if his Soldiers would have come into his Design; but they protesting against it, he was glad to throw himself into the *Swedish* Camp, with about two thousand Men, that remained faithful to him, and *Batturin* was afterwards, by the Czar's Order, burnt to the Ground, in Resentment of the Hettman's Treachery, who was also hung up in Effigy: Which done, the principal Men among the *Cossacks* made choice of a new General or Hettman, which fell upon *John Skoropatsky*, and he, immediately

The Battle of
LEZNO.

ately after, accompanied by a great Number of Officers, went and prostrated himself at the Feet of his Czarish Majesty, who confirmed the Election.

CHARLES XII. was now at a Distance from all Places, from whence he could expect Relief, except from *Stanislaus* in *Poland*; but that Prince found too much Employment there, and knew too well the Hazard it would be to attempt to march into the *Ukraine*, to give him any Assistance, when the *Muscovites* could so easily stop his Passage. Every thing conspired to ruin the King of *Sweden's* Army. The Winter of this Year [1709,] was so very sharp, that above two thousand of the *Swedish* Soldiers perished merely by the Extremity of the Weather; notwithstanding which Abatement of *Charles's* Strength, the Czar, by his Minister for Foreign Affairs, Count *Golowin*, made some Propositions to Count *Piper*, for an Accommodation on very easy Terms; but *Charles* absolutely refused to treat, renewing his Intentions of penetrating as far as *Moscow*, and went with this View, at the latter End of *May*, and lay'd Siege to *Pultowa*, being in great Hopes of supplying the Wants of his Army by the Conquest of that Place; where the Czar had lay'd up great Quantities of Provisions; but neither the Valour of the *Swedes*, nor the Intelligence that the Traitor *Mazeppa* had in the Town, could give him Success; or prevent Prince *Menzikoff* from throwing Succours into the Place. *Charles's* Resolution increased with the Difficulties of the Undertaking, he pressed the Siege warmly, and had already taken the Courtine, when he received

King of SWEDEN
besieges
PULTOWA.

*The Battle of
PULTOWA.*

a Wound in his Heel, and was, immediately after, told that the Czar was coming up with an Army, at least double the Number of his, consisting of fresh Troops well cloathed and fed, and now thoroughly experienced in the Art of War. The King of *Sweden's* Wound prevented his acting with the same Vigour as usual, he found himself inclosed between the *Boristhenes* and the River of *Pultowa*, hemmed in by a large Army, and under a Necessity of making his Way through the Enemy, or perishing by Hunger. In this Extremity he resolv'd on Battle. Accordingly on the 27th of *June* 1709, very early in the Morning, the Action between the two Armies began. About twenty-five thousand *Swedes* came out of their Trenches, and marched directly against the Czar's Army, which was then forming its Camp. The Generals, who had most of them been at the Battle of *Narva*, put their Subalterns and Soldiers in Mind of that Day, when eight thousand *Swedes* had overcome a hundred thousand *Muscovites* in their Intrenchments. The King, on account of his Wound, was obliged to be carried in a Litter at the Head of his Foot, while the *Swedish* Horse, with their wonted Fury, fell upon the Enemy's Squadrons, forcing the *Muscovites* to fall back in some Disorder. The Czar himself running to rally them, had his Hat shot through, and Prince *Menzikoff* had no less than three Horses killed under him: Whereupon *Charles* made no doubt but he should gain the Battle.

*The Czar's
Hat shot
through.*

WHEN the *Russian* Foot were come out of their Lines, and a Disposition was made for

a general Engagement, *Peter* was in the Centre of his Army ; he had yet no higher Title than Major-General and served under General *Czeremetoff*; but on this Occasion, he went on a fine *Turkish* Horse, from Rank to Rank among his Men, as their Sovereign to encourage, and promise them Rewards. *Charles*, on his Side, put his Army in the best Disposition he could, and endeavoured to fit his Horse ; but finding himself unable, he got into his Litter again. The Battle was renewed about Nine of the Clock, and almost at the Beginning of it the King of *Sweden's* Litter was shatter'd to Pieces with a Cannon Ball, and he himself overturn'd. When the *Swedes* saw their King fall, they immediately gave Way, and all were put to the Sword. *Charles*, if he had been able, would have rallied some of his Regiments, but they were too closely pursued by the *Russians*. The Generals *Renschild*, *Hamilton*, *Stakelberg*, and the Prince of *Wirtemberg* were taken Prisoners, as were afterwards Count *Piper*, and most of the Officers of the Chancery, who had quitted the Camp, and wander'd about not knowing what was become of their King.

WHEN *PETER* was told, that the King of *Sweden's* Litter was found all broke to Pieces in the Field of Battle, he expressed an extraordinary Concern for the Fate of that Prince, who he thought was slain, and whose Bravery he always admired. *Charles*, tho' no Way able to defend himself, was yet unwilling to fly, till persuaded by his Chancellor, *Mullern*, to cross the *Dnieper*, and go into *Turky*, that he might escape falling into the
Hands

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Hands of the Enemy, and where, perhaps, he might get Assistance to renew the War. But before the King of *Sweden* could listen to this Advice, he was willing, for the first Time, to try what might be effected by Negotiation; and therefore, in the Interim between his own Defeat, and the Surrender of the remaining Part of his Forces at *Perewoloczna*, whither Prince *Menzikoff* was posted after them, he sent to let his Czarish Majesty know, he would accept of the Peace he had several Times offer'd him, and if that was denied, desired to go freely out of his Country, and retire to *Poland*. The Czar answer'd, that the King of *Sweden* had thought too late of coming into the proposed Treaty, the Face of Affairs being greatly altered: And that, as he had penetrated into his Country, without considering the Consequences, it was his Business at present to think which Way he should get out of it.

CHARLES XII. finding, that his pretended Moderation had no Effect upon the Czar, prepared to follow the Advice of his Chancellor, and made the best of his Way into *Turky*; but coming to the *Bog*, there not being a sufficient Number of Boats to carry all his People over, about five hundred Men were left on this Side the River, who were soon after taken Prisoners by General *Walkowski*, even in sight of the King of *Sweden*, just landed on the other Side. The Czar had sent this General in pursuit of the *Swedes*, and, having now learned what was become of the King, did not much doubt of his being brought Prisoner to him with the rest; for he said to
some

some of the *Swedish* Generals, his Prisoners, that *he* wanted his Brother Charles to keep them Company; but he had sent Walkowiski to fetch him.

THE CZAR, being soon after informed, by Prince *Menzikoff*, of the Success he had at *Perewoloczna*, where *Leurwenhaupt* and the rest of the *Swedish* Generals had yielded to him without striking a Blow, went himself to that Place, where the unhappy Fate of so many brave Men very sensibly touched him, and he more than once expressed his Disapprobation of the Conduct of a Prince who could sacrifice, in such a Manner, to his Ambition, so many faithful Subjects, of whom he ought to have been the Father and Protector. The greatest Part of the *Swedish* Prisoners were dispersed in the Czar's Dominions, and great Numbers sent to *Siberia*, which Country, a wild and barren Place before, received great Improvement from their inhabiting there, and setting up divers Trades and Manufactures for their Support. The Prisoners were treated with great Civility by his Czarish Majesty, who treated some of them at his own Table, with that Affability which was so natural to him, where he drank a Health to his Masters in the Art of War. *Renchild* asking who those were that his Majesty was pleased to honour with so great a Title? "It is you yourselves," Gentlemen, the *Swedish* Generals," replied the Czar. "Then, said *Renchild*, is not your Majesty a little ungrateful to treat your Masters so severely?" Upon this his Majesty ordered all their Swords to be returned to them, and to *Renchild* he gave one from his own

own Side, as a Token of the Esteem he had for him for his Fidelity to his Master. *Peter* likewise shewed a great Regard for Count *Piper*, and that none of the Prisoners of Distinction might want any Thing, he divided them among his Generals: And after taking this Care of his Enemies, next thought how he should reward the Valour and good Conduct of his own Officers, on which Account he made several very considerable Promotions, among which he did not forget himself, and as he had taken a *Swedish* General Prisoner in the Heat of the Engagement, and had had a Ball shot through his Hat, he was made a Lieutenant General.

WHILE his Czarish Majesty was at *Pere-woloczna*, the Rebel *Cossacks* came to him to make their Submission, and he was pleased to pardon them on Condition that they laid down their Arms: At the same time he promised a Reward of ten thousand Roubles to whoever should bring in *Mezeppa* dead or alive. It is easy to imagine how the News of this important Victory was received at *Moscow*, in which Capital, in Hopes of soon seeing their Monarch, the Defender and Preserver of the Liberty of the North, thirty Triumphal Arches were erected in the Streets, through which it was supposed he would pass; but Affairs of greater Importance called him elsewhere.

The End of the Fifth BOOK.

THE



THE
HISTORY
OF
RUSSIA,
To the End of the REIGN of the
Empress CATHARINE.

BOOK VI.

THE CONTENTS.

*The Continuation and Conclusion of the
Reign of the Emperor PETER.*



AFTER so great Success as the
Czar had in the Battle of *Pultowa*,
any other Prince would have in-
sisted on high Terms of Accom-
modation with his vanquish'd Foe:
But PETER *the Great*, who was desirous to
cultivate the Arts of Peace, for the Prosperity
and Happiness of his People, sent very mo-
derate Proposals for a Treaty, which the
King of *Sweden*, distressed as he was, but still
re-

retaining his obstinate Temper, would give no Ear to; therefore the Czar finding that no Peace could be made but by the Force of Arms, took proper Measures to continue the War, and thought it would be most effectual to carry it into the Enemy's own Dominions. He gave fresh Orders to his Ministers residing at the Courts of *Denmark* and *Saxony*, to use their utmost Endeavours to bring the Negotiations to a Conclusion for an Alliance against *Charles XII.* and knowing his own Presence would be necessary in *Poland*, he crossed the *Boristhenes*, but was taken ill at *Kiow*, where he was obliged to stop for some Time.

THE Victory at *Pultowa* was so compleat, and put the King of *Sweden's* Affairs into such Disorder, that *Augustus's* Friends in *Poland*, and some of those who had retired out of the Kingdom, took fresh Courage, and sent a Deputation to him, to invite him to re-ascend the Throne; whereupon he enter'd *Poland*, but before he did so, he publish'd a Manifesto to justify his own Conduct, particularly with relation to the famous Treaty of *Alt-Ranstadt* and what followed upon it, which so much amazed all *Europe*, and which so highly incensed the Czar, but who, by this Time, was so well satisfy'd of the Necessity of his Affairs, which drove him to accept of any Terms for the Preservation of his People, that he was now reconciled to him: And immediately after his Recovery set out for *Lublin*, where he published a Declaration, summoning all those of the adverse Party to come in and unite themselves with the Republick

publick of *Poland*, and their lawful King. He went afterwards and had an Interview with King *Augustus* at *Thorn*. The King complimented his Czarish Majesty on the glorious Victory he had gained, and the Czar made his Compliments to the King on his Return, without any Reproaches on the Affair of *Alt-Ranstadt*, or any other: For these *Augustus* had prevented by the Manner in which he had treated the Czar's Plenipotentiaries at *Dresden*, and by the Reasons which he had alledged for all he had done in his Manifesto. The *Saxon* Ministers afterwards made their Compliments of Congratulation, and assured his Czarish Majesty, that they had always made their Vows to Heaven for the Success of his Arms; but said they had not dared to hope it would have been so complete. To which he answered, with as much Grandeur as Piety, *Your Vows, Gentlemen, were proportioned to the Weakness of Men; but God has given me a Victory which shews his own Omnipotence.*

WHILST the Czar was at *Thorn*, the Grandees of *Poland* sent a Deputation likewise, to congratulate him in the Name of the Republick, on the total Defeat of his Enemy. From *Thorn* his Majesty went to *Marienwerder*, to meet the King of *Prussia*, who received him at his Landing, giving him the upper Hand, and expressing all imaginable Respect. These two Monarchs had several Conferences together, and afterwards held a Council with their chief Ministers, in which was confirmed the Alliance before projected between them and the King of *Denmark*, and King *Augustus*. Here also was concluded a Treaty of Marriage

Z

between

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

between the Czar's Niece, and the King of *Prussia's* Nephew, the Duke of *Courland*, by which his Duchy was restored to him.

FROM *MARIENWERDER* the Czar went to *Mittaw* to join his Generals, and regulate the Operations of the War. On the 21st of *November* he went to his Army, and on the 25th came before *Riga*, where every Thing was ready for bombarding it, and *Peter* himself set Fire to the first Bomb. His Czarish Majesty continued not long in this Place, where no Honour was to be acquired; but hastened to *Moscow*, in which City his Subjects impatiently expected him, and to which an infinite Number of Foreigners were come to grace the Triumph of this great Monarch. He went thro' *Livonia* to *Dorpt*, and from thence to *Petersburgh*, where he gave Orders for fitting out of such Ships as were to serve in the ensuing Campaign, and at the same Time for forming such Magazines at *Narva*, as he judged necessary to carry on his grand Design in the Siege of *Riga*. He also made very considerable Remittances to the King of *Denmark*, to enable him to push on the War vigorously on that Side against *Sweden*.

ON the 21st of *December*, the Czar made his Triumphant Entry into *Moscow*, and, after the Manner of the ancient *Roman* Triumphs, had all the Prisoners taken in Battle led through the City in Procession, with the Cannon, Colours, and the Litter used by the King of *Sweden*, his Enemy. On the first Day of the new Year his Czarish Majesty treated all the chief Persons of Quality and Foreign Ministers at a very grand Entertainment:

ment: And at the same Time had the Pleasure to make publick the Satisfaction which the Queen of *Great-Britain* had made him for the Affront offer'd to his Ambassador at *London*, in the Year 1708, who was arrested by some Tradesmen there, and carried to a common Spunging-House.

THE Reparation which his Czarish Majesty at first expected, for this Disgrace done to him, in the Person of his Ambassador, being such, as by the Constitution of *England*, the Queen could not give him, had like to have broke off all good Understanding between the two Courts; but at length this troublesome Affair was settled, and Mr. *Whitworth*, the Queen of *Great-Britain's* Minister, was invested with the Character of her Ambassador Extraordinary, to deliver her Letter in a publick Manner to his Czarish Majesty, to make her Excuse for the Affront he received, and so the Business was ended to the Satisfaction of both Crowns.

Soon after his Czarish Majesty's Arrival in his Capital, was celebrated the Nuptials of his Niece *Anne Ioanowna*, the fourth Daughter of his elder Brother the Czar *John*, with the Duke of *Courland*, by whom she was left a Widow in a few Days after her Marriage, which Lady afterwards came to be Empress of *Russia*. The Czar, about the same Time that this Solemnity was performed, received the agreeable News of the taking of *Elbing*, a considerable Town in *Polish Prussia*, and in the Month of *February* following, departed from *Moscow*, in order to go into *Poland* by Way of *Petersburgh* and *Livonia*; and design-

WYBOURG
besieged.

ed to send the Czarewitz, who had been some Time in *Poland*, to visit several Courts of *Europe* before his Marriage with the Princess of *Wolfembüttel* which was then in Treaty: But before his Czarish Majesty went into *Poland*, he undertook a very bold and difficult Enterprize, which was to penetrate into the Great Duchy of *Finland*, and lay Siege to *Wybourg*; accordingly Admiral *Apraxin* was sent before the Place in the Month of *April*, and attacked the Suburbs, which the Besieged abandoned after having set Fire to two of their Magazines; the *Russians* taking Possession of the Place quitted by the *Swedes*, extinguished the Flames, and seized on three Ships that were in the Porte. His Czarish Majesty came before the Town with Part of his Fleet, which brought Provisions, Ammunition, and Artillery: A Squadron of thirteen Men of War, presented itself to oppose their Landing, but dared not undertake any Thing. The Siege was pushed on with Vigour, which nevertheless continued till *June*, when the Garison desired to capitulate, as did the Town of *Riga* on the 29th of the same Month. His Czarish Majesty received this News with much Joy, and immediately gave Orders to complete the Conquest, by adding to it that of *Dunamudenskantz*, situated at the Mouth of the *Duna*. It held out a Fortnight, and was then forced to surrender, the Plague destroying as many or more Men than the *Muscovite* Bombs and Bullets. His Majesty likewise ordered, at the same Time, the Sieges of *Pernau*, of *Revel*, and of *Kexholm*; these were of no long Continuance, and gave but little Trouble,

ble, the Scourge of Heaven assisting the Sword of the Czar, who having now reduced the whole Province of *Livonia* to his Obedience, began to regulate the Affairs of it, and took all necessary Precautions to secure his Conquests, and gain the Affections of the People, to whom he promised not only the Continuation of their Privileges, but likewise to discharge them from several heavy Burthens they groaned under, during the Government of the *Swedes*. He encouraged Trade and Navigation there, and invited Strangers from all Parts to repeople the Country, desolated by the Plague and the War, nothing being neglected to render the Government of the *Russians* acceptable both to Natives and Foreigners.

PETER being now Master of the Province of *Livonia*, it seemed very probable that his Forces united to those of *Augustus*, would likewise shortly have reduced to his Obedience *Pomerania*, and the other *Swedish* Dominions in *Germany*, if the Allies in Confederacy with *France* and *Spain* had not interposed, and joined in an Act of *Neutrality*, which was Signed by their Ministers at the *Hague*, *March* the 31st, 1710. This Scheme of *Neutrality*, tho' calculated more for the Advantage of the King of *Sweden* than any other, was rejected by that Prince, who, to the Surprise of every Body, wrote to the Powers concerned therein, in very passionate Terms, reproaching them with intending to tie up his Hands, and hinder him from acting against the Enemy. The Czar, who was willing to come into this Act of *Neutrality*, on Condition that the *Swedish*

Z 3

Troops

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Troops in *Pomerania*, should return no more into *Poland*, thinking himself no longer bound, since this Refusal of *Charles XII.* to accept it, after some previous Declarations, caused his Army to march into *Germany* to begin the Operations of the War against the *Swedish* Provinces there.

CHARLES, in the mean Time, had been well received in *Turky*, which gave him Hopes of being assisted with a powerful Army to make fresh Head against his Rival in Glory, and he was the more assured of this, since the Grand Vizier had told the *Swedish* General Count *Poniatowski*, that he would take the King of *Sweden* in one Hand, and his Sword in the other, and lead him to *Moscow*, at the Head of two hundred thousand Men. But Count *Tolstoy* the Czar's Envoy, managed Matters so well at the Sublime Porte, that the Talk of this War soon ceased, and greater Honours were paid to him than any *Russian* Minister had ever received at *Constantinople* before: Notwithstanding which, the Grand Vizier, who had thus gone off from the King of *Sweden* to his Enemy, being deposed, the next who succeeded him, during a very short Administration, had made such an Alteration in Affairs, that he determined the Grand Seignior to allow the King of *Sweden* a considerable Body of Men to reconduct him into *Poland*: M. *Tolstoy* endeavoured to oppose this by the sharpest Remonstrances, and sending Advice of it to the Czar, his Majesty wrote a Letter to the Grand Seignior dated from *Petersburgh*, the 27th of *July*, 1710, complaining of this Violation of the thirty Years Treaty of Peace
concluded

concluded between him, and the late Sultan *Mustapha* his Brother, by lending such Assistance to his Enemy to bring him again into *Poland*, when he might freely pass by divers other Routes, with Safety into his own Dominions: But this Letter made no Alteration in the Resolutions taken at the Porte, which, The TURKS declare War with the Czar. soon after, by the Influence of the new Grand Vizier, and the Cham of *Tartary*, declared War with his Czarish Majesty: And in the Month of *March*, 1711, the Grand Vizier, having made the necessary Dispositions for the Campaign, went out of *Constantinople* to put himself at the Head of the *Ottoman* Army, which was assembled at *Adrianople*, from whence he caused them to decamp and take the Route of the *Danube*. The Czar's Minister being imprisoned, and his Couriers stopt on the Frontiers of *Turky*, he could not be informed of what was done at *Constantinople*; but The CZAR prepares for War. learnt so much by other Hands, as to be able to give Orders to be in the Field before the *Turks*. He likewise prepared for the Defence of *Azoph*, whither he sent Vice-Admiral *Vander-Cruys*, with three hundred good Sea Officers, and leaving to Prince *Menzikoff* the Command of his Forces by Sea and Land in *Livonia*, *Ingria*, and *Finland*, he set out himself from *Petersburgh* to *Moscow*, that he might the more readily attend his new Levies, and dispatch a numerous Army into the *Ukraine*. The Generals *Repnin*, *Allard*, and *Galliczin*, conducted in three Columns, cross *Poland*, the best Part of the *Russian* Troops that were in *Samogitia*, and *Lithuania*, which were soon increased to an hundred thousand Men. The

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Velt Mareſchal *Czeremetoff*, who was already on the Frontiers at the Head of his Army, received thirty thouſand Men of the new Levies, the Prince *Rowmanowdowski* had Orders to advance with the Militia againſt the *Tartars*, and beſides theſe his Maſteſty had made a Treaty with *Apaka Taquin*, Prince of the *Calmuck Tartars*, who ſent him twenty five thouſand Men, for which the Czar paid him an hundred thouſand Ducats in Specie. Thus, without reckoning the Troops that remained under the Command of Prince *Menzikoff*, or the *Coffacks*, his Czariſh Maſteſty had got together an Army of an hundred and fifty thouſand Men, all regular Troops, to go againſt the *Turks*; and *Apaka Taquin* taking hold of this favourable Opportunity to fall upon the *Precopian Tartars* his Enemies, brought fifty thouſand *Calmuck Tartars* into the Field, and employed twenty two thouſand *Circassians* againſt the *Dorzowski* and *Norowski Tartars*, who are on the Borders, and occupy the Ramparts of *Crimea*. His Czariſh Maſteſty now published a long Maniſeſto, ſetting forth the Reaſons of his entering into a War with that perfidious Breaker of Peace, as he called him, *Achmet* Sultan of the *Turks*; but before this Declaration was made publick, the *Tartars* had began Hoſtilities; and the Cham's Son and the King of *Sweden*, both published long Maniſeſto's. The Cham was at the Head of an hundred and fifty thouſand Men, his Son commanded fifty thouſand, and the Palatine *Potocky* followed them at the Head of ten thouſand more, got together from all Nations. The *Tartars*, who were Neighbours to the

Donski

Donski Cossacks, and had engaged them to revolt, began their Hostilities on the Side of *Azoph*, but their Campaign lasted not long; for having advanced as far as *Izium*, and pillaged the Country about it, and defeated four or five thousand *Russians*, they marched off with the Booty.

THE Irruption of the *Cham* into the *Ukraine*, was attended by worse Consequence; he beat several Parties of the *Russians*, and seized on several small Places, then penetrating as far as *Samara*, burnt under the Fortifications of that Town, one hundred and fifty Vessels, designed to transport the Troops and Artillery; but the Snow that fell at that Time obliged him to retire, and towards the End of the Month of *March* he arrived at *Precop*, with much Spoil, and near twelve thousand Slaves.

POTOCKY, the *Cossacks* of *Orlick*, and the *Cham's* eldest Son, whose Title is Sultan *Galga*, advanced along the *Borysthenes*, and not finding any Resistance, the *Russian* Troops being on the Banks of the *Neister*, and near *Moldavia*, they penetrated as far as *Niemirow*, raising Contributions in the Country, and then retired to the Side of *Bialocerkiew*, to which Fortrefs *Potocky* and his *Tartar* gave three Assaults, and lost many Men before they could master the Town; but the Citadel held out till the Arrival of Prince *Galliczin*, who put these Maroders to Flight, and obliged *Potocky* to return to *Turky*. The *Turks*, on their Part, under the Administration of a new Grand Vizier, ignorant in the Art of War, were so slow in their Preparations, that
it

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

it was the latter End of *April* before their Troops were assembled near *Adrianople*, the Grand Seignior himself being in great Incertitude whether he would command his Army himself, or trust it to the Care of the Vizier.

HIS Czarish Majesty, hearing of the great Equipment of the *Turks* upon the *Black-Sea*, made extraordinary Preparations on that Side, fitting out twenty Ships of the Line of Battle, at the Head of which was that of the Admiral, carrying eighty six Guns, with several Gallies and other Vessels to a great Number, in which twenty three thousand Men were embarked; but the Waters of the *Don* were so low, that the large Vessels became useless, and the Success of the Campaign affording as little Occasion for the *Turkish* Fleet, there was nothing done on this Side.

DURING all these Preparations on both Sides, the Queen of *Great-Britain*, and the *States-General* of the *United-Provinces*, offer'd their Advice to the King of *Sweden* to make Peace; but he was resolv'd to hear nothing of it, notwithstanding the ill Posture of his Affairs, not doubting but that, by the Assistance of the *Turk*, he should again triumph over his Enemies. PETER, on the other Hand, seeing a Part of his Troops got over the *Neister*, into his Enemy's Country, and nobody yet to oppose them, could not help flattering himself with Hopes, that Heaven had destinated the Honour to him of overthrowing the formidable Empire of the *Ottomans*, and to exalt the *Cross* in those Places where the *Cressent* had so long triumph'd:
But

But herein his Czarish Majesty was too sanguine, and took a fatal Step, that had like to have been the Ruin of himself and his Country; for relying upon the Supplies promised him by *Brancovan*, Hospodar of *Walachia*, who deceived him, he suffer'd himself to be shut up by the *Turkish* Army on the Side of the River *Pruth*, in a Post so disadvantageous, that he must have been inevitably lost, had it not been for the Management and Affection of the Czarina *Catharine*, at this critical Juncture, of which we shall give an Account in the next Volume.

HAVING made Peace with the *Turks*, and received some Waggon with Provisions from the Grand Vizier, his Czarish Majesty prepared to leave the *Turkish* Dominions, and returned to his own Country. It is reckoned that this Expedition cost the Czar about twenty thousand Men, besides some Millions in Money and Jewels, paid for a Peace which the *Porte* did not maintain long; tho' when the Grand Seignior heard the first News of it, he order'd Rejoicings to be made for three Days; but the King of *Sweden* soon after inspired him with such Sentiments, that he twice broke it, and concluded it again with the same Ease.

WHILST the Czar struggled with Fortune on the Borders of the *Pruth*, his Allies suffer'd not the *Swedes* to enjoy much Repose, but enter'd into *Pomerania*, and formed the Blockade of *Stralsund*. The Czar himself went first to *Warsaw*, from thence to *Elbing*, and some other Places before he came to *Targan*, where, the Day after his Arrival, was celebrated the Marriage between the Czarewitz *Alexis*, then
in

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

in the 22d Year of his Age, and the Princess *Charlotta-Christiana-Sophia* of *Wolfembuttel*, Daughter of the Duke of *Brunswick-Wolfembuttel*, a beautiful young Lady in her 18th Year. After this Ceremony was perform'd, his Czarish Majesty went to *Crossen* in *Silesia*, where the Prince Royal of *Prussia* entertain'd him for three Days; and then, by the Way of *Riga* and *Revel*, came to *Peter sburgh*.

As the Province of *Livonia*, which his Czarish Majesty was now in quiet Possession of, had formerly been looked upon as one of the Fiefs of the Empire, he offered to accept of the Investiture of it from the Emperor *Charles VI.* provided he might be admitted into the Number of the Princes of the Empire, and, on that Condition, and his being allowed to have a Minister at the General Diet, he propos'd to furnish his Imperial Majesty with a Succour of twenty five thousand Men against *France*; but this was refused, on plausible Pretexs, the true Reason being the Jealousy of the Princes of the Empire to see so powerful a Prince admitted into their College.

TEN thousand Men of his Czarish Majesty's Troops kept *Stetin* block'd up; the rest joined with those of King *Augustus*, were before *Stralsund*, which was also in some Manner block'd up by Land. The Czar, Czarina and *Czarewitz*, being all come into *Pomerania*, the Czar had several Conferences with the King of *Poland*, and these two Monarchs went together to reconnoitre *Stralsund*, and the Island of *Rugen*, which they agreed to attack, but the Attempt proved unsuccessful, and the Czar in the

the mean Time having left the Command of his Troops to King *Augustus*, went to *Berlin*, where he had some Conferences with the King of *Prussia*, and afterwards went to *Carelsbad* to drink the Waters. Count *Steinbock*, the *Swedish* General, in his Absence, made a Sally out of *Stralsund*, leaving the Defence of it to the Burghers, and a chosen Garison, and gave it out, that he was going to force the Enemy's Lines; but instead of hazarding so rash an Enterprize, he took all on a sudden the Route of *Mecklenbourg*, took Possession of *Rostock*, and put the whole Duchy under Contribution. King *Augustus* assembled his Troops, and the *Russians*, who were dispersed along the Lines, and marched toward *Gustrow*, which he surprized and posted his Troops near that Place, expecting the Conjunction of the *Danes*, to attack the *Swedes*; but the dangerous Consequences of the Loss of a Battle on either Side, made the Generals think of a Suspension of Arms, which, upon a Conference between Count *Steinbock* and Count *Fleming*, was agreed to for three Months.

THIS separate Agreement of the King of *Poland*, was not at all pleasing to *Peter*, and the King of *Denmark*, who both were jealous of *Augustus's* carrying on some private Treaty with the *Swedes*, for which Reason his Czarish Majesty hastened into *Mecklenbourg*, to provide with all necessary Speed for a Junction with the King of *Denmark*, who, on his Side, had advanced in precipitate Marches as far as *The Battle of Gadebusch* with his Troops; some *Saxon Squa-* GADEBUSCH.
drons joined him, but the *Russians* could not do so before the *Swedes* had attacked the *Danish*

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

nish Army, and entirely defeated it. Those Saxons who had no Part in the Action, immediately rejoined the *Russians*, that they might together be in a Condition to oppose the victorious *Swedes*, who they imagined would retake the Route of *Pomerania*, to penetrate into *Poland*, and facilitate the Return of their Monarch; but Count *Steinbock*, far from doing thus, which seemed most reasonable, advanced towards *Jutland*, to take up his Quarters in *Holstein*, as he had been directed by the Regency at *Stockholm*. The Czar deliberated with himself for some Time, whether he should attack *Steinbock* in his March, or not; but resolved, at length, to go towards *Pomerania*, and afterwards agreed with the King of *Denmark* to open the next Campaign with the Attack of *Rugen*, and the Siege of *Stralsund*.

WHILST PETER exposed himself to the greatest Fatigues to deal with his Enemies on all Sides, new Troubles were formed in *Turky*, and new Enemies attacked his Troops in *Poland*; at the same Time, the Fame of this great Monarch's wonderful Actions reaching the Centre of *Asia*, brought to his Court an Ambassador of *Persia*, who made his publick Entry into *Moscow*, and there waited his Majesty's Return. On the 23d of *February*, his Czarish Majesty took leave of the King of *Denmark*, to whom he intrusted the Care of his Troops, after having earnestly recommended to his Generals to observe a strict Discipline in the Army. He went next to *Hanover*, and was received with all imaginable Marks of Respect at the Court of the Elector, where he took frequent Opportunities to converse

verse with the Princess *Sophia*, the Electress Dowager, for whom he had conceived a great Esteem. As soon as he arrived at *Petersburgh*, he got together about three hundred Vessels, on which, in the Month of *May*, he embarked about twelve thousand Men, and made a Descent into *Finland*, where he took *Abo*, in *The Czar* which Town he found much Provision, but *takes Abo*, the greatest Booty was a large Quantity of Books, which he sent to *Petersburgh* to furnish his new Library there.

AFTER the taking of *Abo*, PETER returned to *Petersburgh*, leaving Orders with his Generals to follow the *Swedish* Army that was on the Side of *Thavasthus*, which Place the *Swedes* defended very courageously for some Time, and then quitted it to retire among the Bogs and Mountains with which this Country abounds; and, having thrown some of their Artillery into the Water, they posted themselves at the advantageous Passage of *Pulkona*, where the *Russians* attacked them and got the Victory.

THE Troops commanded by Prince *Menzikoff* in *Pomerania*, had as great a Share of Glory, and those in *Holstein* were no small Assistance to the King of *Denmark* in reducing *Tonningen* and General *Steinbock*. Prince *Menzikoff* had for some Time blocked up *Stetin*, with an Army of twenty four thousand *Russians*, and afterwards that Town was sequestered into the Hands of the King of *Prussia*, with the rest of the High *Swedish Pomerania*, as *Holstein* had been into the Hands of the King of *Denmark*, and so the Northern Allies were obliged to withdraw their Troops out of the

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

the *Swedish* Provinces in *Germany*. Prince *Menzikoff* in his Retreat, coming into the Territories of *Hambourg*, obliged the Citizens to pay him two hundred and fifty thousand Crowns, to prevent the military Executions he threaten'd them with; likewise made the City of *Lubeck* pay him an hundred thousand, and the City of *Dantzick* an hundred and fifty Thousand. With these Contributions the Prince returned to *Petersburgh*, where he gave an Account to the Czar of all he had done in his Absence. *Peter* was pleased with the Success of his Arms, but could not at first approve of the Sequestration of *Pomerania*, because it ty'd up his Hands from doing any thing more there; but the King of *Prussia* so well answered the Objections he made to it, that he soon after ratify'd the Treaty made with Prince *Menzikoff*.

THE Emperor, and the Powers interested in the War of the North, had agreed to hold a Congress at *Brunswick*, whither the Regency of *Sweden*, consented to send their Plenipotentiaries to treat of a general Peace; but this came to nothing. And the Czar, in the mean Time, keeping in View, his great Design of perfecting the Establishment of his new City of *Petersburgh*, caused a thousand Families to come thither from *Moscow*, offering also great Advantages to all Foreigners that should settle there, and declared that all Goods usually sent to *Archangel* to be sold to Strangers, or bartered for other Commodities, should from thenceforth be sent to *Petersburgh*, requiring all Merchants and others to acquaint their Correspondents in foreign Parts with this Regulation,

*The Czar
endeavours to
remove the
Trade from
ARCHANGEL
to PETERS-
BURGH.*

gulation, that they might not be at unnecessary Expences in sending their Ships to *Archangel*: However, the Commerce of the Merchants was not entirely transplanted to *Petersburgh* till some Years after, when the War was at an End, and the Navigation of the *Baltick* more open.

THE SWEDES, at this Time, fitted out a Fleet to succour *Finland*, where Prince *Galiczin* had not been idle since the Battle of *Pulkona*, and to observe the *Russians* in the Dread they were in of their undertaking to make some Descent on the Island of *Aland*, or even in *Sweden* itself. This Fleet commanded by Admiral *Watrang*, gained some Advantages at first, but that of *Russia* coming up with them obtained a complete Victory. The Czar ^{PETER a} himself served as Rear-Admiral under Admiral *Apraxin* in this Fleet, which consisted of ^{Rear-Admiral} thirty Ships of the Line, eighty Gallies and ^{in his own} a hundred Half Gallies, without reckoning a great Number of flat Boats called *Schampavies*. ^{Fleet, obtains} The first Consequence of this Victory was the taking the Island of *Aland*, where the Czar landed sixteen thousand Men; after which he returned to *Petersburgh*, into which City he made a most triumphant Entry, graced by the *Swedish* Rear-Admiral, *Ebrenschild*, his Prisoner, and all the Trophies taken from the Enemy. The Czar proceeding in this manner to the Fortrefs, the Vice-Czar *Romadonofski*, sitting on a Throne surrounded by the Senate, caused him as Rear-Admiral, to be called before the Assembly, and received at his Hands a Relation in Writing of the Victory obtained. *Romadonofski* and the Senators, taking the same

A a

into

*The Czar made
Vice-Admiral
of RUSSIA.*

into Consideration, propos'd several Questions to *Peter*, the *Russian* Rear-Admiral, after which, they unanimously declared him Vice-Admiral of *Russia*, in Recompense of his faithful Services done to his native Country.

NOTWITHSTANDING his *Swedish* Majesty was now returned to his Dominions, and headed a formidable Army against him, nothing could make *Peter* neglect any Opportunity of improving the State of his Affairs, and the Manners of his People at Home. For the sake of the Ladies he had made an Order at this Time, that such of the Nobility who were of Age, and in a Condition to travel, and were marry'd, should take their Wives along with them, by which Means both Sexes might become equally polished. About the same Time, a Scheme or Draught of a Bridge was laid before him, which some thought would be very convenient to be built over the *Neva* to join *Petersburgh* to the *Terra-firma* of *Ingria*, from whence there was no Passage but by Boats and Oars; but his Czarish Majesty was so far from approving this Project, that he forbid even the Use of Boats and Oars, and ordered that, for the future, no one should cross the River but in Boats with Sails, being resolved to make his People learn Navigation whether they would or no. He employed great Part of his Time this Year [1714,] in fortifying the Citadel of *Petersburgh*, in raising other publick Edifices and in building Ships; he gave Orders, that whoever built Houses at *Petersburgh*, should make the Wall of Brick, and cover the Roofs with Tiles: And to encourage able Artificers, from all Parts of *Europe*,

rope, to come and settle in his Dominions, he sent to his Agent in *France*, to procure the best Workmen, promising them among other Advantages, to have their House Rent free, and that they should be exempt from all Taxes for ten Years. He next made a grand Inquisition into all kind of Frauds committed by the great Men in *Russia*, and punished them according to their Demerits, some in their Persons, and some only in their Purses.

ON the 3d of *January*, 1715, his Czarish Majesty sent to conduct the great Globe of *Gottorp*, over the Snow to *Riga*, by the Help of large Rollers, from whence it was to be brought by Sea to *Petersburgh*: This Machine, made after a Design of *Tycho Brahe*, was so large that twelve Persons could sit conveniently round a Table within Side of it to make celestial Observations, by turning it round. The Czar had seen this Curiosity at *Gottorp*, and was so wonderfully pleased with it, that he begg'd it of the King of *Denmark*, and put himself to a great Expence to bring it to *Petersburgh*.

THERE were no useful Arts and Sciences, that *Peter* did not encourage, and many Books were already produced by the Press which he had ordered to be set up at *Moscow*, and these were such as he had given Directions for himself, such as the Apothegms of great Men, collected into three Volumes, together with short select Sentences, which by their concise and lively Turn, he thought would be more proper to form the Manners of his People, than formal and tedious Treatises of Morals.

PETER, for very good Reasons, had abolished the Patriarchal Dignity, or rather reunited it to the Crown, and to render the Character of the antient Patriarch ridiculous, and make it despised by the People, who before paid greater Respect to it than to the Crown itself, he created one *Sotoff* his Jester, *Mock-Patriarch*, whom, at the Age of Eighty four, he married to a buxom Widow of about Thirty, and the Nuptials of this extraordinary Couple were solemnized by the Court in Masquerade.

THE Armies being now come into the Field in *Pomerania*, and his *Prussian* Majesty having likewise sent thither a large Body of Troops, he published a Manifesto concerning his taking *Swedish Pomerania* in Sequestration, and the March of his Army to prevent the Danger that threatened his own Dominions, and the *German* Empire: But when the *Prussian* and *Holstein* Troops were ready to enter *Stetin* and *Wismar*, Count *Meyerfeldt*, Governor General of the *Swedish Pomerania*, would not agree to it, so the King of *Prussia* declined concerning himself any farther with that Affair at present: And the Czar, and the King of *Poland*, pursued their former Resolution to make themselves Masters of all the *Swedish Pomerania*, and marching thither accordingly with their Armies, they possessed themselves of the Island of *Rugen*, laid Siege to *Stetin*, which they attacked so vigorously, that they forced the Garison to resolve to capitulate in a few Days with Prince *Menzikoff*, who commanded the Siege.

COUNT MEYERFELDT perceived, at last, that it would be more for his Master's Interest

to accept the Sequestration agreed to by Count *Welling*, than to suffer *Stetin* to fall into the Hands of the Czar, and the King of *Poland*, and therefore joined his pressing Instances with those of the Court of *Holstein Gottorp*, that his *Prussian* Majesty would become a Mediator, and take the Sequestration upon himself. Yet when this was done, and the King of *Prussia* had paid four hundred thousand Dollars, on the King of *Sweden*'s Account, to the *Russian* and *Polish* Armies, to compensate the Charge they had been at, *Charles XII.* in a haughty Manner, declared, when he came to *Stralsund*, that he would make void, by Force of Arms, all that the King of *Prussia* had done. The *French* King's Mediation being offered in this Affair, *Peter* took that Opportunity to declare, that he would accept of no other Mediation for the Peace of the North, than that of the King of *Great Britain*, and the States-General; the first of whom seeing the common Danger to which all the Princes of *Lower Saxony* were exposed, by having their Country made the Seat of the War, engaged, as Elector of *Hanover*, to take joint Measures with the Kings of *Denmark* and *Prussia*, for the Security of the Peace of the Empire, and act against *Sweden*. This produced an Agreement between that Prince and the *Danes*, by virtue of which, the latter made over the Duchies of *Bremen* and *Verden* to him.

THE Northern Allies having sent their Forces into *Pomerania*, it was not doubted but the Czar, when he put to Sea, would join the *Danes*, that together they might make a De-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

scent on the Island of *Rugen*, but having continued at *Revel* till the latter End of *June*, he then steered his Course towards *Gotland*. In the Middle of *September*, the *Russian* Fleet sailed from *Gotland* to the Coast of *Sundermania*, and landed fifteen thousand Foot Soldiers, at about eight Leagues from the *Swedish* Army, whilst a Body of Horse from the Army in *Finland*, went round the *Bothnick* Gulph to penetrate into the Northern Provinces of *Sweden*, which put that whole Kingdom in a Consternation.

HIS Czarish Majesty likewise ordered General *Czeremetoff*, to go with twelve or fifteen thousand Men, to strengthen the Army of the Allies in *Pomerania*, and not only put an End to the tedious Siege of *Stralsund*, but to take from the *Swedes* the Town of *Wismar*. *Stralsund* surrendered at the latter End of *December*, and the King of *Sweden* himself had a narrow Escape for his Life. Prince *Galliczin* also obtained many Advantages in *Finland*.

PETER, in the mean Time, was giving his utmost Attention to Affairs at *Petersburgh*, carrying on his Fortifications and Buildings in that City; and set up, at this Time, a new Academy under the Direction of a *Frenchman*, M. de *St. Hilaire*, where Riding was taught, foreign Languages, Mathematicks, and all Things proper for the Education of Gentlemen.

The Czar sets up a new Academy at PETERSBURGH.

A Son born to the Czar-
WITZ. ON the 22d of *October*, the Czar had the inexpressible Joy of seeing a Son born to the *Czarewitz*; but a great Damp was put to this Joy, by the Death of the illustrious Princess who brought him into the World, tho' the
Czarewitz

Czarewitz himself shewed but little Concern on the Occasion, having on all Accounts expressed no Manner of Regard for this virtuous and every Way deserving Princess, whom he marry'd only to please his Father, and whom, by his brutish Temper, he had rendered unhappy, from the Day of her Marriage to this of her Death. The Day after the Interment of this Princess, the Czar had the farther Satisfaction of having a second Son born to himself of the Czarina *Catharine*, on which Account publick Rejoicings were made for eight Days together. The Birth of these two Princesses was the more agreeable to *Peter*, as the Behaviour of the Czarewitz had been such, that he was determined to set him aside, unless he shew'd Tokens of Amendment.

*Another Son
born to PETER.*

ON the 4th of *December*, the Czar received Advice of the taking the Island of *Rugen*, upon which Occasion, great Rejoicings were made at *Petersburgh*; and in the Beginning of the new Year, 1716, his Czarish Majesty received News of an Irruption of the *Cubanski Tartars*, in the Kingdom of *Casan*, under the Command of the Cham's Son, which was now become almost an annual Custom with them: But this was soon put a stop to by Colonel *Schwartz*, at the Head of his Regiment composed of twelve hundred *Germans*, taken from among the *Swedish* Prisoners, who put the *Tartars* to Flight, and having took the Cham's Son, forthwith caused him to be hung upon a Tree.

ON the 6th of *February*, the Czar and Czarina set out for *Germany*, by the Way of *Riga*, *Libaw*, *Memel*, and *Dantzick*, in which last

City they continued till the latter End of *April*, and where was celebrated the Marriage of the Princess *Catharine*, eldest Daughter of his Brother the Czar *John*, with the Duke of *Mecklenbourg*; on which Occasion the King of *Poland* gave a splendid Entertainment; after which the Czar, hearing that forty five of his Gallies were arrived at *Koningsberg*, set out with all Expedition for that Place to review them. In his Absence, certain Articles were delivered, by his Order, to the Magistrates of *Dantzick*; which chiefly imported, that they should hold no Correspondence with *Sweden*; that the City should furnish four Privateers of twelve Guns, and fifty Men each, to be maintained by them during the War, or pay two hundred thousand Rix-Dollars in Specie: But by the Mediation of the King of *Poland*, the *Dantzickers* compounded the Matter, and were to pay but an hundred thousand Rix-Dollars, to renounce all Commerce with *Sweden*, and to maintain four Ships that he was to furnish them with. This Affair being so settled, the Czar at his Return, was received with great Honours. The next Day he set out for *Stetin*, and was met in his Way thither, at *Stolpe*, by the King of *Prussia*, who came thither incognito to confer with him on the Situation of Affairs in the North, These Princes agreed in opposing the Progress of the King of *Sweden* into the Dominions of the *Danes*; but thought it not for the common Interest to assist *Denmark* in making Conquests on the *Swedes*, who were already weakened enough by the Loss of *Finland*, *Livonia*, and *Pomerania*.

His

HIS Czarish Majesty went next to *Stralsund*, then to *Mecklenbourg*, to pay a Visit to the Duke his Nephew, and afterwards had an Interview with the King of *Denmark*, in the Gardens of *Ham* and *Horn*, near *Altena*, where was concerted the Descent on *Schonen*, in order to oblige the King of *Sweden* to quit *Norway*, into which Country he had penetrated with an Army of twenty thousand Men, and was advancing towards *Christiana*, the Capital of that Kingdom.

IN the Month of *July*, the Czar and Czarina went to *Copenhagen*, where the Court and the City used their utmost Endeavours to shew them all Manner of Diversions, while they waited for the Execution of the grand Project, of which they promised themselves the greatest Success. His Czarish Majesty, during his Stay in *Denmark*, which was near three Months, visited the Colleges, the Academies, and conversed with the Learned. He went out almost every Day, coasting the two Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Sweden*, measuring the Bays, and sounding the Depths, and laid down the whole so exactly on Charts, that the least Bank of Sand did not escape him. And he who was the first of all the *Russians*, who had any Knowledge of the Sea, received the highest Mark of Honour, from the most experienced Nations in Maritime Affairs, by having the *British* and *Dutch* Fleets joined to those of *Russia* and *Denmark*, put under his Command, which he declared gave him as great a Satisfaction as ever he had in his Life.

PETER commands the united Fleets of four Nations.

NOTWITHSTANDING the great Preparations that had been made for this Descent on *Schonen*,

Schonen, the Czar thought proper to lay it aside, which it is supposed, he was prevailed upon to do, by Baron *Gortz*, who was become chief Minister and Favourite of *Charles XII.* and who had projected a strange Revolution in the Affairs of *Europe*, which was to be brought about, by making Peace with his Master, and *Peter Alexowitz*. The Plan was too flattering to the Ambition of both those great Princes, to be resisted by either of them. Baron *Gortz* persuaded the King of *Sweden*, that he would have ample amends made him, for suffering the Czar to enjoy the Conquests he had made on the East and North of the *Baltick*, by having the Honour of replacing *Stanislaus* on the Throne of *Poland*, by setting the Crown of *England* upon the Head of the pretended King, the Son of *James II.* and by restoring the Duke of *Holstein* to that Duchy; besides that being united to the Czar, there was nothing they might not undertake.

THE CZAR, on his Part, was secretly discontented with the Allies, who were all for preventing his having any Footing in *Germany*, and who were jealous of his Power. I must here take Notice of one Part of this extraordinary Scheme, which I did not mention in my Life of *Peter*; it has been related by some, that Baron *Gortz* laid his Plan before Cardinal *Alberoni*, who was then chief Minister at the Court of *Madrid*, and was charmed with the Project of setting the Crown of *England* upon the Head of the Pretender, which *Gortz* was to effect, by sending to the Pirates at *Madagascar*, who had been rejected by every other Nation, but had now intreated the
Protection

Protection of the King of *Sweden*, making an Offer to bring sixty Ships into his Service, with an immense Treasure. This the King accepted of, on Condition, that they made the Descent into *Scotland*, where they were to be joined by the disaffected Party in *Great Britain*, who required but the Assistance of ten thousand Men, to accomplish their Design of dethroning King *George I.* and to that End, advanced considerable Sums, which *Gortz* received in *Holland*, after he had been privately in *France*, negotiating the Purchase of Ships, and Ammunition. But some Hints of this Affair, being communicated to the King of *Great Britain*, as it was thought, by the Duke of *Orleans*, then Regent of *France*, Count *Gyl-lembourg*, the *Swedish* Envoy, was put under an Arrest in *London*, and his Papers were seized, by which a Discovery was made of the whole Plot. The Czar disowned, that he had any Knowledge of it, and a long Memorial was delivered to Mr. *Stanhope*, by M. *Wesselowski*, the Czar's Minister in *England*, to justify his Master, with which the King of *Great Britain* was, or seemed to be contented.

ABOUT this Time his Czarish Majesty came to the *Hague*, from whence he went by the Way of *Brussels*, *Ghent*, and *Bruges*, to *Dunkirk*, to view the *Ris-Bank* there, designing to make one of the same Kind at *Cronslot* or *Petersburgh*. On the 7th of *May*, he arrived at *Paris*, and spent some Time in *France*. "He
" had nothing more essential to learn, says
" *Monsieur de Fontenelle*, nor to transport to
" his Country, but it still remained for him
" to see *France*, a Country where Learning
2 " has

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

“ has flourished, and where the Agreement
 “ of Society has been carried to a greater
 “ Height than in any other Part of the
 “ World. The Czar, *continues he*, was great-
 “ ly pleased with the Person of our King,
 “ who was yet an Infant; he was seen walk-
 “ ing in the *Louvre*, leading him by the
 “ Hand, and taking him almost in his Arms,
 “ to defend him from the admiring Crowd.

“ ON the 19th of *June*, 1717, he did the
 “ Academy of Sciences the Honour to visit
 “ them, they entertained him with all they
 “ had that was new or curious in Experiments
 “ and Machines.” And he afterwards, at his
 own Request, became a Member of that So-
 ciety.

HIS Czarish Majesty having been at *Ver-
 sailles*, *Fontainebleau*, and *Marly*, and seen
 every Person and Place worthy his Notice in
France, went to *Namur*, *Liege*, and the *Spaw*,
 where he drank the Waters, from which he
 received so great Benefit, that when he left
 the Place, he order'd a Marble Monument to
 be erected, on which was the following In-
 scription in Letters of Gold.

PETER

PETER I. *by the Grace of God, Emperor of the
Russians,*

*Religious, happy, invincible,
Restorer of Military Discipline,
And first Planter of all Sciences and Arts among
his People;*

*Who having by his own Industry
Built a most powerful Fleet of Ships,
Having infinitely augmented his Armies,
And having securely settled in the very Blaze of
War, his Realms, as well hereditary as acquired,
went abroad;*

*And having search'd into the Manners of the se-
veral Nations of Europe,*

Came through France to Namur and Liege,

To these Waters at Spa,

As to the Haven of Health:

*And having happily drank of those most healthful
Springs,*

Particularly that of Geronstere,

Was restored to his former Strength,

And his desired Health,

In the Year 1717, 22d of July.

Thence returning through Holland

To his hereditary Dominions,

*Ordered this eternal Monument of his Gratitude
to be erected. 1718.*

IT is no Secret, that, while *Peter* was at the Court of *France*, he made a Proposal, to pour a numerous Army into the Heart of the Empire, which should be at the Service of that Crown, if *France* would pay the Subsidies he required; but this was rejected, as inconsistent with the Engagements she was under,
by

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

by her Alliance with his *Britannick* Majesty, signed at the *Hague*, on the 4th of *January*, 1717. However, his *Czarish* Majesty, during his Stay at *Paris*, concluded a Treaty of Friendship with *France*, in which the King of *Prussia* was included, and, being much pressed to it by the Regent, he promised to withdraw his Forces from *Mecklenbourg*. On his Return from *Paris*, the King of *Great Britain* sent Sir *John Norris*, and Mr. *Whitworth* to him at *Amsterdam*, to thank him for having declared, that he would withdraw his Forces out of the Empire, and to assure him, that it would be a great Satisfaction to him, to live with him in the same Friendship and Union as formerly.

On the 19th of *September*, his *Czarish* Majesty, and on the 22d the *Czarina*, arrived at *Berlin*, the latter being met at some Distance from the City, by the Queen of *Prussia*, and the Markgravine. Their *Czarish* Majesties were lodged at *Monbijoux*, and magnificently entertained by the *Prussian* Court, whither the Duke and Duchefs of *Mecklenbourg* came to pay them a Visit; here their Majesties continued three Days, and then took the Route of *Dantzick*, with which City, a few Days before, Prince *Dolgoruki*, and the other *Russian* Ministers had settled an Agreement, which put an End to all Differences between the *Czar*, and them, and which his Majesty ratified on his Arrival.

FROM DANTZICK his Majesty went by the Way of *Koningsberg*, *Riga* and *Revel*, to *Petersburgh*, where he arrived on the 21st of *October*, 1717, after an Absence of sixteen Months, and found the Complaints of his People

People very high against the Ministers, whom he had intrusted with the Government during his Absence : He therefore employed the remaining Part of the Year in redressing, with indefatigable Application, the great Disorders committed in the State, in punishing the Authors of them, and making new Regulations in his Affairs.

AT the same Time he presented the young *Great Prince*, Son of the *Czarewitz*, with his Picture set with Diamonds, and as he gave early Proofs of a martial and lively Genius, he was not only declared a Serjeant of the Guards, and cloathed accordingly, but taught the military Exercise, which he soon learned to the great Satisfaction of the Czar, who had much Affection for him, notwithstanding the just Resentment he had conceived against the *Czarewitz* his Father, who was in all Respects of a Character opposite to his own, indocile, sluggish, vicious, an Admirer of the antient Customs, of a brutish Disposition, a Frequenter of bad Company, and so disobedient to his King and Father, that, in his Absence, he had made his Escape out of the Kingdom, in Breach of the Laws thereof, which made it High-Treason for any one to travel into foreign Parts, without the Czar's Licence.

ON the 4th of *February*, 1718, the disagreeable News arrived at *Petersburgh*, of the ill Success of the Expedition near the *Caspian* Sea, commanded by Prince *Alexander Beke-witz*, who was sent by the Czar to take Possession of the River *Daria*, where the Gold Sand is found, and to discover Mines in the
Moun-

Mountains of *Great Tartary*, at the Head of three thousand Men; but these were cut off by the *Tartars*, and the Prince himself butchered in a most barbarous Manner. It was firmly believed, that the Czar would take the first Opportunity of revenging himself on these *Tartars*; but this, and all other Affairs were laid aside, for one which his Majesty had more at Heart than any Thing else, which was an Enquiry into the Crimes, and to provide an adequate Punishment for the Disobedience of his Son, who had behaved so ill, and who was now brought home to *Moscow*, by *M. Tolstoy*, whom the Czar had sent to fetch him from *Naples*.

THE CZAR being determined to proceed to do Justice upon him, in a solemn Manner, appointed a Day, when he was brought publicly into the Czar's Presence in the great Hall, where he presented to his Father, standing in the midst of the great Men of the Kingdom, a Writing, containing a Confession of his Crimes, imploring his Mercy, and begging he would save his Life. His Majesty granted his Request, but told him he had cut himself off from the Hopes of inheriting his Crown, which he obliged him to renounce, by signing a formal Instrument drawn up for that Purpose: Which done, the Ministers, Boyars, Officers, and others present, swore upon the Gospel, and subscribed an Oath, by which they owned the Legality of his Majesty's Decree; acknowledged his second Son *Peter Petrowitz*, to be undoubted Successor to the Crown, and engaged to stand by him with their Lives and Fortunes. The said Oath was

*The CZARE-
WITZ ALEX-
IS renounces
the Succession to
the Crown.*

afterwards administer'd to all the publick Officers, and other Inhabitants of *Moscow*, and Orders were sent for doing the same all over the *Russian* Empire.

SEVERAL other Persons were involved in the grand Inquisition made at this Time, as Adherents to the Czarewitz, and the Advisers of his late Escape, among which were his Mother, the repudiated Czarina *Ottokesa Federowna*, and her Father Confessor; *Maria Alexowna*, the Czar *Peter's* Sister of the half Blood, *Alexander Kikin*, Commissioner of the Admiralty, and once the Czar's chief Favourite; Prince *Wassili Wolodimirowitz Dolgoruki*; *Peter Matuewitz Apraxin*, the great Admiral's Brother, the Czarewitz of *Siberia*, the Boyar *Stepan Gleboff*, *Dossifei* Bishop of *Rostoff*, the Treasurer of the Monastery of *Susdal*; of whom the Boyar *Gleboff*, Bishop *Dossifei*, *Kikin*, the Treasurer of the Monastery, and another *Russian*, were executed in the Publick Market Place of the City of *Moscow*, on the 26th of *March*, 1718, *Gleboff* was empaled alive, and the others broke on the Wheel; the Corpse of the Bishop was burnt, but his Head, and three others, were set upon Poles, on the four Corners of a square Wall erected for that Purpose.

EUPHROSINE, the Czarewitz's Mistress, was set at Liberty, in Consideration of the open Confession she made; this was a *Finlandish* Woman of a mean Extraction, with whom the Czarewitz lived in an infamous Manner, in the Life-time of his virtuous Princess, which, with his other ill Usage of her, was supposed to have help'd to shorten her Days.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

THIS Piece of Justice executed at *Moscow*, his Czarish Majesty went to *Petersburgh*, where he arrived on the 4th of *April*, and immediately went to the Dock, ordering the Men of War new built there, to be launched as soon as the Harbour was clear of Ice.

ABOUT the latter End of *May*, the first Conference was held between the Plenipotentiaries of the Czar, and the King of *Sweden* at *Aland*. The *Russian* Fleet was ready at the same Time, to put to Sea from *Cronslot*, which the Czar intended to command in Person, and likewise design'd an Interview with the King of *Prussia* at *Memel*, but was prevented by an important Affair, that required his Presence at *Petersburgh*. This was a Discovery of fresh Circumstances, relating to the Conspiracy of the Czarewitz, which obliged him to establish a second High-Court of Justice, to enquire into that Business, which, after a mature Examination into every Particular of his Guilt, pronounced him worthy of Death, and drew up their Sentence in Writing, which was signed by one hundred and twenty five of his Judges.

THE unfortunate Prince was brought out of the Fortrefs into Court, on the 6th of *July*, where he was obliged to repeat the Confession of his Crimes, and to hear the Sentence of Death read to him, after which he was sent back into Custody; and the next Morning early, News was brought to the Czar, that the violent Passions of his Mind, and the Terrors of Death had thrown him into an Apoplectick Fit. About Noon, another Messenger brought Word, that the Prince was in
great

great danger of his Life, and afterwards a third informed his Czarish Majesty, that he was pass'd all Hopes of Recovery, and greatly desired to see his Father. The Czar, attended by some of the principal Persons of his Court, went to see his dying Son, who, at the Sight of his Father, burst into Tears, and, with his Hands folded, told him, That he had grievously offended both Heaven and him; that he hoped not to recover of his Indisposition, and even if he should, yet was unworthy of Life; therefore begg'd his Majesty, for God's Sake, to take from him the Curse he had laid upon him at *Moscow*; to forgive him all his heavy Crimes; to impart to him his paternal Blessing, and to cause Prayers to be put up for his Soul. During these moving Words, the Czar, and the whole Company, were in Tears. His Majesty returned a pathetick Answer, and represented to him in a few Words, all the Offences he had committed against him, and then gave him his Forgiveness and Blessing, after which, they parted with abundance of Tears and Lamentations, on both Sides, and the Czarewitz expired the same Evening.

*The Czare-
witz ALEXIS
dies.*

His Czarish Majesty the next Day caused a circular Letter to be sent to his Ministers abroad, with some Account of the Czarewitz's Death, in order to prevent the false Reports which might be spread thereof; many not believing that he died a natural Death; some giving out, that he was obliged to take a poisoned Draught in his Prison, and others, going so far as to charge his Czarish Majesty, with the Cruelty of whipping him to Death,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

with his own Hands: But certainly, the great Caution with which he proceeded against him, and the many Instances he gave of his paternal Affection towards him, and his Willingness to excuse and reclaim him, are sufficient to shew the Improbability of his having treated him with such Inhumanity, notwithstanding he had conspired against his *Life*, and what was dearer to him, that Country for which he had so often hazarded his *Life*, and for the Improvement of which he had bestowed more Pains, and undertaken more wonderful Designs, than were ever conceived by any Prince in the World before him.

As to the other Persons, of all Degrees, of every Age and Sex, who were embarked with the Czarewitz in his Conspiracy against his Father, they were delivered up to the Severity of the Law; some were racked, some beheaded, others hanged, and many were impaled alive. Those who were not condemned to Death, received the *Knout*, and the *Batoags*; and not a few were banished into *Siberia*, for the Remainder of their Days. The divorced Czarina, Mother of the unhappy Czarewitz, and the Princess *Mary*, were both closely confined, the first in the Castle of *Sleutelbourg*, and the other in a Monastery on the Banks of the Lake *Ladoga*.

THE *Grand Inquisition* being finished, relating to the Disorders within his own Dominions, his Czarish Majesty had Leisure to pursue what was proper to be done with regard to his foreign Affairs, and to attend to the Conferences in which his Ministers, and those of *Sweden* were engaged, in the Island of *Aland*.

land. His Czarish Majesty went with his Fleet to *Abo*, to be nearer the Negotiations, and influence them the more; but when every body expected that the finishing Stroke was ready to be put to the Peace, between his Czarish Majesty and the King of *Sweden*, all Hopes of it were blasted by the Death of the latter, ^{The Death} which happened in the Night, between the ^{CHARLE} 29th and 30th of *November*, 1718, before the ^{XII.} Town of *Frederickshall* in *Norway*. The Death of this Prince quite changed the Face of Affairs in the North. Baron *Gortz*, his great Favourite, being soon after executed, the Czar saw all his Projects of Peace, and the Cession of those Places he would have had the quiet Possession of, as concerted by *Gortz* and *Osterman*, overthrown, unless the *Swedish* Nation, intimidated by the Prospect of a Continuance of that War, which had been already too long and bloody, should consent to receive those Laws he was willing to impose upon them; therefore his Majesty signify'd by his Ministers to *Ulrica*, the new Queen of *Sweden*, the Desire he had that the Congress of *Aland* might go on.

IN the mean Time, several more Persons were executed at *Petersburgh*, on Account of the Czarewitz's Conspiracy, the chief of which were *Abraham Fedrowitz Lopuchin*, Brother to the divorced Czarina *Ottokesa*; *James Pustinoi*, the Czarewitz's Confessor, and *Alfonassief*, his Master of the Horse.

IN the Beginning of *February*, 1719, his Czarish Majesty ordered Counsellor *Osterman* to come to *Petersburgh* for new Instructions, but he was not sent back to *Aland* till *April*,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

*A new Canal
of Communica-
tion cut be-
tween the
WOLKOF, A,
and the NEVA.*

when the Queen of *Sweden* came to a Resolution of naming Baron *Liliensted*, to supply the Place of Baron *Gortz*, at the Congress, where he arrived in the Month of *June* following. During which Time, his Czarish Majesty had been at *Olonitz* to drink the Waters, and at his Return went to *Ladoga*, situated at the Mouth of the River *Wolkofa*, which Town he rebuilt, and made a very large City from an inconsiderable Village; designing to have a Castle there, and a Magazine of Provisions for the Use of a prodigious Multitude of People, which he had drawn from the several Parts of his Empire to cut a Canal as far as *Sleutelbourg*, and make a Communication between the River *Wolkofa*, and the *Neva*, and thereby prevent the dangerous Passage of the Lake *Ladoga*, in crossing which above an hundred Ships were lost every Year.

PETER, upon his Return to *Petersburgh*, being informed of a Treaty concluded between the Emperor, the King of *Great Britain*, as Elector of *Hanover*, and the King of *Poland*, took it so very ill of the last, that he wrote a Letter to him, complaining of his Ingratitude, after what he had done to serve him, and expostulating with him for endeavouring to incite the Emperor of *Germany*, the *Ottoman Porte*, the Cham of *Tartary*, and other Powers to take up Arms against him, and for suffering false Reports to be spread, as if he intended to tear the Duchy of *Courland* from the Protection of *Poland*, and to dismember other Provinces from the said Kingdom.

THIS

THIS Letter was answered by *Augustus*, who said, that Copies of it were dispersed and made publick, in a Manner contrary to Custom and the Nature of true Friendship, before the Original was delivered to him. He justified all he had done, and desired his Czarish Majesty to shew him more Respect, or he should look upon his indecent Behaviour as hostile, and be forced to obviate it with the Assistance of his Friends in a proper Manner; for that no body ought to blame him for endeavouring to maintain a good Understanding and mutual Benevolence, not only with the Emperor and the King of *Great Britain*, but with all the Powers of the World besides, for his own and his Kingdom's Preservation. He assured him, that the Person he had sent to *Constantinople*, did not negotiate any Thing relating to publick Affairs, but was there to assist the Merchants of his Dominions with his Advice, and to buy several Goods for his Household, nor did he pretend, he said, to excite the *Ottoman Porte* against his Czarish Majesty. Nor had the Senators and Ministers of State, in their late Conference held at *Warsaw* with the *Tartarian* Envoy, made any Proposals to him relating to an Invasion of his Czarish Majesty's Dominions; but when he, of his own Motion, and without being asked, offered, in the Name of the Cham of *Crim Tartary*, to assist the Republick with ten thousand Men, against all who should threaten to invade it in an hostile Manner, he was answered, that he did not desire those Auxiliaries should enter his Territories; but that in case of inevitable Necessity, it would be more

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

acceptable to him, that they should be employ'd to make a Diversion in the Enemy's Country; yet nothing was concluded.

IN the same Letter, the King of *Poland* assured his Czarish Majesty, that he never had, nor ever would do any thing prejudicial to him, nor contrary to their Friendship, founded upon Neighbourhood, and strengthened by Alliances, provided his Czarish Majesty would, on his Part, reciprocally fulfil all the Conditions expressed in the Conventions between them, and especially restore *Livonia* and *Courland*, two Provinces incorporated with the Republick of *Poland* from antient Times; that he would also withdraw his Troops out of all the Provinces of the Kingdom; give Satisfaction for all the Injuries so often represented by his [*Augustus's*] Ministers; pay the many Millions stipulated by Treaties, but yet unpaid, and restore what had been extorted from the City of *Dantzick*, and the Territories of the Republick, contrary to Treaties; forbear to excite Misunderstandings and Differences between him, and the States of the Republick. On these, and some other Conditions named, he said nothing should be dearer or more acceptable to him, than a sincere Union, and constant Friendship with his Czarish Majesty.

HOWEVER PETER, by this Answer of the King of *Poland*, and the Engagements that Prince had entered into, found himself deserted by his Allies, yet when M. *Osterman* returned to *Aland*, in the Month of *April*, it was less to negotiate than menace the *Swedes*, for he was ordered to declare, *that unless they*
accepted,

accepted, in two Months Time, of the Conditions proposed, they must expect a Visit from forty thousand Plenipotentiaries, who would force them to it with Sword in Hand. But the Swedes thought they had little Cause to dread these Threats, when Sir *John Norris* came, as he did soon after, into the Road of *Copenhagen*, with a Squadron of *English* Men of War, and the Lord *Carteret* arrived at *Stockholm*, in the Character of Ambassador Extraordinary from the King of *Great Britain*.

His Czarish Majesty, finding this Change of Affairs, went about executing the Design he had been projecting, of making a Descent on *Sweden*, which he did in such a Manner, that Admiral *Apraxin* for his Part only, in the Expedition, burnt and destroyed six good Towns, eleven Castles or Palaces of Brick, one hundred and nine of Wood, belonging to Noblemen, eight hundred twenty six Villages and Hamlets, three Mills, and ten Magazines, two Mines of Copper, and five of Iron.

MAJOR GENERAL LESLY, also, reduced to Ashes two Towns, twenty one Castles, or Noblemens Houses, five hundred and thirty five Villages and Hamlets, forty Mills, sixteen Magazines, and nine Mines of Iron, for one of which, it was said, the *Swedes* offered three hundred thousand Rix-Dollars to save it from Ruin. They destroyed the Corn and Forage, and killed all the Cattle and Horses that they could not carry off. They put on Board their Vessels all the Iron they were able, and the rest, to the Number of eighty thousand Bars, they threw into the Sea.

THE

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

THE CZAR'S Design, in all these Burnings and Devastations, was to bring *Sweden* to his own Terms, to which Purpose, he likewise sent *Osterman*, charged with a Commission to *Stockholm*; but he was stopt half a League short of that City, whither the Court of *Sweden* sent some Ministers to him, who found, that, agreeable to the Project of Peace at *Aland*, *Peter* demanded nothing less than the absolute Cession of *Esthonia*, *Ingria*, and of *Carelia*, comprising the Towns of *Revel*, *Wybourg*, *Narva*, and *Kexholm*, with the Cession of *Livonia* for forty Years, his Czarish Majesty being willing, for the present, to restore only *Finland*.

THESE Propositions were rejected with Scorn, the Congress of *Aland* broke up, the Ministers retired, and the *English* Squadron, which till then had remained in the Road of *Copenhagen*, sailed towards the Ports of *Sweden*, but found the *Russians* had retired to their own Harbours eight Days before. This Retreat of the Czar was generally thought to be owing to the Approach of the united Fleets of the *English* and *Swedes*; but *Peter* published an Account at *Revel*, which was sent into several Parts of *Europe*, to confute any false Reports that might be spread, as it was said, by those who envy'd the Glory of his Majesty's Arms; whereby he would have made it appear, that the Instances of the Queen of *Sweden*, and the advanced Season of the Year, were the only Reasons that determined him to put an End to the Operations of the War for that Year, and to bring back his Forces into his own Ports.

ON

ON the 8th of *September*, Mr. *Berkeley*, Son of the Lord *Berkeley* of *Stratton*, set out from *Stockholm*, with Letters from the Lord *Carteret* and Sir *John Norris*, to the Czar, offering his *Britannick* Majesty's Mediation, for making Peace between his Czarish Majesty, and the Queen of *Sweden*; but when Mr. *Berkeley* carry'd these Letters to the *Russian* Plenipotentiaries, they would neither undertake to send them to the Czar, nor give him a Passport for *Petersburgh*; but General *Bruce*, one of the said Plenipotentiaries, contented himself to answer my Lord *Carteret*'s Letter; and desired Leave to tell him, that the Contents of those Letters were so singular, and little agreeable to the strict Ties, the Alliances, and the Friendship, that still subsisted between their Czarish and *Britannick* Majesties, that he could not prevail upon himself to do what he desired, without having first received the Czar's Orders.

UPON this Answer being given, the Sieurs *Jefferies* and *Weber*, the King of *Great Britain*'s Ministers, received orders to leave *Petersburgh*, and retire to *Dantzick*; which was enough to shew his *Britannick* Majesty's Disposition to the Czar. Besides, *Peter* had learned that Admiral *Norris* had Orders to join *Sweden*, in opposing the Operations of the *Russian* Fleet. Whereupon, the Czar caused all the *English* Merchants in his Dominions to be arrested, and threatened to confiscate all their Effects, which amounted to above fifty Millions, if the *British* Nation made War upon him. At the same Time, to cast all the Blame on the Court of *Great Britain*, his Czarish Majesty declared his Intentions to
King

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

King George I. by a very warm Memorial, presented by M. *Wesselowski*, the *Russian* Resident at *London*, charging him with Breach of Treaties, and Violation of Friendship. This was answered by his *British* Majesty, both as King of *Great Britain*, and Elector of *Hanover*; which Answers were not without a Reply from the Czar, but Order of Time obliges us to refer that to the Close of the next Year.

HIS Czarish Majesty, in the mean Time, ever watchful over the Welfare of his People, this Year ordered that Pest of Society, the *Jesuits*, to be banished his Dominions; and that he might help to soften the natural Moroseness of the *Muscovites*, set up Assemblies, and encouraged Plays and Opera's at *Petersburgh*; tho' the latter were Entertainments, that he had no great Relish for himself: But these, and all other his Designs, had like to have been finished this Year by a violent Fit of the Cholick, which threatened the Life of this mighty Prince, while he was at *Revel*, whither he went to hasten the Equipment of his Fleet, and complete the Fortifications of that Place; but the Vigour of his Constitution, and the Help of Medicine, restored him to his People, to add more Glories to a Reign already replete with Wonders.

WITH the new Year [1720,] his Czarish Majesty began to make new Preparations for the War, seeing himself abandoned by all his Allies, and forced to maintain it alone with *Sweden*, supported by a *British* Fleet, favoured by the Kings of *Prussia* and *Denmark*, and ready to make her Peace with *Poland*. The King of *Great Britain* also, as firmly united with

with the Regent of *France*, as with the Crown of *Sweden*, had engaged him to pay the Subsidies which were due to it from the Most Christian King; so that at the Time when *Sweden* was at the lowest Ebb of Credit, she received six hundred thousand Crowns from the Court of *France*, with Assurances, that the Subsidy, for the future, should be regularly paid: This Succour, joined to those of *England* and *Hanover*, made the *Swedes* take fresh Courage, and gave his Czarish Majesty to understand, that he was not to expect Peace, but by Force; which occasioned *Peter* to make new Efforts, by re-assembling his Troops in *Finland*, augmenting his Fleet, and making all Kind of Preparations to be in the Field before his Enemy.

BESTUCHEF, the Czar's Resident, in the mean Time, presented a Memorial to his *Britannick* Majesty, which was a Reply to the Answers to the Memorial of *Wesselowski*, which Piece contained such Reflections on the *British* Ministers, and was so little respectful to the King himself, that the Resident was ordered to depart the Kingdom. As soon as the Season of the Year permitted, the *British* Fleet arrived in the *Sound*, under the Command of Sir *John Norris*, who was ordered to join the *Swedish* Fleet, in support of the Mediation offered by his *Britannick* Majesty, for the Reconciliation of the Czar, and the new King of *Sweden*, whose Wife had resigned her Crown to him: But *Peter*, not at all inclined to accept of this Mediation, chose rather to treat of Peace with *Sweden* directly, to which a Way was paved by a Minister's arriving at
Peterf-

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Petersburgh from *Sweden*, to notify the Accession of the Prince of *Hesse-Cassel* to the Throne. This Minister, in the Speech he made to his Majesty, at his Audience, assured him, that his Master earnestly desired to conclude a firm and lasting Peace with him, and to maintain a constant Friendship and good Neighbourhood. The Czar answered, that he heartily wished the King of *Sweden* Joy, on his Accession to the Throne, thanked him for this Notification of it, and said, he was always very far from being against concluding a lasting Peace with *Sweden*, and had still the same Inclinations.

ON the 7th of *August*, the *Swedish* Vice-Admiral, in the *Baltick*, approaching with his Squadron to reconnoitre the *Russian* Fleet, commanded by Prince *Galiczin*, and not thinking the Number of Ships so large as it was, attacked them, and was beaten, having two Frigates taken from him, and two other ran aground, with the Loss of one hundred and fifty Pieces of Cannon, and six hundred Men killed and taken Prisoners, besides three hundred wounded. The Czar, on this Victory, ordered a Naval Triumph at *Petersburgh*, caused a Medal to be struck to perpetuate the Glory of the Action; presented Prince *Galiczin* with a Sword set with Diamonds, to the Value of thirty thousand Florins, and distributed a Sum of Money among the Officers, and Sailors, who had signalized their Valour.

THE Land Forces were not inactive this while, but burnt the new Town of *Uma*, in *Lapland*, and penetrating into the Country, burnt and destroyed two Gentlemens Houses,

forty

forty one Villages, containing above a thousand Houses; seventeen Mills, an hundred and thirteen Magazines, and other Buildings.)

DURING these Hostilities, his Czarish Majesty, to return the Compliment he had received from the King of *Sweden*, sent the Adjutant General *Romanzoff* to *Stockholm*, to felicitate that Prince on his Accession to the Throne, and to let him know, how true an Esteem he always had for his Person, and how earnestly he desired to find in him the same Inclination to Peace that he had himself: Besides this Commission, he had Orders, if he found a favourable Opportunity, to propose an Exchange of Prisoners, and a Suspension of Arms; but though no Effects of this immediately appeared, yet it was plain, by what happened in the Beginning of the next Year, that his Voyage to *Stockholm* had not been useless. The Talents he was Master of, had made Count *Horn* so sensible of the Czar's pacifick Disposition, that Prince *Miseriski*, who succeeded M. *Romanzoff*, had the Cartel granted, which was refused to the other.

THE SWEDISH Ministry now began to be convinced of the Czar's Sincerity in his Desire of Peace, since, being on the conquering Side, and continually gaining Advantages over them, he did not seem to be under a Necessity of courting his Enemies to make Peace: But *Peter's* Greatness of Soul was not confined to the ordinary Maxims of Policy; he saw in the Midst of his Conquests, that his People wanted Peace, and was resolved to undertake any thing to procure it for them. In short, his Czarish Majesty having accepted the Mediation

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

diation of *France*, *Niestadt* was soon after appointed for the Place where the Congress was to be held, for a Treaty between the two Crowns.

WHILE this Negotiation was carrying on, his Majesty received the agreeable News, that his Minister at *Constantinople*, had changed the last Treaty concluded with the *Porte*, into a Treaty for a perpetual Peace, the Ratifications of which he immediately dispatched. About the same Time, he examined into several Disorders that had crept into the Offices for the Receipt of Money, and made such a Reformation therein, that he not only eased his People, but gained above an hundred thousand Roubles a Year, to the Imperial Treasury. At the same Time also, the general Tariff was prepared, which was afterwards introduced into all the Ports of *Russia*; but no Business more employed his Care, than the perfecting the Canal begun below *Ladoga*, which was to make a Communication between the *Baltick Sea*, and the River *Volga*, which falling into the *Caspian Sea*, he was in Hopes would enable him to open a Trade with *China*, the *Indies*, and *Persia*, and supply them with *European* Commodities. For this Purpose, he sent certain Geographers and Astronomers, to take an exact Survey of the *Caspian Sea*, of which they made a Chart, which shewed the Form of that Sea to be very different from what it had been represented to be by former Geographers. This Chart he sent to the Royal Academy of Sciences at *Paris*, who gratefully received the Present, and ordered it to be preserved in the Archives of the Academy.

SOON

Soon after this, a Peace was concluded be- Peace conclu-
ded between
RUSSIA and
SWEDEN.
tween *Russia* and *Sweden*, to the great Joy of both Nations; his Czarish Majesty thereupon ordered all the *Swedish* Prisoners to be set at Liberty in *Siberia*, and the other remote Provinces of the Empire, and signify'd to them, that as it was very likely, that the *Swedes* would disband Part of their Forces, and that perhaps, they would find no Employment in their own Country, he was willing to give them the same Rank in his Troops, that they had in the Service of *Sweden*; but that they should be obliged to make a Declaration before the chief Officers of their own Nation, of their Acceptation of such Offers, that it might not be said, he had detained them contrary to their Inclinations, or against the Terms of the Treaty. His Czarish Majesty's Generosity went so far as to give Letters of Recommendation to several of those who returned Home, of that Valour, and of their Fidelity to their King and Country, which he had been a Witness to; and the King of *Sweden* paid such Regard to his Recommendation, that, among others, he raised Rear-Admiral *Ebrenschöld* to the Rank of Admiral on that Account: And *Peter*, at the Departure of that brave Prisoner, made him a Present of his Picture set with Diamonds. Seventeen hundred *Russian* Prisoners were also set at Liberty, and sent back from *Sweden*, where great Rejoicings were made on Account of the happy Conclusion of the Peace, which, tho' dear bought, was a valuable Purchase to them, as it had put an End to a War, which had al-
C c most

most brought them to the Brink of Destruction.

PETER, on his Part, ordered a Day for a Publick Thanksgiving, on which their Czarish Majesties went in the Morning to the great Cathedral, where, after the Liturgy, the Treaty of perpetual Peace, as concluded between the Czar, and the Crown of *Sweden*, was read in Presence of the Ministers of the Emperor, the Kings of *France*, and *Prussia*, and of the States General of the United Provinces; after which, the Archbishop of *Pleskow* made an Harangue, in which he rehearsed all the glorious Exploits of his Czarish Majesty, and the Favours he had heaped upon his Empire and Subjects, in the Course of his Reign, adding, at the same Time, that he justly deserved the Titles of *Father of his Country*, and *the Great*. This Harangue ended, the Senate advanced in a Body, and Count *Golofskin*, Great Chancellor, made him a Speech, desiring he would be pleased to accept of the Title of PETER THE GREAT, FATHER OF HIS COUNTRY, AND EMPEROR OF ALL RUSSIA.

THEN the whole Senate thrice repeated, *Long live PETER the Great, Father of his Country, and EMPEROR of all RUSSIA*, and the whole Assembly testify'd their Applause, join'd by the Sound of Trumpets and Kettle Drums: At the same Time, the Cannon were discharged from the Ramparts, the Admiralty, and a hundred and twenty five Gallies, that arrived the same Day from *Finland*. The Conduits in the Streets ran with Wine; the Night concluded with Illuminations, and Fireworks:
And

And the publick Rejoicings continued in the City of *Petersburgh* for fifteen Days.

BARON SCHAFIROFF, the Vice Chancellor, after this, had Orders to acquaint all the Ministers of foreign Princes, that the Title of Emperor, which his Majesty had been requested, by his faithful Subjects, his Senate, and the States of his Empire to take upon him, was no new Thing, but what had been formerly given to his Predecessors, by several Powers of *Europe*, and shewed them, at the same Time, a Treaty made between the Emperor *Maximilian I.* and *Basile Iwanowitz*, which was still preserved in the *Russian Archives*, wherein it appeared that the Emperor stiled *Basile*, EMPEROR and Dominator of all *Russia*. The Subject of this Treaty, was an offensive and defensive Alliance, made in the Year, 1514, between those Monarchs, against *Sigismond King of Poland*, as mentioned in the Beginning of this Volume, Page 22.

PETER takes upon him the Title of EMPEROR.

His Czarish Majesty, not contented with the Declaration made to the foreign Ministers at *Petersburgh*, caused his own Ministers abroad, to demand it of the Powers to whom they were sent; some of whom consented to it without any Difficulty, and some waited till others had shewn them the Example. The King of *Prussia*, the *States General*, and the *Grand Seignior*, were the first who acknowledged his new Title; but the King of *Denmark* had not the same Complaisance.

THE Peace of *Neistadt* having removed all Obstacles out of the Way of the Design, that *Peter* had to transfer the Trade from *Archangel* to *Petersburgh*, the *Russian Emperor* now

The Trade removed from ARCHANGEL to PETERSBURGH.

renewed the Orders he had formerly given; and to stop the Complaints of the Merchants, upon the Account of their being forced to change their Settlement, he ordered the Commissioners of Trade, to prepare convenient Store-Houses, and Lodgings for them in the last City. This Regulation was followed by another of a very different Sort, but well worthy the sincere Piety of so great a Monarch, which was his ordering the Holy Scriptures to be translated into the *Russian* Language, that his People might draw those Advantages from the pure Fountain of true Religion, as might prevent their continuing in the many Errors and Superstitions they were fallen into; and he expressly commanded all the Clergy in his Dominions, to preach no Doctrine but what was conformable to those Scriptures.

PETER'S triumphant Entry into MOSCOW.

HAVING made so many useful Regulations since the Peace, his Imperial Majesty resolved to go and share Part of the publick Joy with his good Subjects at *Moscow*, where it was likewise necessary to reform some Things. As his Imperial Majesty was desirous to enter this his antient City in Triumph, and, as the People were apprized of his Intentions, most magnificent Preparations were made for that Purpose; his Majesty made his publick Entry into the City, at the Head of the *Preobrazinski* Guards, as their Colonel, being preceded by a Company of Grenadiers, and followed by the two Lieutenant Colonels, Prince *Menzikoff*, and M. *Bouturlin*; the second Regiment of Guards, and the four Regiments of *Ingria*, *Astracan*, *Le Fort*, and *Boutirski*. He

was

was received with the Sound of Trumpets, Drums, and a Discharge of the Artillery. Having passed thro' one *Triumphal* Arch, at the second, he was complimented by the Archbishop of *Novogorod*, Vice-President of the Synod, at the Head of the Secular, and Regular Clergy, in a Speech, which his Majesty received graciously. At the third triumphal Arch, erected by Order of Prince *Menzikoff*, he stopt, for some Time, to satisfy the Curiosity of the Populace, who gave inexpressible Demonstrations of their Joy: At the fourth, erected by the Magistrates, he was received by Prince *Troubiski*, President of the Magistracy, and by the whole Body of Magistrates, accompanied by a great Number of eminent Merchants, all whom his Imperial Majesty assured of his Favour and Protection.

NOTWITHSTANDING the Feasts, Balls, and other Diversions that followed, his Imperial Majesty held frequent Councils about the Affairs of State; and being desirous, as his second Son, *Peter Petrowitz*, was dead, to settle his Succession upon a Prince who might follow his Maxims, and bring the great Designs to Perfection, which he had begun, especially with regard to the civilizing his People, and rescuing them from the barbarous Ignorance they were plunged in, he ordered publick Notice to be given, by Sound of Trumpet, to all Officers, civil and military, all natural born Subjects, and foreign Merchants inhabiting the Capital of *Moscow*, to repair, on a certain Day, to the Castle Church, where as many as were in Town, being accordingly come, a Proposal was delivered to them in

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Print, signifying, "That it was his Imperial Majesty's Pleasure, that every Man should swear, and give it under his Hand, that he would not only approve the Choice his said Majesty should make of a Successor, but moreover, acknowledge the Person his Majesty should propose for that End, as his Emperor and Sovereign."

ALL the Grandees of the Empire were commanded to repair to *Moscow*, to sign this Declaration upon Pain of Death, and Confiscation of their Estates, except those of the Kingdoms of *Astracan*, and *Siberia*, who, being at so great a Distance, were to subscribe before their respective Governors.

THE People very readily took the Oath required, and eagerly pressed to subscribe to the Will of their Emperor, well assured, that he would make Choice of no one but what was worthy to succeed him. This Point settled, *Peter* prepared for new Conquests, which the Troubles in the East, and the Peace he had concluded with *Sweden*, gave him an Opportunity to make.

SEVERAL RUSSIAN Merchants having been pillaged, and massacred by the *Lesgians*, a People of *Persia*, and the *Russian* Caravan from *China*, treated in the same Manner by the *Usbecks*, who were Allies of *Myrr-Maghumud*, known in *Europe* by the Name of *Myrr-Weis*, and who had raised himself to absolute Power, by obliging his Prince *Schab-Husssein*, IV. to declare him his Prime Minister, and Protector of *Persia*, the Emperor *Peter* thought it proper to send an Ambassador into *Persia*, to carry his Complaints either to the

Schab-

Schah-Hussein, or to *Myrr-Magbmud*, if it was true, that he had entered *Persia* as an Enemy, since the *Russians* had no Misunderstanding with the *Emir* of *Candabar*, which was the Title the Usurper had borne before.

THE Ambassador of *Russia*, upon his entering into *Persia*, found the Country in a Confusion not to be described; wherefore, he went directly to the Camp of *Myrr-Magbmud*, whom Fortune and Victory obsequiously followed. He had immediate Audience, for how ambitious soever this Rebel was, and whatever great Titles he affected, he was always free of Access. The Ambassador declared to him the Subject of his Commission, remonstrating to him, that as his Troops joined with the *Usbecks*, had massacred, without any Reason, the Subjects of the Emperor, his Master, and had robbed them of the Merchandize and Treasures that they had brought from *China*, the Emperor of *Russia* having no Quarrel with those of *Candabar*, could not but look upon such a Violence as contrary to the Law of Nations, and therefore had a Right to demand a proper Satisfaction.

MYRR-MAGHMUD returning an insolent Answer to these Remonstrances, *Peter* was no sooner informed of it, than he gave Orders in all the Eastern Provinces of his Dominions to assemble his Troops; he armed the *Cossacks* and the *Calmucks*, and built at *Astracan*, and along the *Wolga*, Barks, Gallies, and other necessary Vessels for an Expedition on the *Caspian Sea*. It was not the Contempt shewn by *Myrr-Magbmud* in sending back his Ambassador, nor the Massacre of his People in

Persia, that alone excited the *Russian* Monarch to this Undertaking; but the Design of establishing an useful Commerce, which was what he had always considered as the Basis of the Grandeur and Power of his Empire, and was the great Spring of most of his Enterprizes. His Imperial Majesty therefore resolved to transport his Army to the Frontiers of *Persia*, which he was resolved to command in Person, and which consisted of above an hundred thousand Men, among whom were above thirty thousand of those warlike Troops who had been in every Campaign during the War with *Sweden*. ON the 24th of *May*, the Emperor of *Russia* set out, with his Empress, for *Colonna*, with Design to continue their Voyage to *Astracan* by Water. The Grand-Admiral *Apraxin*, Lieutenant-General *Bouturlin*, Prince *Trubetskoi*, the Hospodar *Demetrius Cantemir*, and the Privy Counsellor *Tolstoi*, being gone before.

PETER sets out
on his Expedition
to PERSIA.

THE TURKS were no sooner informed of the Preparations that were making in *Astracan*, and the other Eastern Provinces of the *Russian* Emperor, but they took Umbrage at them; and the Bashaws who commanded on the Frontiers of *Persia*, and of *Georgia*, gave Advice to the *Porte*, that the Emperor of *Russia* had formed a Project to subdue the last named Province, and to make himself Master of the *Caspian-Sea*. The Grand Vizier made these Suspicions known to the *Russian* Minister at *Constantinople*, and sent an Aga to his Imperial Czarish Majesty to dissuade him from the Enterprize; but *Peter* took care to satisfy both the *Turks* and the *Persians* of his real Designs,

in

in a Manifesto, which he published and distributed along the Borders of the *Caspian Sea*, wherein he declared, “ That he came not
“ with his Land and Sea Forces on the Frontiers of *Persia*, with any Intention to reduce
“ some of the Provinces of that Kingdom to
“ his Obedience, but only to maintain the
“ lawful Possessor of them on his Throne,
“ and to defend him powerfully, together
“ with his faithful Subjects, against the Tyranny of *Myrr-Magbmud*, and also to draw
“ Satisfaction from the said *Myrr-Magbmud*,
“ and his *Tartars*, for the Mischiefs and Robberies by them committed within the *Russian Empire*.”

MOREOVER the *Schab-Hussein*, drove from his Capital by *Myrr-Magbmud*, had sent three Expresses successively to his Imperial Majesty, to implore his Assistance, on Conditions too advantageous to the *Russians*, for so wise a Prince as *Peter* to neglect. He himself published a Journal of this Expedition, from the Time of his setting out from *Astracan*, to his Arrival at *Derbent*, which Town with those of *Terki*, and *Baku*, the most considerable on the Coast of the *Caspian-Sea*, surrendered to him, the People receiving him joyfully wherever he came, so that he made himself Master of the Provinces of *Dagestan* and *Schirvan*.

THE Power of the *Russians* in subduing so great a Part of the Country, somewhat dismayed *Myrr-Magbmud*, who had a great Number of Enemies in the Bosom of *Persia*. The Rebel also not able to confide in his *Tartars*, endeavoured to procure a stronger Support from *Constantinople*, and brought the
Grand

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Grand Seignior to the Point of declaring War with the *Russians*, had not the good Offices of *M. de Bonac*, the Ambassador of *France*, prevented it, upon an Assurance that *Peter* would push his Conquests no farther, which was all that the *Porte* required, without the immediate Restitution of *Derbent*, as had been before demanded.

HOWEVER important these Affairs were, and how much soever his Attention was required to maintain a sufficient Force on the Frontiers of *Poland* and *Finland*; yet these did not prevent the Emperor *Peter* from having a watchful Eye on the State of Affairs at Home, for he was no sooner returned, after a Year's Absence from *Moscow* and *Petersburgh*, than he discovered new Criminals, among some of the principal Persons of the Regency, who were found guilty of Concussions, and condemned to severe Punishments; among the rest Baron *Schafiroff*, the Emperor's First Minister, and once his Favourite, was condemned to Death; but, on account of his past Services, had his Sentence altered, after he was brought to the Scaffold, and was only sent into Banishment.

FROM *Moscow* his Imperial Majesty went to *Petersburgh*, where he visited the Docks, and Ship-Yards, to see the Condition his Shipping was in, intending to put a numerous Squadron to Sea the next Summer, that he might constantly keep his Marine in play. In this Review he found several Pinks and Ships of Burthen, that had been taken from the *Swedes* in the last War, to which he joined others built in the Ports of *Livonia*, and distributed

distributed them among the Cities of *Peterf-burgh*, *Riga*, *Revel*, *Wybourg*, and his other conquer'd Places, in order to have them always employed in Trade. Twelve Men were to be constantly kept in pay on board each Ship, eight being to be furnished by his Imperial Majesty, and the other four by the Magistrates, who were to maintain the whole Number: But in case one of the Ships given by his Majesty should be lost, or become unfit for Service, the Magistrates were bound to provide a new Ship in lieu thereof, of the same Kind and Burthen. By this Method he hoped to accustom his People, by little and little, to Trade and Navigation.

In this Year [1723,] the States of *Sweden* granted the Title of *Royal Highness* to the Duke of *Holstein*, which was very agreeable to *Peter*, who intended to give one of his Daughters to that Prince, and as *Sweden* had now recognized his own Title of EMPEROR, as well as *Prussia*, he thought it could be no longer refused by the King of *Denmark*, for which Reason he sent an Order to his Minister at *Copenhagen*, to renew his Instances on that and other Articles; ordering at the same Time, the Equipment of the *Russian* Fleet, and embarked on board it himself, so that the *Danes* expected to have been attacked; but the Czar deceived the Expectation of all the Speculatists, and contented himself with only exercising his Fleet, without going out of the Gulph of *Finland*, and then returned to *Peterf-burgh*. In which City, soon after arrived *Ismael Beck*, Ambassador Plenipotentiary from the Schah *Tahmas* or *Tahmased*, Son of the deposed *Hussain*,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

Hussein, Schah of *Persia*; this Minister, knowing all that his Master had to fear from the *Turk* and *Myrr-Magbmud*, had frequent Conferences with his Imperial Majesty's Ministers to solicit a quick and powerful Succour. He was a Man of Spirit and not ignorant of the Interests of both Empires, but thought very justly that he should never be able to obtain the Alliance he demanded, and the Succours his Master's Affairs had so much need of, without proposing very advantageous Conditions to the *Russians*, which he did accordingly, and concluded a Treaty with his Imperial Majesty, whereby *Derbent*, *Baku*, the Provinces of *Gbilan*, *Mazanderan*, and *Astarabat*, were yielded to *Peter* for ever.

THE PORTE was very soon informed of this Treaty, with which she was not at all satisfy'd, and looked upon the Emperor of *Russia's* thus uniting with the Schah *Tabmas*, as an oblique Declaration of War against her; but the *Russian* Minister at *Constantinople*, and the Marquis *de Bonac*, the *French* Ambassador, immediately giving Notice to *Peter* of the Disposition that appeared in the Divan to declare War against him, he communicated in Form to the *Porte*, the Treaty he had made with the young *Schah*, inviting his Highness the Grand Seignior to accede to it, declaring that he would religiously observe his Treaties with the *Sublime Porte*, and that he had no other View than to assist a Prince insulted and persecuted by a rebellious Subject. This Declaration had such an Effect, that the Divan was brought to consent to appoint Commissaries to treat of a Convention between the two Empires,

Empires, with regard to the Affairs of *Persia*, by which both the Czar's and the *Turks* Conquests were confirmed to them, and the latter put in Possession of the Provinces of *Erivan*, *Tauris* and *Casbin*.

THE Emperor PETER having thus established Peace on every Side of his wide extended Empire, began to think of putting the Design in Execution, which he had long formed of causing his beloved Empress *Catharine* to be crowned in his antient City of *Moscow*, of which I shall speak in the next Volume: And that Solemnity over, his Imperial Majesty pursued his usual Endeavours to encourage the Commerce of his Subjects, and to advance their Skill in all useful Arts and Sciences. He also made many wise and necessary Regulations, and, as *Monf. de Fontenelle* says, *dared* to retrench the Churches and Monasteries that were too rich, and brought from thence several Millions of Roubles into the Publick Treasury.

AT the latter End of this Year [1724,] his Imperial Majesty invited the foreign Ministers, and others, to the Ceremony of betrothing the Princess *Anna Petrowna* to the Duke of *Holstein*. The Emperor himself joined the illustrious Pair, by exchanging the Rings, giving them a Kiss, and wishing them a long Life; after which the Archbishop of *Novogorod* gave them his Blessing in a few Words. Great Rejoicings were made on this Occasion; but a sudden Damp was put to the publick Joy by the Apprehensions of the greatest Calamity, that could befall the Nation, viz. the Loss of that great Prince who

The Empress CATHARINE crowned.

ANNA PETROWNA the Emperor's Daughter betrothed to the Duke of HOLSTEIN.

was

PETER falls
sick.

Dies.

was truly the *Father of his Country*; for on the 16th of *January*, his Majesty was attended with a violent Cold, which brought on him a Fit of the Cholick, followed by a Strangury, which was occasioned by an Abscess in the Neck of his Bladder. He continued in great Pain for twelve Days, and then expired, on the 28th of *January*, 1725, giving all the Tokens of a perfect Resignation to the Will of Heaven, and all along behaving with the same Courage and Piety that accompanied all his Actions.

THE CZAR *Alexis Michaelowitz's Letters to the Duke of Holstein, relating to the delivering up Timoska Ankudina.*

IN the Name of Almighty God, who does all in all, and protects all Nations in good Consolations, from Him, who, by the Grace, Providence, Power, Virtue, Operation, and good Pleasure of God, to be magnify'd in the blessed Trinity, and glorious in all Eternity, hath been chosen, and holds the Scepter of the true Christian Faith, to govern and preserve, with God's Assistance, in Peace and Quiet, without Troubles, the great Empire of the Russians, with all the Provinces thereunto annexed, by Conquest or otherwise. We the Grand Seignior, Czar, and Great Duke, Alexei Michaelouits, Conservator of all the Russes, &c. To the most mighty Frederick, Hereditary Prince of Norway, Duke of Sleswick, Holstein, Stormarie, and Ditmarse, Count of Oldenbourg, and Delmenhoft, Health. In the Year 1644. or, according to the Calculation of Muscovy, in the Year 7152. the mentioned Timoska

moska Ankudina, and Kostka Konichou, having robbed our Treasure, to avoid the Death they had deserved, departed the Countries under our Jurisdiction, to go to Constantinople, where they professed the Turkish Religion. There they did so great Mischief in a short Time, that they were forc'd to fly, and to retreat into Poland and Lithuania, where they endeavoured to sow Divisions between the neighbouring Princes. To that End they went to Theodat Chmielniski, General of the Cossacks, whom the King John Casimir of Poland, our Brother, commanded to put those Robbers into the Hands of M. Germolitzowi, Gentleman of his Chamber, who had Order to send them to Muscovy, under the Conduct of M. Peter Protefiowi, a Gentleman of our Retinue, as the said Chmielniski had made known to our Czaarick Majesty. But these Robbers and Traitors got to Rome, where they embraced the Latin Religion. Afterwards they passed through several other Provinces of Europe, where they changed their Names, so as Timoska, sometimes, assumed that of Zuski, and sometimes that of Sinensis, while Kostka went under the Name of his Servant, till such time as both having been known at Stockholm, by some of our Merchants of Novogrod, and other Places, and thereupon secured, one at Reuel, the other at Narva, the Governours of those two Places made some difficulty to deliver them up to us, without express Order from the Great Queen of Sweden. But when we had desired the said Great Queen of Sweden, to put those Traitors into the Hands of the Gentleman whom we had sent expressly for that Purpose, it happened that at his coming to Reuel, with the Orders of the said Great Queen, the Governour

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

had already suffered one of them to make his Escape, so that he could bring along with him but only the said Kostka. We have understood since, that the other has been taken and imprisoned in the Country of Holstein, wherefore we have thought fit to send to your Highness our Poslanick, Basili Spilki, accompany'd by some of our Subjects, with Letters from our Czaarick Majesty, to intreat you, that you will be pleas'd to deliver up unto them, and to send to us those Traitors.

The Letters were dated the last of October, 1652. after which the Great Duke sent another of the 5th of January, 1653, to the same effect, save that, at the End of the Letter, were added the Lines following. *Since that Time, there came to us, in the Month of December last, Peter Micklaf, of Novogorod, who hath informed us, how that, in pursuance of your Orders, the said Traitor had been secured in your Ducal City of Neustat, and that upon the Remonstrance made to you by the said Micklaf, you had translated him to Gottorp, to be there kept under a good and sure Guard. Wherefore we send back again unto you the said Micklaf, with Letters from our Czaarick Majesty, to entreat you to deliver up the said Traitor to him and Basili Spilki, that he may have no further Opportunity to escape, and raise new Troubles in the World. In acknowledgment wherof our Czaarick Majesty shall serve your Highness, in such Occasions as shall present themselves. This Robber and Traitor to our Czaarick Majesty, named Timoska, is of very mean birth, the Son of a Linen-Draper that dealt only in coarse Cloaths, named Demki Ankudina, of the Suburbs of Vologda; his Mother is called Salmaniska, and his Son, who is yet living, Terefska.*

reska. Timoska was an under Officer in the Nova Zetvert, and he hath robb'd our Treasury, hath kill'd his Wife, and, with his own House, hath burnt several other Houses that were near his, whereby many of our Subjects have been ruined. Wherefore knowing that he could not avoid Death otherwise than by Flight, he got away in the Manner we have mentioned. Given at our Czaarick Residence of Moscow, the third of January, in the Year of the World's Creation, 7161. and of the Birth of our Saviour, 1653. After this, he also writ a third Letter, of the 17th of October the same Year, upon which the Prisoner was delivered up to those, whom the Great Duke had appointed to receive him.

*The Sentence of Death read before Stenko Razin, on the Place of Execution, June 6, 1671.
(as mentioned in Page 247.)*

“ **T**HOU Villain and Renegado Rebel,
 “ *Donski Cossack Stenko Razin*, in the
 “ Year 7175, alias 1667, abandoning the
 “ Fear of God, and forgetting thy Duty and
 “ Oath, whereby thou art bound to his Ma-
 “ jesty, the Great Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz*,
 “ Emperor of the Greater and Lesser, and
 “ the *White Russia*, hast rebelled against his
 “ said Majesty; and having raised other
 “ *Cossacks*, hast marched with them to the
 “ River *Volga*, there to act thy villanous
 “ Designs: And coming there, thou hast
 “ done great Mischief to much People, ta-
 “ king the *Nasaisky* great Boats, laden with
 “ Salt-fish and Salt, belonging to the Pa-
 “ triarch, Cloysters, and others; as also the
 “ Boats

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

“ Boats of many Merchants: Which Violence and Robbery, thou hast acted as far as to the very Walls of *Astracan*.

“ AGAIN, *thou Villain*, hast, betwixt *Astracan* and the *Sorneiner*, robbed, killed, and thrown into the Water, the Waywood of the Great Czar, *Simon Bellemisch*, who was sent to speak with thee. The like Villany thou hast committed upon the *Muscovian* Officer *Susover*, that was likewise dispatched to thee for the same End.

“ WHEN out of *Astracan* to the Town *Jayck* were sent a Waywood, and two *Russian* Colonels, with some Soldiers, to confer with you in an amicable Way, and to persuade you to desist from your villainous Attempts, and to beg his Majesty's Pardon, thou didst hang both the Colonels, and betake thyself with the *Cossacks* to Sea, from *Jayck*, and return from Sea into the *Volga*, ruining all Places of Fishery, and burning the Habitations of the *Tartars*.

“ THOU *Villain*, hast also been under the Town *Tarchi*, and hast exceedingly endangered the adjacent Places; as also Part of the Dominions of the King of *Persia*. Being upon the *Caspian Sea*, thou didst rob the Subjects of *Persia*, and take away the Goods of Merchants, and their Lives also. Thou hast also ruined several Towns in *Persia*, and thereby caused great Difference between the two Empires. Besides, the Soldiers of *Astracan*, upon thy Orders, have killed their Colonel, and joined themselves to thee, doing great Mischeif in many Places.

“ AN.

“ AN. 7177, *alias* 1669, the Governor of
 “ *Astracan*, Knez *Jwan Simonowitz Proso-*
 “ *rossky* sent against you the Waywood Knez
 “ *Simon Leibof*, with his Majesty’s Army,
 “ who had girt you all about; which, *thou*
 “ *Villain*, seeing, didst dispatch to that Way-
 “ wood two of thy chief Confederates, pray-
 “ ing in the Name of all the *Cossacks*, that
 “ his Majesty would please to pardon them,
 “ promising, that thereupon you would re-
 “ turn Home, and act no more Mischief, but
 “ serve the Czar with all Fidelity, without
 “ occasioning any Difference between his Ma-
 “ jesty and the King of *Persia*, as also with-
 “ out taking any thing upon the *Volga*, or the
 “ *Caspian Sea*: Whereupon those two *Cossacks*
 “ having taken an Oath in the Name of the
 “ whole Body, and sent to his Majesty seven
 “ Persons to implore his Pardon (which was
 “ granted) and your Forces being permitted
 “ to go with Safety from *Astracan* to the
 “ River *Don*, the Place of your Dwelling;
 “ notwithstanding all this, *thou Villain*, hast
 “ forgot the Grace and Favour of the Great
 “ Czar, and hast by the Way exercised on
 “ the *Volga*, great Robbery, and coming to
 “ *Tzaretsa*, beaten the Waywood, and com-
 “ mitted enormous Outrages.

“ AN. 7178, *alias* 1670, *thou Villain*, toge-
 “ ther with thy Companions, forgetting the
 “ Fear of God, and deserting the Holy Ca-
 “ tholick Apostolick Church, didst, when
 “ you were upon the *Don*, speak blasphemous
 “ Words against our Lord Christ, and pro-
 “ hibit to build Churches, and to perform
 “ Divine Service in those that were in Being;

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

“ driving away all the Priests, and making
 “ such People as would marry, instead of
 “ practising the usual Ceremonies of Mar-
 “ riage, to go round about a Tree.

“ THOU *Villain*, also, slighting the Grace
 “ of the Great Czar, vouchsafed to thee and
 “ thy Associates, hast afresh rebelled against
 “ his Majesty, and returned to the River *Vol-*
 “ *ga*, acting the like Villanies, with robbing
 “ and killing as formerly, and particularly
 “ plundering and putting to Death some ho-
 “ nest ancient *Cossacks*, that refused to join
 “ with you, and to approve of your Actions.

“ THOU hast likewise killed and cast in-
 “ to the Water, those that by the Great Czar
 “ were sent with Letters of Pardon to the
 “ Captain *Cornelius Jacolowitz*, and to other
 “ *Donsky Cossacks*; and caused the rest to be
 “ so beaten, that they died of it.

“ MARCHING from the River *Don* with
 “ thy confederate *Cossacks*, and coming to the
 “ Town of *Tsaretza*, thou hast fraudulently
 “ persuaded the People of that Place, that
 “ the Czar's Army was coming to put them
 “ all to the Sword; whereas on the contrary,
 “ his Majesty's Army went to assist that Town
 “ against thee and thy villanous Practices:
 “ Upon which ungrounded Persuasions, the
 “ said Town surrender'd themselves to thee,
 “ and receiv'd thee amongst them. Enter-
 “ ing into it, thou hast put to the Sword
 “ the Commander *Turgonova*, and all those
 “ Citizens, that would not be Partakers in
 “ your Villanies, and thrown them into the
 “ Water; and thereupon thou didst march
 “ out against the Army of the Great Czar,
 “ and

“ and by Fraud rout the same, and didst
 “ fling into the Water their Colonel *Jwan*
 “ *Lapatin*, and their Lieutenant-Colonel *Tedor*
 “ *Jeckschym*, and others, after having put
 “ them to very great Torments. Besides,
 “ thou hast taken away the Czar’s Boats laden
 “ with Rye, and robbed many Merchants;
 “ and after that thou didst march to the Town
 “ *Tzornojaar*, and there kill the Governour
 “ *Jwan Sergeof*, and all Officers, and many
 “ *Moscovian* Soldiers.

“ Coming before *Astracan*, thou madest
 “ some of thy villanous *Cossacks* enter into it,
 “ and by them induce the Soldiers to deliver
 “ up the Town, and the Boyar and Waywood
 “ into thy Hands, which was done accordingly;
 “ the *Astracan* Soldiers thereupon joining
 “ themselves with thee, and upon thy Orders
 “ pulling the Boyar Knez *Jwan Simonowitz*
 “ *Proforofsky*, out of the Church, whom thou
 “ didst cast down headlong from an high
 “ Steeple, commanding also his Brother,
 “ together with many Noblemen, Officers,
 “ Soldiers, and Merchants, after grievous
 “ Tortures, to be put to Death; and robbing
 “ the Houses of God, Churches, and Monasteries,
 “ as also the Czar’s Treasure, and many
 “ Houses of the principal Citizens, and
 “ burning all the Papers of State in the
 “ Chancery, with the Addition of such
 “ Scoffing, as cannot be parallel’d.

“ MOREOVER, thou hast caused, without
 “ any Shame, many Priests, Monks, and Nuns,
 “ to be stripp’d naked, and many other
 “ People besides. Thou hast also commanded
 “ most inhumanly to be beaten ve-

“ ry many, to make them confess where
 “ they had hid their Treasure, without spa-
 “ ring little Children. Further, thou hast
 “ put to Death some of the chief Merchants
 “ of the King of *Persia*, and many other Mer-
 “ chants, Strangers, *Persians*, *Indians*, *Turkish*,
 “ *Armenians*, and *Boucharen*, who upon the
 “ Account of Traffick, were at that time in
 “ *Astracan*; robbing them of their Goods,
 “ and occasioning Matter of Discontent to
 “ the Great Shach of *Persia*.

“ AGAIN, *thou Villain*, hast been insatiable
 “ of Blood, and continued to spill the most
 “ innocent; and thou hast not scrupled to
 “ hang up by their Legs upon the Wall
 “ both the innocent Children of the Boyar,
 “ Knez *Jwan Simonowitz Proforoffski*, and
 “ after great Torture, to worry the one, and
 “ so to beat the other, that thou thought-
 “ est he could not live. And thou hast
 “ also caused the Clerks, that served the
 “ Great Czar, and would not consent to thy
 “ Designs, to be put to painful Deaths, com-
 “ manding them to be hanged up by their
 “ Ribs.

“ BESIDES, *thou Villain*, after having kill’d
 “ in *Astracan* many good People, hast deliver’d
 “ many Wives and their Daughters to be
 “ abused by your confederate Miscreants;
 “ commanding also the Priests that they
 “ should marry none at the Metropolitan’s
 “ Order, scoffing at the Church of God,
 “ and the Ordinances of the Holy Apostles,
 “ and annulling the Sacrament of Marriage,
 “ and throwing such Priests as refused to
 “ comply with thee, into the Water.

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

407

“ THOU *Villain*, hast also robbed the Treasure of the Great Czar in *Astracan*; and
“ after an Effusion of much Blood, thou didst
“ march out of that City to *Tsarietza*, and
“ thence up the River to *Tsaratof*, whose Inhabitants
“ surrendred themselves unto thee;
“ and there thou didst rob the Corn-Monies
“ of his Majesty, and great Store of Provision,
“ and putting to Death the Waywood
“ *Koesmakotesin*, and many Noblemen.

“ FROM *Saratof*, thou *Villain*, persisting in
“ thy malicious Designs, didst come to the
“ Town *Samarof*, which also was surrendred
“ to thee, and whence thou didst carry away
“ the Czar’s Treasure, putting to the Sword
“ the Governor *John Alsienoffsky*, and many
“ Noblemen and Citizens that would not
“ take your Part.

“ FROM *Samarof*, thou Miscreant, didst
“ proceed to the Town *Simbierske*, to which
“ thou laidst a Siege, and tookst it by Storm,
“ doing much Mischief there. Thou didst
“ also send to many other Towns some of
“ thy villanous Companions, by false Writings
“ bearing them in Hand, that the eldest
“ Son of our Great Czar, of glorious Memory,
“ our Czarawitz *Alexis Alexewitz*, Great
“ Duke of the Greater, Lesser, and the White
“ *Russia*, was yet living, and that thou by
“ Order of his Majesty, wast come to put to
“ Death as Traytors, all Boyars, Councillors,
“ Noblemen and Officers, being in his Majesty’s
“ Service; whereas, on the contrary, the said
“ Son of our Great Czar departed this mortal
“ Life, and pass’d into the everlasting Rest
“ of Heaven; and that in his

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

“ Palace, in the Presence of his Lord Father,
 “ in the Year 7178, *alias* 1670. the 17th of
 “ *January*; his Corps being buried in *Moscow*
 “ in the Cathedral of *S. Michael*, amongst his
 “ Progenitors, the very next Day after his
 “ Death, likewise in the Presence of his Lord
 “ Father the Great Czar, and of the Lords
 “ the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, *Payfy*, and the
 “ Patriarch of *Moscow*, *Joseph*, and of many
 “ Metropolitans, Arch-Bishops, Bishops, Ab-
 “ bots, and Priests; which Departure of our
 “ Lord *Czarewicz* of glorious Memory, is not
 “ only notorious here, but in other Kingdoms
 “ also. But *thou Traytor* didst devise this
 “ with a Design to discompose the People,
 “ and to occasion the shedding of innocent
 “ Blood.

“ THOU hast also craftily given out, as if
 “ the Monk *Nikow* was with thee; whereby
 “ thou hast scandalized many; for this *Nikow*
 “ was, by the Order of the Great Czar, ac-
 “ cording to the Condemnation of the Patri-
 “ arch, deposed from his Office, and sent to
 “ *Beelooser* into the Cloyster *Verapond*, where
 “ he yet is.

“ MOREOVER, thou didst also like a Vil-
 “ lain, send thy Associates and Traytors into
 “ the Army of the Boyar *Knez Jurge Alexe-*
 “ *witz Dolgoroeck*, to intice them to join in
 “ Rebellion with thee; which Design yet, by
 “ the good Providence of God, hath been
 “ frustrated.

“ BUT, *thou Villain*, lying about the Town
 “ *Simbierske*, wast not able with all thy
 “ Storming and Cheating to effect any thing;
 “ forasmuch as by the Goodness of God Al-
 “ mighty,

“ mighty, and the Aid of our blessed Lady
“ the Mother of God, the Comfort of the
“ Christians, and upon the Intercession of the
“ Holy Father and Wonder-worker *Sergius*,
“ and by the military Strength, and the Prof-
“ perity of our Great Czar *Alexis Michalowitz*,
“ Great Duke of all the Greater, Lesser, and
“ the White *Russia*, as also of the Highborn
“ Lord our Czarewitz and Great Duke *Jwan*
“ *Alexewitz*; and likewise by the prudent and
“ careful Conduct, and the Valour of the
“ Soldiery of our Great Czar; *Thou Villain*
“ and *Traytor*, with thy Confederates and A-
“ bettors, hast been, near the Town *Simbier-*
“ *ske*, and in many other Places, discomfited,
“ and with a few of thy Company didst then
“ escape, and retreat downwards.

“ IN many other Places have the Inhabi-
“ tants, upon thy villanous Sollicitations, re-
“ belled, and kill'd their Governours, and
“ thrown them into the Water: And *thou*
“ *Villain* hast joined thyself to the Villany of
“ thy Brother, and you together have fallen
“ into divers Frontier-places, where you have
“ shed much innocent Blood, and done great
“ Mischief.

“ IN which your devilish Practices, you
“ perfidious *Villains*, *Stenko* and *Frolka*, toge-
“ ther with your Companions, did contemn
“ and deride the Church of God, not under-
“ standing the Grace of the most Holy Mo-
“ ther of God, the Hope of Christians, and
“ of the Holy Wonder-worker *Sergius*; de-
“ signing the Ruin of the Imperial City *Mos-*
“ *cow*, and of the whole *Moscowian* Empire.

“ You,

The HISTORY of RUSSIA.

“ You, with all your Adherents, went so far in your Wickedness, that you refused to obey the Laws of our Great God, who is Glorious in Trinity, and slighted the Mother of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Hope of the Christians; putting all your Confidence in your devilish Practices: In which villainous Design you have been engaged since the Year 7175 (1667.) unto the Year 7179 (1671.) *April* 4th; during which Time you have shed store of innocent Blood, without sparing that of poor harmless young Children.

“ *April* 4th of the Year 7179. (1671) through the great Mercy of the Almighty, and by the wise Conduct and the Valour of the Army of the Great Czar, *Alexis Michalowitz*, *Thou Villain* wast taken Prisoner, and hast been brought to his Majesty, and in the Examination and upon the Torture hast confessed thy Crimes: For which thy abominable Attempts and Practices, committed against God Almighty, and against our Great Czar, *Alexis Michalowitz*, Great Duke and Defender of all the Greater, Lesser, and the White *Russia*, for thy Rebellion and Treason, and for the Ruin and Desolation caused by thee to all *Russia*, the Great Czar hath commanded, and the Boyars have assented, that thou shouldst be condemned to be Quartered.”

The End of the First VOLUME.

25 NO 68

INDEX



I N D E X

TO THE

FIRST VOLUME

OF THE

HISTORY of RUSSIA,

To the END of the REIGN of the

Empress CATHARINE.

A.

ABO, taken by *Peter I.*
p. 351
Academy, a new one set up
at *Petersburgh* 358
Accatour, a Town of *Russia*
that yielded to the Rebel
Stenko Razin 242
Adrianople, the Ottoman Ar-
my assembled there 343
Aland, the Congress there
372, 373
—breaks up 378

Alberoni, Cardinal, Baron
Gortz lays his Scheme for
dethroning the Kings of
England and *Poland* be-
fore him 362
Alexander, the Successor of
Ieroslaw II. an Account
of his Reign 10
—dies with the Reputa-
tion of a Saint *ibid.*
—a Church built in Ho-
nour of him by *Peter* the
Great *ibid.*
Alexis

I N D E X.

- Alexis Michaelowitz* crown-
ed 190
- marries 193
- the Oppressions of his
Favourites 205, 206
- set upon by the People
to hear their Complaints
against *Plesseou*, one of his
Favourites 207
- speaks to the People
himself to pacify them,
and prevails upon them to
pardon *Morosou* another of
his Favourites 214
- sends an Envoy to
Christina Queen of *Sweden*, concerning the Dis-
orders committed on the
Frontiers of the two States 215
- offers the *Polanders* to
employ an Army in their
Service, if they will give
him the Crown of *Poland* 219
- makes War with *Pol-
land* 220
- recovers the former
Conquests of *Russia* 221
- Studies the Peace and
Happiness of his People 225, 226
- causes an Epitome of
the several Sciences to be
translated into the *Russian*
Tongue *ibid.*
- and the Laws of several
Provinces to be collected
into one Body *ibid.*
- builds two new Suburbs
to the City of *Moscow* *ibid.*
- greatly improves his
Country *ibid.* & 227
- an Insurrection raised
in his Reign by *Stenko*
Razin, a *Cossack* Chief
ibid. to 247
- makes an Alliance with
Michael King of *Poland* 248
- his rude and haughty
Answer to the Grand
Seignior 250
- sends to all the Princes
of Christendom to league
against the *Turks* 253
- his Ambassadors well
received at *Rome* and o-
ther Courts 254
- is dissatisfy'd with the
King of *Poland* 255
- reconciled and gene-
rously assists him with a
powerful Army 256 to
258
- endeavours to get the
Crown of *Poland* for his
Son, upon the Death of
Michael Wiesnowieski 259,
260
- resolving to put himself
at the Head of his Army
against the *Turks*, caused
his Son *Theodore* to be ac-
knowledg'd his Successor 266
- dies 267
- his Wives and Children
ibid.
- Alexis Petrowitz*, Son of
Peter, goes with his Father
to *Leopold* 320
- sent to visit several
Courts of *Europe* 340
- married to the Daugh-
ter of the Duke of *Brunf-
wick Wolfembuttel* 348
- his ill Character and
Behaviour 367
- his Crimes enquired in-
to 368
- renounces the Succes-
sion to the Crown *ibid.*
& 369
- dies

I N D E X.

- dies 371
- Allard*, one of the *Russian* Generals 343
- Alt-Ranstadt* the Treaty there signed between *Charles XII.* and King *Augustus* 318
- Amiliancu*, a Merchant, his Avarice occasions a Tumult in *Pleskow* 216
- Amsterdam*, *Peter* enters that City incognito 293
- Ankudina*, see *Timoska*
- Anne Joanowna* fourth Daughter of the Czar *John*, married to the Duke of *Courland* 339
- Anjou*, *Henry* Duke of, elect- ed King of *Poland* 69
- Apaka Taquin*, a Prince of the *Calmuck Tartars*, *Peter* makes a Treaty with him 344
- Apraxin*, Admiral, sent before *Wybourg* 340
- Peter* Rear Admiral under him 353
- does great Damage to the *Swedes* 377
- Apraxin*, *Peter Matuewitz*, the great Admiral's Brother, his Daughter marry'd to *Theodore* 277
- involved in the Affair of *Czarewitz Alexis* 369
- Aprisnes*, a Guard of *Russian* Musqueteers so called 31
- broke 101
- Arch-Angel*, *Peter* endeavours to remove Trade from thence to *Petersburgh* 352
- which he effects 387
- Ariskine*, Dr. the Czar's chief Physician, first Director of the Dispensary at *Moscow* 323
- Argamaks*, *Persian* Horses so called 182
- Arfamas*, cruel Executions in that Town 243
- Arfa*, a Town in *Russia*, yielded to the Rebel *Stenko Razin* 242
- Astracan*, taken by *John Basilowitz* the Tyrant 34
- a vast Body of *Turks* and *Tartars* march to that City 61
- driven from thence by the *Russian* Commander there 62
- delivered up to the Rebel *Stenko Razin* 239
- restored to the Czar 247
- the Czar *Alexis Michae- lowitz's* Mistress and natural Son sent thither where they both die 267
- Peter* builds Gallies and Vessels there for his Expedition to the *Caspian* Sea 391
- sets out with his Empress for that City 392
- Augdo* taken by *Everd Horn*, the *Swedish* General 176
- Augustus II.* chosen King of *Poland* 292
- his Right supported by the Czar *Peter* *ibid.*
- has an Interview with *Peter* at *Birsen* 304
- drove to great Streights 305
- behaves with much Bravery, but loses the Battle of *Cliffou* *ibid.* 306
- is deposed 309
- seizes and confines the Princes *James* and *Constantine Sobieski* 310
- commands the Czar's Army,

I N D E X.

Army, and makes *Peter* a Colonel 315, 316
 —forced to renounce his Crown, and acknowledge *Stanislaus* as lawful King of *Poland* 318
 —is invited to re-ascend the Throne 336
 —agrees to a Suspension of Arms with *Sweden*, which was not at all agreeable to *Peter* 349
Azoph, besieged by *Peter* 289
 —surrendered to him 290

B.

B *Althi*, a famous Cham of the *Tartars* 9
Basile Demetrowitz succeeds his Father *Demetrius* 13
 —taking Advantage of the Misery to which *Timur-Beck* had reduced the *Tartars*, he drives them out of *Russia* *ibid.*
 —having some Suspicion of his Wife's Virtue, he leaves his Son, at his Death, only the Principality of *Uglitz*, and all the rest of his Dominions to his Brother *Gregory* *ibid.*
Basile II. succeeds his Uncle *Gregory*, whose Sons take up Arms against him 14
 —falls into the Hands of his Enemies who banish him, and put out both his Eyes *ibid.*
 —brought back by the *Boyars*, where he reigned till the Time of his Death, with the Sirname of *Cziemuox* or the Blind *ibid.*

Basile Iwanowitz III. succeeds his Father, and changes his Name from *Gabriel* 17
 —contents himself at first with the Title of Administrator as long as his Nephew lives *ibid.*
 —loses a great Battle in *Livonia* 19
 —reunites *Pleskow* to his Empire 20
 —makes himself Master of *Smolensko* 21
 —receives a Letter giving him the Title of Emperor from *Maximilian I.* Emperor of *Germany* 22
 —forced to abandon his Capital and consents to pay an annual Tribute to the *Tartars* 24
 —is soon revenged on them 25, 26
 —dies 27
 —his Wives and Children *ibid.* 28
 —the Conquests he made along the Coasts of the Frozen Sea *ibid.* 29
Battori, Stephen, Prince of *Transilvania*, elected King of *Poland* 69
 —endeavours to bring *Magnus*, King of *Livonia*, over to his Interests 71
 —makes War with the *Russians* 75
 —takes *Poloczk* 77
 —and makes other Conquests *ibid.* 78 to 92
 —concludes a Peace with the Czar 93
 —dies 104
Batturin the Capital of the *Hettman* of the *Cossacks* burnt

I N D E X.

burnt to the Ground 328
Bekewitz, Prince *Alexander*,
 his unfortunate Expedition
 to the *Caspian Sea* 367
Berlin, the Czar *Peter* and
 the Czarina arrive there
 366
Bielki, the Knez *Bogdan*,
 Tutor to *Demetrius* the
 Son of *John Basilowitz*,
 his Character 100
 —ambitious Designs 101,
 102
 —overthrown *ibid.*
Birsen, *Peter* and *Augustus*,
 have an Interview there
 304
Black Russia, what Part of
 the Country so called 8
Bog, King of *Sweden* comes
 to that River in his Way
 to *Turky* 332
Boris, see *Gudenow*
Boristhenes, or *Dnieper*, *Igor*
 Master of all the Country
 along the Eastern Borders
 thereof 3
 —King of *Sweden* passes
 that River to run headlong
 on his own Ruin 326
Brugman of *Hambourg*, Am-
 bassador from the Duke of
Holstein to the Czar 225
Brunswick, the ineffectual
 Congress there 352
Bulgaria, antiently called
Thrace, *Sawatoflas* enters
 that Province 5
Busmanoff, *Peter*, goes over
 with a Part of the *Russian*
 Army to the false *Deme-*
trius 129
 —sent to receive the Bride
 of *Demetrius* coming from
Poland 140
 —is killed by Conspira-
 tors 142

C.

CAmishinka, the River
 297
Carmarthen, Marquess of, the
 Czar *Peter* much pleased
 with his Conversation 295
Casan, besieged by *John*
Basilowitz the Tyrant 30
 —taken 33
Casimir, elected King of *Po-*
land 219
 —irritates the King of
Sweden, by imprudently
 endeavouring to prevail
 upon *Christina* to protest
 against her Abdication
 221
 —quits the Throne of
Poland 248
Chancellour, *Richard*, goes
 with an *English Ship* to
Archangel 36
 —carry'd to *Moscow* and
 well received by the Czar
John Basilowitz 37
 —makes a second Voyage
 to *Russia*, and at his Re-
 turn drowned on the Coast
 of *Scotland* *ibid.*
Charles, Duke, his Misun-
 derstanding with his Bro-
 ther *John* King of *Sweden*
 105
 —becomes Regent in the
 Absence of his Nephew
Sigismund King of *Poland*
 110
 —endeavours to keep his
 Nephew out of the
 Throne of *Sweden* 115
 —makes an Alliance with
 the Czar *Boris Gudenow*
ibid.
 —becomes King of *Swe-*
den

I N D E X.

- den by the Title of *Charles IX.* 116
 —makes an Alliance with the Czar *Zufki* *ibid.*
 —dies 173
Charles Philip, second Son of *Charles IX.* King of *Sweden*, proposed to succeed *Wladislaus* as Czar of *Russia* 172
 —invited into that Kingdom 174
 —but misses the Crown *ibid.*
Chmielniski, General of the *Cossacks*, protects *Timoska Ancudina* the Impostor 196
Christina Queen of *Sweden*, an Envoy sent from *Russia* to her 216
Clisma, a River in *Russia*, the City of *Wolodimir* built thereon 6
Cliffau, the Battle fought near that Place 305
Cnerniow, *Nicholas*, one of the two Jesuits who directed the Impostor *Demetrius* in every Thing 137
Colville, Captain, the first who carry'd an *English* Ship into the Harbour of *Cronslot* 311
 —the Czar *Peter's* extraordinary Behaviour towards him 312
Constantine, Emperor of *Constantinople*, sends Presents to *Wolodimir II.* and acknowledges him for Czar 7
Copenhagen, the Czar *Peter* and the Czarina there 361
Corefch, a Town belonging to the *Drowlians*, near which they destroy'd *Igor* 2
 —the Princess *Olba*, in this Town caused five thousand of the Chief of the *Drowlians* to be massacred in revenge of her Husband's Death 4
Corfa, the Name of one of the Idols worshipped at *Kiorow* 6
Cossacks, their Original 121, to 123
 —they join the *Poles* to support the false *Demetrius* 125
 —propose to put themselves under the Protection of the *Russians* 188, 189
 —revolt from the *Poles* 218
 —seek Protection from the *Turk*, and some from the Czar 219
 —two Sorts, the *Zaporoski* and the *Donski* 227
 —the *Zaporoski Cossacks* revolt from *Poland* 248
 —the *Donski Cossacks* employed by *Peter* in the Siege of *Azoph* 289
 —above fifty thousand in *Black Russia* to join the Party of *Augustus* 314
 —thirty or forty thousand join the Czar at *Smolensko* 317
Couvanski, President of the *Strelitzes*, his Ambition 280
 —and Punishment 281
Cronslot, or *Cronstadt*, the Fort so called built by *Peter* 307
Croomy upon the *Occa* besieged 126
Croy, Duke *de*, commands the Army of the Czar *Peter*

I N D E X.

- Peter* 302
Czar, the Meaning of that Word 7
Czarnanapata, the Rencounter there 326
Czeherin, the Residence of the Rebel *Cossack Dorosenko* 260
 — set Fire to 261
Czeremetoff the Archbishop of *Rostow's* Letter to him 166
 — his artful Management to get his Nephew *Michael Theodorowitz* on the Throne of *Russia* 167, 168
Czeremetoff, the Velt Marechal in *Lithuania* 313
 — goes into *Pomerania* 358
- D.
- D** *Ageftan*, *Peter* makes himself Master of that Province 393
Daniel, the Successor of *Alexander*, some Account of his Reign 10, 11
Dantzick, *Peter* comes thither 293
 — continues there three Months, and celebrates the Marriage of his Niece and the Duke of *Mecklenbourg* 360
Demetrius, the Son of *George* 10
Demetrius Michaelowitz 11
Demetrius Iwanowitz *ibid.*
Demetrius, the second Son of *John Basilowitz* the Tyrant, left under the Tutelage of the Knez *Bielki* 100
 — assassinated 106
- Demetrius*, the first Impostor of that Name in the House of a *Lithuanian* Nobleman, pretends himself to be the real Son of *John Basilowitz* 117
 — sent into *Poland* to the Palatine of *Sandomir*, who promises him his Assistance 118
 — some Particulars related for, and against the Truth of what has been said of the Story of this *Demetrius* 119, 120
 — the *Cossacks* declare in his Favour 121
 — his Army put to flight 125
 — but loses not his Courage *ibid.*
 — gains a Battle, and gives Quarter to the Soldiers, to ingratiate himself into their Favour *ibid.* 126
 — regarded as an Impostor by the *Russians* 127
 — a great Number of *Russians* go over to him 129
 — is received into *Moscow* 130
 — proclaimed Czar *ibid.*
 — sends a pompous Embassy into *Poland* 131, 132
 — banishes about seventy Families allied to the Czar *Boris* 132
 — the People dissatisfy'd with him *ibid.*
 — seizes the Knez *Zuski*, who was at the Head of the discontented Party 133
 — and pardons him *ibid.*
 — forgets nothing to gain the Affection of the People

I N D E X.

- ple *ibid.* to be the Son of the second *Demetrius* 171
- causes a new Species of Money to circulate among them *ibid.* — drowned with his Mother *ibid.*
- sends for the Czarina, Widow of *John Basilowitz*, to court *ibid.* 134 *Demsko, Ankudina*, the Father of *Timoska* 194
- the Manner of his receiving her *ibid.* *Derbent* surrendered to *Peter* 393
- marries a Polish Lady 136 *Dolgorucki*, the Knez *George Alexiowitz*, hangs the Brother of *Stenko Razin* 227
- the People murmur against him 139 — beats that Rebel's Forces tho' they fought with great Bravery 243
- takes the imprudent Resolution of disbanding his foreign Guards *ibid.* *Dorofensko*, a Chief of the *Zaporofski Cossacks*, occasions great Disorders in the Kingdom of Poland 248 to 250
- is seized by the Conspirators against him 143 — sets Fire to *Czecherin*, and is shut up in the Castle by the *Russians* 261
- killed 144 — presses the Grand Seigneur to send an Army into the *Ukraine* 264
- Demetrius*, a second Impostor of that Name starts up 152 — the Grand Seigneur sends him Succours *ibid.*
- the Town of *Putivl* declares for him 153 — which being cut off, he is so much exasperated, that he joins with the *Turk*, and lays waste almost all the *Ukraine* *ibid.*
- vanishes 154, 155 — taken 270
- Demetrius*, a third Impostor of that Name *ibid.* — his Character *ibid.* 271
- is favoured by the Palatine of *Sendomir*, to revenge himself on *Zuski* 157 *Dorxowfski Tartars* 344
- acknowledged by the Widow of the first *Demetrius*, Daughter of the Palatine of *Sendomir*, for her Husband 158 *Doffifei*, Bishop of *Rostoff*, concerned in the *Czarewitz's* Conspiracy 369
- is abandoned by the *Poles* 159 *Drowlians*, the same who are now called *Donfski Cossacks* 3
- massacred 160 — destroy *Igor* in an Ambuscade *ibid.*
- Demetrius*, a fourth Impostor takes that Name *ibid.* — severely punished for it by the Princess *Olha* his Widow 4
- sends an Ambassador to the King of *Sweden* 161
- hanged 171
- Demetrius*, a fifth Impostor of that Name, pretending

I N D E X.

Dünamudenskautz taken by — his Death 300
Peter 340 *Frederick*, Duke of *Holstein*
Dunkirk, *Peter* goes to view *Sleswick*, sends an Am-
that Fortrefs 363 bassador to *Michael Theo-*
dorowitz 187

E.

Elbing, a considerable Town in *Polish Prussia*,
taken by *Peter* 339
Elboff, *Simcon Iwanowitz*,
Commander in Chief of
an Expedition against the
Rebel *Stenko Razin* 237
Emperor, that Title given to
the Czar *Basile Iwano-*
witz, by *Maximilian I.*
Emperor of Germany 22
— *Peter* takes that Title
at the Request of the Se-
nate 386, 387
— *Peter* demands the Re-
cognition of it from fo-
reign Powers *ibid.*

Eric XIV. comes to the
Throne of *Sweden* 46

— deposed 60

— put to Death by his
Brother King *John* 68

Eudocia, the beautiful
Daughter of a poor No-
bleman, married to the
Czar *Michael Theodoro-*
witz 178 to 180

Euphrosine, Mistress of the
Czarewitz *Alexis*, makes
an open Confession of
what she knows concern-
ing his Behaviour 369

F.

Felin in *Livonia*, be-
sieged by the *Russians*
45

Fort, M. Le, taken in favour
of the Czar *Peter* 286

France, the Czar *Peter* goes
thither 363

Fredericksball in *Norway*,
Charles XII. killed there
373

Frolka, Brother to *Stenko*
Razin taken 246

— obtains the Czar's Par-
don, on a Promise to dis-
cover where his Brother
had hid his Treasure 247

Furstenberg, *William* of,
Grand Master of the *Teu-*
tonick Order 45

— defends himself against
the *Russians*, at the Siege
of *Felin* 46

— carried to *Moscow* *ibid.*

G.

Gabriel, Son of *John*
Basilowitz the *Victo-*
rious, succeeds his Father,
and takes the Name of
Basile 17

Gadebusch, the Battle there
349

Galliczin, Prince, the Fa-
vourite of the Princess
Sophia 280

Gardie, *Peter de la*, the
Swedes under his Com-
mand, do much Mischief
to the *Russians* in *Livonia*
68

Gardie, *Pontus de la*, marri-
ed to the Daughter of
John, King of *Sweden* 84

— his Conquests in *Livo-*
nia *ibid.* & 85

— perishes unfortunately

I N D E X.

- at Sea 104
- Gardie, Pontus de la*, commands a Body of Troops sent by the King of *Sweden* to the Succour of the Czar *Zuski* 158
- ill recompenced for it 171, 172
- forces the *Russians* of *Novogorod* to offer the Crown to the Son of the King of *Sweden* 173
- George, Danielowitz*, succeeds his Father *Daniel* 11
- Gortz*, Baron, chief Minister of *Charles XII.* his Projects 362
- Gosenski, Alexander*, Ambassador from *Sigismund III.* King of *Poland*, arrives at *Moscow* 141
- refuses to assist at the Czar's Nuptials, unless the same Distinction is shewn him as was paid to the *Russian* Ambassador at *Cracow* *ibid.*
- Gostomifles*, a Citizen of *Novogorod* who recommended *Rurick*, and his two Brothers to the Government of *Russia* 2
- Gregory Demetrowitz*, left Heir to the *Russian* Dominions by his Brother, notwithstanding he had a Son of his own 13
- at War with the *Poles*, during the whole Time of his short Reign 14
- at his Death declares his Nephew his Successor excluding his own two Sons *ibid.*
- Griska Utropoja*, said to be the real Name of the first Impostor who called himself *Demetrius* 119
- Gudenow, Boris*, his Sister married to the Czar *Theodore Iwanowitz* 103
- assumes to himself the sovereign Authority which he exercises in the Name of his Master 105
- causes the Czar's Brother *Demetrius* to be assassinated that he may secure the Succession of the Crown to himself 106
- sets Fire to the City of *Moscow*, to take off the Attention of the People from enquiring into his murdering *Demetrius* 107, 108
- is suspected of poisoning the Czar *Theodore* 111
- dies 126
- buried near the other 127
- his Body removed by *Demetrius*, who ordered his Palace to be pulled down to the Ground 131
- Gudenow, John*, a Relation of *Boris*, and General of his Army, stops the Rapidity of *Demetrius's* Conquest 124
- deceived by General *Zapotski* 129
- abandoned by his Army and taken *ibid.*
- Gustavus Vasa*, King of *Sweden*, promises *Henry Galen*, the Grand Master of the *Teutonic* Order, to assist him against the *Russians* 39
- being disappointed by the *Poles* and *Livonians*, drives the Enemy out of his

I N D E X.

- his own Country, and
leaves his faithless Allies
exposed to the *Russians* 40
— dies 46
Gustavus Ericson, Son of
Eric XIV. 115
— refuses the Daughter
of the Czar 116
— dies in Prison *ibid.*
Gustavus Adolphus succeeds
his Father *Charles IX.*
King of Sweden 173
— has a Desire to become
Czar, and join the *Russian*
Empire to the Crown of
Sweden *ibid.*
— enters into a War with
Russia 176
— makes an advantageous
Peace with her 177
Gyllembourg, Count, put un-
der an Arrest at London
363

H.

- H***eer-Miesler*, the Grand
General of the *Teu-*
tonick Order so called 18
Helena, the Wife of *Basile*
Iwanowitz 27
Henry, see *Anjou*
Herman Falox, Grand Mas-
ter of the *Teutonic* Order
10
Holland, the Republick of,
send Ambassadors to the
Czar *Michael Theodoro-*
witz 181
— the Czar sends an Offi-
cer, named *Lefly*, to pur-
chase Arms and Ammu-
nition there, and an Am-
bassador to demand Suc-
cours of Men and Money
185
— the Czar *Peter* arrives

- there 293
— *Peter* leaves that Coun-
try 295
— the same Monarch re-
turns thither 298
— *Peter* comes again into
that Country 363
Holowzin, the Battle there
326
Holstein, the Duke of, the
Czar *Peter's* Daughter,
Anna Petrowna, betroth-
ed to him 397
Horn, Henry, Governour of
Revel, defends that Town
bravely 70
— killed 177
Human, a great City of *Po-*
dolia, besieged and taken
by the *Turks* 265

J.

- J***Acloff*, *Cornelius*, first
stops *Stenka Razin*, and
conveys him to *Moscow*
246
Jaick, a Town taken by
Stenka Razin 228
Jamagorod, a Town sack'd
and burnt by the *Russians*
109
— taken by the *Swedens*
174
Jasykow, chief Favourite of
the Czar *Theodore Alexo-*
witz 277
Jeroslaw, one of the ten
Sons of *Wolodimir I.* hav-
ing vanquished all his
Brothers, takes upon him
the Title of Monarch of
all *Russia* 7
Jeupalch, the eldest Son of
Swatoslas destroys his se-
cond Brother *Olegas*, and
is himself put to Death by
Wolodimir

I N D E X.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p> <i>Wolodimir</i> his younger 5
 <i>Igor</i> succeeds his Father <i>Ru-</i>
 <i>rick</i> 3
 — destroyed by the <i>Drew-</i>
 <i>lians</i> <i>ibid.</i>
 <i>Ilmen</i>, the People about that
 Lake the most powerful
 of the <i>Russians</i> 9
 <i>Innocent</i> III. Pope, the
 Knights of the <i>Short-</i>
 <i>Sword</i> established by his
 Authority 8
 <i>John Danielowitz</i> surnamed
 <i>Kalita</i>, made Prince of
 <i>Russia</i> 11
 <i>John Basilowitz</i>, the <i>Victo-</i>
 <i>rious</i>, succeeds his Father
 <i>Basile</i> II. 14
 — shakes off the Yoke of
 the <i>Tartars</i> 15
 — takes the Title of
 Great Duke <i>ibid.</i>
 <i>John Basilowitz</i>, the <i>Tyrant</i>,
 comes to the Throne of
 <i>Russia</i> 29
 — endeavours to civilize
 his People <i>ibid.</i>
 — marches at the Head
 of his Army to besiege
 <i>Casan</i> 30
 — but is forced to raise
 the Siege by a Mutiny a-
 mong his Troops 31
 — returns Home and pu-
 nishes the Mutineers 32
 — sends a whimsical Pe-
 tition to his Secretary, to
 raise fresh Troops <i>ibid.</i>
 — takes <i>Casan</i> 33
 — takes <i>Astracan</i> 34
 — causes himself to be
 declared Emperor of the
 <i>Tartars</i> 35
 — forms the Design of
 subduing <i>Livonia</i> 39
 — takes <i>Narwa</i> 43
 — demands the Sister of </p> | <p> the King of <i>Poland</i> in
 Marriage 48
 — is grossly affronted by
 that Nation <i>ibid.</i>
 — takes a dreadful Oath
 to be revenged on them
 49
 — enters into <i>Lithuania</i>,
 and takes the strong
 Town of <i>Poloczka</i> <i>ibid.</i> to
 51
 — is deceived by the <i>Poles</i>
 fair Promises, and returns
 to his own Dominions
 <i>ibid.</i>
 — finds the <i>Russian</i> No-
 bles engaged in a Plot a-
 gainst him <i>ibid.</i> and 52
 — pretends an Inclination
 to renounce the Crown,
 and retire to a Cloyster
 <i>ibid.</i>
 — but being intreated to
 return to his Capital
 which he had quitted,
 and gone as far as <i>Slabo-</i>
 <i>da</i>, he consents upon Con-
 dition that the Senate and
 others, take a new Oath
 of Fidelity and Obedience
 to him <i>ibid.</i> 53
 — begins to revenge him-
 self on the Conspirators,
 which he does in a most
 cruel and unheard of
 Manner <i>ibid.</i>
 — at <i>Novogorod</i>, <i>Pleskow</i>,
 <i>Tweer</i> and <i>Narwa</i> <i>ibid.</i> to
 55
 — returns to <i>Moscow</i>,
 where he orders eighteen
 new Gibbets to be erected,
 and executes his Chancel-
 lor and Great <i>Treasurer</i>
 <i>ibid.</i>
 — put his own Brother,
 Prince </p> |
|---|---|

I N D E X.

- Prince *George* to Death 56, 57
 —and after the Princess his Wife 58
 —pretends to repent, and performs several Acts of Devotion *ibid.*
 —sends another Army into *Lithuania* 59
 —writes an obliging Letter to *John*, the new King of *Sweden*, to keep him quiet, being informed of a new Armament, making by the *Turks*, and designed against *Russia* 61
 —receives an Account of the *Turks* being beaten, and, at the same Time, a new Embassy from *John*, King of *Sweden*, which he listens to but coolly, having formed the Design of bringing all *Livonia* under his Subjection 62, 63
 —finding the *Livonians* have an Aversion to the *Russians*, he proposes to make *Magnus*, Brother to the King of *Denmark* their King 64
 —obliges *Magnus* to pay him an annual Tribute, and acknowledge him for his Protector 66
 —sends an Army into *Livonia*, to put his new King in Possession of the Throne he had given him *ibid.*
 —discovers several Conspiracies against him at *Moscow*, and punishes the Authors of them *ibid.* 67
 —commands an Army himself of eighty thousand Men in *Livonia*, takes several Places, and then goes to *Novogorod*, to the Nuptials of Duke *Magnus* 68
 —goes with his Son *Theodore* before *Revel*, but is forced to raise the Siege 70
 —discovers a Correspondence carrying on between Duke *Magnus*, and *Stephen* King of *Poland* 71
 —invests *Werden*, the Residence of *Magnus*, strips him of all his regal Ornaments, and would have put him to Death if he had not made an abject Submission *ibid.* 72
 —enters into a War with *Stephen* King of *Poland* 75
 —is desirous, after much ill Success, to make Peace 79
 —applies to the Pope to become Mediator 84
 —is greatly irritated against several great Men, who make a Remonstrance to him concerning the State of the Nation, and desire him to put his eldest Son at the Head of his Army 91
 —kills his Son with the Blow of a Stick 92
 —his great Concern for it 93
 —his Death 96
 —his Character 97
John, Duke of *Finland*, deposes his Brother, and takes the Crown of *Sweden* 60
 —full of the Project of re-establish-

I N D E X.

- re-establishing the *Roman*
Catholick Religion in
Sweden 68
 — entirely governed by
Possévin the Jesuit, sent
 to him by Pope *Gregory*
XIII. 70
 — more employed about
 the Affairs of Religion
 than War 105
 — dies 110
John Alexowitz, set aside in
 the Succession, by his Bro-
 ther *Theodore* 278
 — proclaimed Czar, in
 Conjunction with *Peter*
 280
 — has only the Name of
 Czar, without any Autho-
 rity 285
Jovius Paulus, the Character
 he gives of *John Basilo-*
witz 29
Iwanogorod, built by *John*
Basilowitz the Victorious
 42
- K.
- K** *Argapol*, the Mountains
 thereof antiently one
 of the Boundaries of *Russia*
 8
Kettler, *Gothard*, his Coad-
 jutor, *William* of *Furstem-*
berg, resigns the Grand
 Mastership of the *Teutonic*
Order entirely to him 45
 — made Duke of *Cour-*
land and *Semigal* 47
Kexholm, taken by *Pontus de*
la Gardie 172
Kiorw, formerly a Sovereign
 Prince of that Province 9
 — conquered by the *Poles*
 11
Kokenhausen, taken by *John*
Basilowitz 68
Kowar, *John*, Governour of
Resan, his good Behaviour
 in preserving the Place 25
Kursel, *Nicholas*, endeavours
 to make himself Master of
Revel, but fails in his At-
 tempt 65
 — his Head cut off *ibid.*
- L.
- L** *Adoga*, the City of, ta-
 ken by *Pontus de la*
Gardie, the Swedish Ge-
 neral 172
Lapotinski, *Basile*, sent
 Ambassador from *Stephen*
Battori King of *Poland*,
 to the Czar *John Basilo-*
witz 73
 — his courageous Behavi-
 our in support of his Mas-
 ter's Dignity *ibid.* 74
Leopold, the Emperor of
Germany, *Peter* has a pri-
 vate Audience of him 298
Lesly, Major General 377
Lexno, the Battle there 328
Lintski, *Michael*, Uncle to
 the Czarina *Helena*, has
 the Guardianship of his
 Great Nephew, *John Ba-*
silowitz in his Minority
 28
 — is committed to Prison,
 and dies there *ibid.*
Lithuania, the Conquests of
John Basilowitz the Vic-
 torious in that Province
 15, 16
 — the same Prince lays a
 great Part of that Country
 waste 21
 — *Demetrius*, the first Im-
 postor of that Name, en-
 tertained by *Adam Wis-*
nowieski

I N D E X.

- nowiecki*, a great Lord of that Province 119
 - the *Russians* enter into the very Heart of this Province, and besiege *Vilna* 220
 - the *Swedes* by Treaty with *Poland*, appropriate that great Duchy to themselves 222
 - the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz*, proposes to unite *Poland* and that Duchy to *Russia* 259
 - *Peter* orders Troops to advance towards that Duchy, to keep it in the Interest of *Augustus*, just then elected King of *Poland* 292
 - *Peter* and *Augustus* meet at *Birsen*, a small Town in that Province 304
 - *Peter* enters that Province at the Head of his Army 313
 - *Charles XII.* drives the *Russians* from thence 317
 - the King of *Sweden* being in Motion to enter that Province, *Peter* hastens thither to oppose him 324
 - Livonia*, the Christian Religion not being established there, Pope *Innocent III.* allowed the Knights of the *Short Sword*, the third Part of what they conquered from the Infidels of that Province 8
 - the *Russians* always desirous to add this Province to their Empire 18
 - desolated by Civil Wars 39
 - annexed to the Crown of *Poland* 47
 - divided among four Powers *ibid.*
 - Lowitz, Andrew*, a Jesuit, in the Court of *Demetrius*, whom he consulted in every Thing 137
 - Lublin*, the Assembly met there, declare the Throne of *Poland* vacant 321
 - Lutzen* taken by *John Basilowitz* 71
- M.
- M** *Achmet Girey*, Chamberlain of the *Crim Tartars*, Son and Successor of *Mendli Girey* 23
 - comes to *Moscow*, and endeavours to seize on that Capital, by the help of *Jaskowitz*, a Polish Lord 24
 - Madagascar*, the Pirates there offer their Service to the King of *Sweden* 363
 - Magnus*, Duke of *Holstein*, Brother of the King of *Denmark*, pretends to a Part of *Livonia* 47, 48
 - made King of *Livonia* 64
 - marries a Princess of the Blood of *Russia* 68
 - enters into a private Treaty with the King of *Sweden* 71
 - which is discovered by the Czar *ibid.*
 - is stripped of his Regal Dignity, and makes an abject Submission 72
 - Maluscha*, the Mother of *Wolodimir I.* prevails upon her

I N D E X.

- her Son to be baptized 6
Maximilian of Austria, e-
 lected King of *Poland* 104
 — obliged to renounce
 the Crown 105
Mazeppa, Hettman of the
Cossacks, enters into a
 private Treaty with the
 King of *Sweden* 327
 — ready to deliver up his
 Capital to *Charles XII.*
 but prevented by his Sol-
 diers 328
 — hung in Effigy *ibid.*
 — the Czar offers a Re-
 ward for taking him dead
 or alive 334
Mendli Gerey, Cham of the
Crim Tartars 23
Menefius a *Scotchman*, Go-
 vernour to *Peter* 283
Menzikoff, Prince, has three
 Horses shot under him
 330
 — gets great Glory in
Pomerania 351
Meschanskoja, the old and
 new, the Names of two
 Suburbs at *Moscow*, built
 by *Alexis Michaelowitz*
 226
Meyerfeldt, Count, Gover-
 nour of *Swedish Pome-
 rania*, refuses to submit to
 the Sequestration of that
 Country into the Hands
 of the King of *Prussia*
 356
 — afterwards agrees to it
 357
Michael Wiefnowieski, chose
 King of *Poland* 248
 — dies 258
Miloslawski, the Boyar *Ilia*
Danielowitz, becomes
 Father-in-Law to the
 Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz*
 193
 — with *Morosou* and *Ples-*
seu, governs the *Russian*
 Empire *ibid.*
Morduate Tartars separated
 from the *Russians* by the
 River *Occa* 8
Moscow, the Residence of
 the *Russian* Princes, tran-
 slated thither by *Alexan-*
der the Son of *Ieroslaw*
II. 10
 — the Citadel there built
 by *Daniel Alexandrowitz*
ibid.
Mullern, Chancellor, his
 Advice to the King of
Sweden to cross the *Dnieper*
 331
Muscovites, a Name given
 to the *Russians*, by Stran-
 gers, but what they are
 not fond of themselves 11
Mustapha II. Emperor of
 the *Turks*, his first Cam-
 paign 289

N.

- N** *Ancekyn*, the Czar's
 Ambassador in *Po-*
land 80
Naraskin, *Cariloff*, his Daugh-
 ter married to *Alexis*
Michaelowitz 267
Narva, where sitrated 42
 — taken by the Czar
John Basilowitz 43
 — the *Swedes* make an
 Attempt upon that Town
 70
 — besieged by *Boris Gu-*
denow 109
 — the Czar *Peter* appears
 before it with an hundred
 thousand

I N D E X.

thousand Men 301
 — taken by *Peter* 311
Neutrality, a Scheme entered
 into, to preserve the King
 of *Sweden's* Dominions in
Germany 341
Newel taken 82
Nils Dublare, a *Swedish*
 Captain, preserves the
 Castle of *Revel* for his
 Master 65
Norris, Sir *John*, meets *Peter*
 at *Amsterdam* 366
 — comes into the Road
 of *Copenhagen* 377
 — ordered to join the
Swedish Fleet 381
Novogorod Weleki, the Græn-
 deur thereof 15, 16
 — the People of that
 Town treated with great
 Barbarity 53
Nyenhuysen, the Siege thereof
 miraculously raised 18
 — taken by the Czar,
John Basilowitz 43

O.

Occa, the River, *Russia*
 at first extended no
 farther towards the East 8
Ostiga, some of *Stenko Ra-*
zin's Emissaries taken and
 hanged in that Town 240
Olegas, made Chief of the
Drewlians, by his Father
Swatoflas at his Death 5
 — destroyed in an Am-
 buscade laid for him by
 his Brother *Jewpalch* *ibid.*
Olba the Wife of *Igor* 3
 — governs the *Russians* in
 the Minority of her Son
Swatoflas *ibid.*
 — revenges herself on the

Drewlians, for the Death
 of her Husband 4
 — is baptized at *Constan-*
tinople by the Name of
Helena *ibid.*
 — dies not till the 80th
 Year of her Age *ibid.*
 — her Memory annually
 celebrated by the *Russians*
 to this Day *ibid.*
Ottokesa Fedorowna, the
 Daughter of *Feoder Abra-*
hamowitz, married to the
 Czar *Peter* 284
 — divorced 288
Owczina, John, the Gallant
 of the Czarina *Helena*,
 Mother of *John Basila-*
witz the Tyrant, put to
 Death 28
Oxenshiern, the Governour
 of *Revel*, made Prisoner,
 by *Nicholas Kursel* 65
 — set at Liberty *ibid.*

P.

Pereflaw, the Seat of the
 Emperor established
 there, by *Swatoflas* 5
Perun, the God of Fire, an
 Idol among the antient
Russians 6
Peter appointed Successor,
 by his Brother *Theodore*
 278
 — comes to the Throne
 280
 — discovers a great Ge-
 nius 283
 — marries 284
 — a Conspiracy against
 his Life *ibid.*
 — enters into the Army
 as a Drummer 287
 — made a Serjeant *ibid.*
 — regu-

I N D E X.

- regulates his Revenues *ibid.*
- repudiates his Wife 288
- gives the first Rise to Ship Building in *Russia* *ibid.*
- his first Campaign 289
- becomes an Ensign *ibid.*
- takes and sinks several *Turkish* Vessels 290
- sets out on his Travels 291
- comes to *Holland* 293
- enters himself as a common Carpenter in the *East India* Company's Ship Yard 294
- comes to *England* 295
- returns to *Holland*, and goes from thence to *Vien-*
na 297, 298
- another Conspiracy formed against him, obli-
ges him to go Home a-
gain *ibid.*
- settles his Army and Navy 299
- buries his great Fa-
vourite *M. le Fort* 300
- declares War with the King of *Sweden* 300, 301
- appears before *Narva*, with 100,000 Men *ibid.*
- becomes a Lieutenant 302
- reforms the Customs, and Manners of his People 303
- retrenches the Equi-
pages of the Boyars, and other great Men 304
- beats the *Swedes* in *Livonia* 306
- takes *Nottebourg* *ibid.*
- and *Nieschadtz* 307
- builds *Petersburgh* 308
- takes *Narva* 311
- made a Colonel 316
- much displeased with the Behaviour of *Augustus* 319
- writes to several Po-
tentates complaining of him 321
- goes to *Grodno* in *Li-*
thuania 324
- his great Courage and Conduct in the Battle of *Lezno* 328
- and in the Battle of *Pultowa* 330
- receives a Deputation from the *Grande*s of *Pol-*
land, to congratulate him on the Defeat of his Ene-
my 337
- goes to meet the King of *Prussia* at *Marienwer-*
der *ibid.*
- makes his publick En-
try into *Moscow* 338
- receives publick Satis-
faction from the Queen of *Great Britain*, for the Affront put upon his Am-
bassador at *London* 339
- penetrates into the great Duchy of *Finland*, and lays Siege to *Wybourg* 340
- becomes Master of the whole Province of *Livonia* 341
- causes his Army to march into *Germany* 342
- prepares for War with the *Turks* 343
- makes great Preparations on the *Black Sea*, which were useless 346
- takes a false Step in going into the Enemy's Country,

I N D E X.

- Country, where he is like to be utterly ruined, being shut up by the *Turkish* Army on the Side of the River *Pruth* 347
- makes Peace with the *Turks* *ibid.*
- goes to *Warsaw*, *Elbing*, and *Targau*, where is celebrated the Marriage of his Son the *Czarewitz* *Alexis* *ibid.*
- goes into *Pomerania*, and has several Conferences with the King of *Poland* 348
- confers with the King of *Prussia* at *Berlin* 349
- goes into *Pomerania*, and to *Hanover* 350, 351
- makes a Descent into *Finland*, and takes *Abo* 351
- made a Rear-Admiral in his own Fleet, and obtains a Victory over the *Swedes* 353
- made Vice-Admiral 354
- sets up a Press at *Moscow*, and encourages Arts and Sciences 355
- commands the united Fleets of four Nations 361
- discontented with the High Allies, is supposed to have entered into the Projects of Baron *Gortz* 362
- disowns his having any Knowledge of them 363
- goes to the *Hague* *ibid.*
- to *France* 364
- to the *Spaw* 365
- to *Berlin* 366
- arrives at *Petersburgh* 367
- proceeds against the *Czarewitz*, his Son, in a judicial Way 368
- obliges him to renounce the Succession *ibid.*
- goes to see his Son in his last Minutes 371
- causes a circular Letter to be sent to all Ministers abroad, giving some Account of the *Czarewitz's* Death *ibid.*
- orders a new Communication to be cut between the Rivers *Wolkofa* and *Neva* 374
- is disobliged by the Kings of *Great Britain*, and *Poland* *ibid.*
- writes to the latter, complaining of his Ingratitude *ibid.*
- finds himself deserted by his Allies 376
- makes a Descent in *Schonen* 377
- banishes the *Jesuits* 380
- resolves to make Peace for the Good of his People 383, 384
- takes upon him the Title of Emperor 387
- makes a triumphant Entry into *Moscow* 388, 389
- makes his People swear that they will acknowledge the Person he appoints for his Successor 390
- sets out on his Expedition to *Persia* 392
- returns to *Moscow* and *Petersburgh* 394
- crowns his Empress *Catharine* 397
- betroths

I N D E X.

- betroths his Daughter *Anna Petrowna*, to the Duke of *Holstein* *ibid.*
 - falls sick, and dies 398
 - Peucingians*, or *Hunns*, their Barbarity to *Sawatossas*, Prince of *Russia* 5
 - Pleskow*, a Province of *Russia* 2, 5
 - yielded to the Grand Master of the *Teutonic* Order 10
 - retaken by Prince *Alexander* *ibid.*
 - a Description of that City 20
 - the Citizens massacred in a barbarous Manner 54
 - Plettenberg, Walter*, Grand General of *Livonia*, the great Victory he gained over the *Russians* 19
 - makes Peace with them for fifty Years 20
 - obtains the Dominion of *Livonia*, from the Grand Master of the *Teutonic* Order 38
 - Poloczck*, the Palatinate and Town 49
 - surrendered to *John Basilowitz* 50, 51
 - Pomerania*, sequestered into the Hands of the King of *Prussia* 351
 - Poniatowski*, Count, the *Swedish* General, what the Grand Vizier said to him, relating to *Charles XII.* 342
 - Potocky*, the Palatine, at the Head of ten thousand Men, joins the *Turks* and *Tartars* against *Peter* 344
 - is obliged to return to *Turky* 345
 - Prozoroffski*, Governour of *Astracan*, destroyed by *Stenko Razin* 239
 - Pultowa* besieged 329
 - the memorable Battle there 330
- R.
- R** *Adziwil, Nicholas*, Palatine of *Troki*, commands the *Lithuanian* Army 59
 - Radziwil, Christopher*, commands the *Polish* Army 90
 - loses a fair Opportunity of taking the Czar *John Basilowitz* Prisoner, for want of good Spies *ibid.* 91
 - Razin, Stenko*, a Chief of the *Cossacks*, his Revolt against the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* 227
 - his Depredations and Cruelty 228
 - submits to the Czar, and is pardoned 229
 - his barbarous Usage of a *Persian* his Captive 230
 - revolts again 231
 - casts the Governour of *Astracan* headlong from a Church Steeple 239
 - pretends that the young *Czarewitz*, lately deceased, was alive, and with the Patriarch, accompanying him in his rebellious Expeditions 242
 - forced to fly for Refuge to the Wilderness of *Steep* 246
 - delivered up to the Czar *ibid.*
 - put to Death 247
 - Riga*,

I N D E X.

- Riga*, *Peter* comes thither 291
 — the Governour refuses to shew him the Fortifications *ibid.*
 — *Peter* comes before it with his Army 338
 — capitulates 340
Romadonoffski, the Vice-Czar, receives *Peter* on a Throne, and questions him concerning the Victory he had gained at Sea 353, 354
Romanoff, *Theodore Nikititz*, first Cousin to the Czar *Theodore*, designed by him for his Succellor 112
 — forced into a Convent *ibid.*
 — his Family at this Day on the Throne of *Russia* *ibid.*
Roscloff, *Athanasius*, *Iwanowitz*, High Treasurer, sent Ambassador into *Poland*, by the Impostor *Demetrius* 131
Rurick, the first Prince of *Russia* 2
- S.
- S** *Amuelerick*, *John*, Hettman of the *Cossacks*, deposed 283
Sap-Girey, chose King of *Casan* 23
Schacopski, the Knez *Gregory*, raises up a false *Demetrius* 152, 153
 — is thrown into Prison, and dies 155
Scheale made King of *Casan* by the Assistance of the Czar, whose Sister he had married 23
 — is deposed *ibid.*
Selim II. Emperor of the *Turks*, forms the Design of subduing all *Tartary* 61
Short-Sword, Knights thereof, their Original 8
 — joined to the Knights of the *Teutonick Order* *ibid.*
Sigalei, a *Tartar* Prince, who commanded the Czar's Army, commits all Acts of Cruelties in the Diocese of *Dorpt* 41
Sigismund Augustus, King of *Poland*, the Czar *Basile Iwanowitz* declares War with him 20
 — *Maximilian I.* Emperor of *Germany*, makes an Alliance with *Russia* against him 21, 22
 — the Grand Master of the *Teutonick Order* sends to him to desire Succours 39
 — deceives his Ally *Gustavus Vasa* 40
 — forms a Conspiracy against the Czar 51
 — spirits up all the Enemies he can against the Czar 67
 — dies 69
Sigismund, the Son of *John*, King of *Sweden*, succeeds *Stephen Battori*, as King of *Poland* 104
Sinaus, one of the Brothers of *Rurick* 2
Sobieski, *John*, Grand General, intrusted with the entire Command of the Crown Army of *Poland* 256
 — obtains a glorious Victory

I N D E X.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>tory over the <i>Turks</i> at
<i>Cochim</i> 257</p> <p>— chosen King of <i>Poland</i>
260</p> <p><i>Sophia</i>, a Daughter of the
Prince of <i>Morea</i>, one of
the Wives of <i>John Basilo-</i>
<i>witz</i>, the <i>Victorious</i> 16</p> <p><i>Sophia</i>, Half-Sister to <i>Peter</i>,
gets the Administration of
the Government into her
own Hands 280</p> <p>— conspires against the
Life of her Brother 284</p> <p>— confined in a Monaste-
ry, where she died many
Years after 285</p> <p><i>Stephen</i>, Weywode of <i>Mol-</i>
<i>davia</i>, his Daughter mar-
ried to <i>John Basilowitz</i>
the <i>Victorious</i> 17</p> <p><i>Stolpe</i>, the King of <i>Prussia</i>
meets the Czar there 360</p> <p><i>Strelitzes</i>, what 280</p> <p>— mutiny 281</p> <p>— their Name abolished
299</p> <p><i>Streschnew</i>, <i>Lucojan</i>, his
Daughter married to the
Czar <i>Michael Theodoro-</i>
<i>witz</i> 178</p> <p>— his Character 180</p> <p><i>Sawatoflas</i>, the Son of <i>Igor</i> 4</p> <p>— treacherously slain by
the Prince of the <i>Peucin-</i>
<i>gians</i> 5</p> <p style="text-align: center;">T.</p> <p>T <i>Artars</i> commit incre-
dible Ravages in <i>Hun-</i>
<i>gary</i> 9</p> <p>— render the <i>Russian</i>
Princes tributary to them
<i>ibid.</i></p> <p>— <i>Alexander</i> endeavours
to shake off their Yoke
10</p> | <p>— <i>Basile I.</i> succeeds part-
ly therein 13</p> <p>— <i>John Basilowitz</i> ac-
complishes it 15</p> <p>— come again into <i>Russia</i>,
and oblige the Czar to
consent to pay them an
annual Tribute 24</p> <p><i>Teutonic</i> Order becomes
powerful by being united
to the Knights of the
<i>Short Sword</i> 18</p> <p>— entirely defeat the <i>Rus-</i>
<i>sians</i> in <i>Livonia</i> <i>ibid.</i></p> <p><i>Theodore Iwanowitz</i> succeeds
his Father, <i>John Basilo-</i>
<i>witz</i>, the Tyrant 101</p> <p>— his Coronation 103</p> <p>— married to the Sister of
the Knez <i>Boris Gudenow</i>
<i>ibid.</i></p> <p>— renews the Truce with
<i>Sweden</i> 104</p> <p>— is alarmed at the very
Name of a War 108</p> <p>— dies 111</p> <p><i>Theodore Borissowitz</i>, made
Czar 127</p> <p>— his Character <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>— his Imprisonment and
Death 130</p> <p><i>Theodore Alexowitz</i> comes
to the Throne of <i>Russia</i>
269</p> <p>— continues his Father's
Designs upon the <i>Ukraine</i>
with great Vigour <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>— recovers that Province
270</p> <p>— sends to demand Suc-
cours from <i>Poland</i> 271</p> <p>— which are deny'd him
272</p> <p>— makes a Treaty with
that Crown <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>— makes Peace with the
<i>Turks</i> 276</p> <p>— does</p> |
|---|--|

I N D E X.

- does several Things for
the Benefit and Improve-
ment of his Country *ibid.*
- marries 277
- dies *ibid.* 278
- declares *Peter* his Suc-
cessor *ibid.*
- Timofka Ankudina*, the Son
of a Linen Draper of
the City of *Wologda*, pre-
tends to be the Son of
the Czar *Zuski* 193
- his Character 194
- and Behaviour 195 to
201
- endeavours to make
himself away *ibid.*
- put to the Torture 202
- a second Time 203
- executed 204
- Timur-Beck* or *Tamerlane*,
defeats the Great Cham
Tochat-Mitch 12
- the Riches of his Camp
13
- Tochat-Mitch*, the Great
Cham of *Tartary*, many
Advantages gained over
him, by the Great Duke
Demetrius Iwanowitz 12
- he marches against and
gets the better of *Deme-
trius* *ibid.*
- Toropiecz* taken by the *Poles*
82
- Touchi*, several Princes of his
Race in *Tartary* 12, 13
- Trochaniotou*, *Peter Tichonou-
itz*, Brother-in-Law to
Morofou, and one of the
Instruments of his Op-
pressions 205
- Truvor*, one of the Brothers
of *Rurick* 2
- U.
- U** *Glitz*, the Principality
thereof 13
- *Basile Basilowitz*, ba-
nished thither *ibid.* 14
- Ukraine*, inhabited by the
Cossacks 121
- its Riches and Extent
122
- the miserable Condi-
tion it was fallen into
ibid. 123
- the Czar *Alexis Mi-
charlowitz* has an Army
of an hundred and fifty
thousand Men there 257
- the *Turks*, by Treaty,
surrender to *Poland* all
that Part of this Province
which lies West of the
Dnieper, and reserve the
Southern Part to them-
selves 270
- the *Poles* give up their
Pretensions to that Pro-
vince to the *Russians* 282
- *Charles XII.* in that
Province 329
- Utropoja*, *Griska*, a *Musco-
vite* Monk, said to be the
Person who called himself
Demetrius 119
- W.
- W** *Aragi*, or *Waragians*,
a People so called,
who gave the first Sove-
reigns to *Russia* 1
- Waretskoi-Morie*, a Country
on the Coasts of the *Bal-
tick-Sea* 1, 2
- Wasilogorod*, the Fortrefs
built by *Basile Iwanowitz*
26
- F f
- Wenden*;

I N D E X.

- Wenden*, the States of *Livonia* assembled there 41
- Willoughby*, Sir *Hugh*, discovers that Part of *Greenland* called *Spitzberg* 35
- his unfortunate End 36
- Wiskow*, *John*, Chancellor to the Czar *John Basilewitz*, put to Death 55
- Wladislaus*, Son of *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, chosen Czar 160
- succeeds his Father *Sigismund* III. as King of *Poland* 185
- concludes a Peace with the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz* 188
- Wokhow*, seven hundred Women and Children thrown into that River 53
- Wolkofa*, a Communication cut between that River and the *Neva* 374
- Wolodimir* I. the natural Son of *Swiatoflas*, flies for Shelter from his Brother *Jewpalch* to the *Waragi-ans* 5
- obtains Succours, besieges his Brother in *Kiow*, and puts him to Death *ibid.*
- becomes Master of all the Country possessed by his Father *ibid.* 6
- gives himself up to a Life of Ease and Luxury *ibid.*
- embraces Christianity, and is baptized by the Name of *Basile* *ibid.*
- marries the Sister of the Emperor *Basile* *ibid.*
- builds the City of *Wolodimir* *ibid.*
- institutes the Feast of the Princess *Olba*, his Grand-Mother *ibid.*
- dies, and is placed among the Number of the Saints *ibid.*
- Wolodimir* II. Son of *Wsewolode*, brings the State to the Subjection of one Prince again, and takes, as his Grand-Father had done, the Title of Monarch 7
- Wotchoi*, the People of *Ingria*, so called in the *Russian* Language 2
- Wsewolode*, one of the five Sons of *Jeroslaw*, rules in the Province of *Pereflaw* 7
- Wsewolode* II. succeeds his Father *Wolodimir* II. *ibid.*
- Wybourg*, besieged by the Czar 340
- taken *ibid.*
- Z.
- Z** *Alpocia*, a Peace concluded there between *Russia* and *Poland* 93
- Zana-beck*, Cham of *Tartary* 11
- Zapotski*, General of the false *Demetrius* 128
- Zawolocz* taken by the *Poles* 82
- Zemifces*, *John*, Emperor of the East, would have married the Princess *Olba*, but is rejected by him 4
- Zerebrinow*, appointed Governor of *Astracan* 35
- his Bravery against the *Turks* and *Tartars* 62, 63
- Zufki*, the Knez, stops the Conquests

I N D E X.

Conquests of the false	124	Conspiracy	138, 139
<i>Demetrius</i>	124	— shoots the Czar <i>Deme-</i>	
— conspires against the		<i>trius</i> thro' the Head	144
Czar	132	— chosen Czar	145
— is pardoned	133	— deposed, and dies of	
— enters into a second		Grief	160

F I N I S.

